

Kia, THE COMPANY



Thank you for becoming the owner of a new Kia vehicle.

As a global car manufacturer focused on building high-quality, value for money prices, Kia Motors is dedicated to providing you with a customer service experience that exceeds your expectations.

At all of our Kia dealerships you will be treated with warmth, hospitality and professionalism by people who care based on our **“Family-like Care”** promise.

All information contained in this Owner’s Manual was accurate at the time of publication. However, Kia reserves the right to make changes at any time so that our policy of continual product improvement can be carried out.

This manual applies to all models of this vehicle and includes descriptions and explanations of optional as well as standard equipment. As a result, you may encounter material in this manual that is not applicable to your specific Kia vehicle.

Enjoy your vehicle and Kia’s “Family-like Care” experience!

FOREWORD

Thank you for choosing a Kia vehicle.

When you require service, remember that your dealer knows your vehicle best. Your dealer has factory-trained technicians, recommended special tools, genuine Kia replacement parts and is dedicated to your complete satisfaction.

Because subsequent owners require this important information as well, this publication should remain with the vehicle if it is sold.

This manual will familiarize you with operational, maintenance and safety information about your new vehicle. It is supplemented by a Warranty and Maintenance book that provides important information on all warranties regarding your vehicle. If your vehicle is equipped with an audio system, you will also have a Kia Integrated Audio System manual explaining its operation. We urge you to read these publications carefully and follow the recommendations to help assure enjoyable and safe operation of your new vehicle.

Kia offers a great variety of options, components and features for its various models.

Therefore, the equipment described in this manual, along with the various illustrations, may not all be applicable to your particular vehicle.

The information and specifications provided in this manual were accurate at the time of printing. Kia reserves the right to discontinue or change specifications or design at any time without notice and without incurring any obligation. If you have questions, we recommend that you check with an authorized Kia dealer.

We assure you of our continuing interest in your motor-ing pleasure and satisfaction in your Kia vehicle.

© 2016 Kia Motors Corp.

All rights reserved. Reproduction by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying, recording, or by any information storage and retrieval system or translation in whole or part is not permitted without written authorization from Kia Motors Corporation.

Printed in Korea

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Introduction

1

Your vehicle at a glance

2

Knowing your vehicle

3

Driving your vehicle

4

Driving tips

5

In case of an emergency

6

Maintenance

7

Specifications

8

Index

9

Introduction		1
	How to use this manual / 1-2	2
	Vehicle break-in process / 1-3	3
		4
		5
		6
		7
		8
		9

HOW TO USE THIS MANUAL

We want to help you get the greatest possible driving pleasure from your vehicle. Your Owner's Manual can assist you in many ways. We strongly recommend that you read the entire manual. Especially, in order to prevent death or injury, at the very least, you must read the **WARNING** and **CAUTION** sections spread throughout the manual, which are easily recognized by their special markings listed.

Illustrations complement the words in this manual to best explain how to enjoy your vehicle. By reading your manual, you learn about features, important safety information, and driving tips under various road conditions.

The general layout of the manual is provided in the Table of Contents. A good place to start is the index; it has an alphabetical listing of all information in your manual.

Sections: This manual has eight sections plus an index. Each section begins with a brief list of contents so you can tell at a glance if that section has the information you want.

You'll find various **WARNING's**, **CAUTION's**, and **NOTICE's** in this manual. These **WARNING's**, **CAUTION's** and **NOTICE's** were prepared to enhance your personal safety and continued satisfaction with Kia vehicle. You should carefully read and follow ALL procedures and recommendations provided in these **WARNING's**, **CAUTION's** and **NOTICE's**.

WARNING

A WARNING indicates a situation in which serious bodily injury or death could result if the warning is ignored.

CAUTION

A CAUTION indicates a situation in which personal injury, perhaps severe, could result if the caution is ignored.

NOTICE

A NOTICE indicates a situation in which damage to your vehicle could result if the notice is ignored.

Biodiesel

Commercially supplied Diesel blends of no more than 7% biodiesel, commonly known as "B7 Diesel" may be used in your vehicle if Biodiesel meets EN 14214 or equivalent specifications. (EN stands for "European Norm"). The use of biofuels exceeding 7% made from rapeseed methyl ester (RME), fatty acid methyl ester (FAME), vegetable oil methyl ester (VME) etc. or mixing diesel exceeding 7% with biodiesel will cause increased wear or damage to the engine and fuel system. Repair or replacement of worn or damaged components due to the use of non approved fuels will not be covered by the manufacturer's warranty.

CAUTION

- ***Never use any fuel, whether diesel or B7 biodiesel or otherwise, that fails to meet the latest petroleum industry specification.***
- ***Never use any fuel additives or treatments that are not recommended or approved by the vehicle manufacturer.***

VEHICLE BREAK-IN PROCESS

No special break-in period is needed. By following a few simple precautions for the first 1,000 km (600 miles) you may add to the performance, economy and life of your vehicle.

- Do not race the engine.
- Do not maintain a single speed for long periods of time, either fast or slow. Varying engine speed is needed to properly break-in the engine.
- Avoid hard stops, except in emergencies, to allow the brakes to seat properly.
- Avoid full-throttle starts.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

		1
	Your vehicle at a glance	2
	Exterior overview / 2-2 Interior overview / 2-3	3
		4
		5
		6
		7
		8
		9

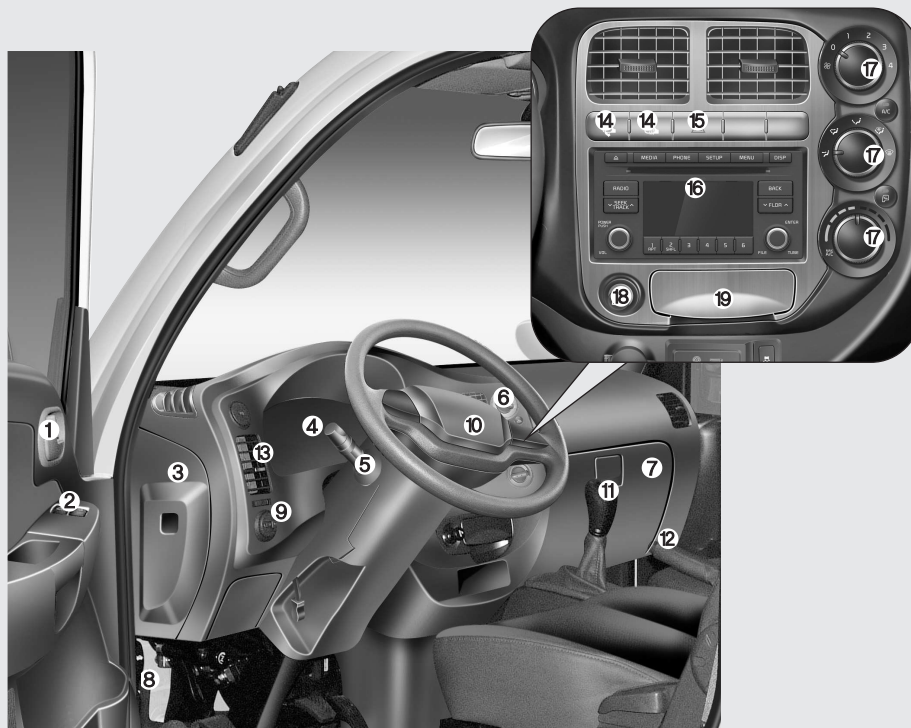
EXTERIOR OVERVIEW



- 1. Door
- 2. Side gate/Rear gate
- 3. Window
- 4. Hood
- 5. Outside rearview mirror
- 6. Wiper
- 7. Tire
- 8. Headlights

OPU016001L

INTERIOR OVERVIEW



1. Door lock/unlock button
 2. Power window switches *
 3. Brake/clutch fluid
 4. Instrument cluster
 5. Light control/Turn signals
 6. Wiper/Washer
 7. Glove box
 8. Hood release lever
 9. Headlight leveling device *
 10. Steering wheel
 11. Shift lever
 12. Parking brake
 13. Vent controls
 14. Outside rearview mirror *
 15. Hazard
 16. Audio *
 17. Climate control system *
 18. Cigar lighter
 19. Ashtray
- * : if equipped

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

OPU014010/OPU026008L

		Keys / 3-2	1
		Remote keyless entry / 3-5	
		Door locks / 3-8	2
		Window / 3-11	
	Knowing your vehicle		3
		Seat / 3-13	4
		Safety belts / 3-19	
		Air bag - supplemental restraint system / 3-33	5
		Hood / 3-43	
		Rear gate / 3-44	6
		Side gate / 3-45	
		Fuel filler / 3-46	7
		Mirrors / 3-47	
		Interior lights / 3-50	8
		Storage compartment / 3-51	
		Interior features / 3-52	9
		Exterior tool box (For 1.4 ton only) / 3-55	
		Audio system / 3-56	

KEYS

Record your key number



The key code number is stamped on the key code tag attached to the key set. Should you lose

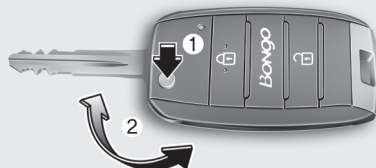
your keys, this number will enable an authorized Kia dealer to duplicate the keys easily. Remove the key code tag and store it in a safe place. Also, record the key code number and keep it in a safe place (not in the vehicle).

■ Type A



OUN026060

■ Type B



OPU026065

Key operations

Used to start the engine, lock and unlock the doors.

Type B

To unfold the key, press the release button (1) then the key will unfold automatically.

To fold the key, fold the key manually while pressing the release button (1).

CAUTION

Do not fold the key without pressing the release button. This may damage the key.

WARNING - Ignition key

Leaving children unattended in a vehicle with the ignition key is dangerous even if the key is not in the ignition switch. Children copy adults and they could place the key in the ignition switch. The ignition key would enable children to operate power windows or other controls, or even make the vehicle move, which could result in serious bodily injury or even death. Never leave the keys in your vehicle with unsupervised children, when the engine is running.

WARNING

Use only Kia original parts for the ignition key in your vehicle. If an aftermarket key is used, the ignition switch may not return to ON after START. If this happens, the starter will continue to operate causing damage to the starter motor and possible fire due to excessive current in the wiring.

Immobilizer system (if equipped)

Your vehicle may be equipped with an electronic engine immobilizer system to reduce the risk of unauthorized vehicle use.

Your immobilizer system is comprised of a small transponder in the ignition key and electronic devices inside the vehicle.

With the immobilizer system, whenever you insert your ignition key into the ignition switch and turn it to ON, it checks and determines and verifies if the ignition key is valid or not.

If the key is determined to be valid, the engine will start.

If the key is determined to be invalid, the engine will not start.

To deactivate the immobilizer system:

Insert the ignition key into the key cylinder and turn it to the ON position.

To activate the immobilizer system:

Turn the ignition key to the OFF position. The immobilizer system activates automatically. Without a valid ignition key for your vehicle, the engine will not start.

WARNING

In order to prevent theft of your vehicle, do not leave spare keys anywhere in your vehicle. Your Immobilizer password is a customer unique password and should be kept confidential. Do not leave this number anywhere in your vehicle.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

*** NOTICE**

When starting the engine, do not use the key with other immobilizer keys around. Otherwise the engine may not start or may stop soon after it starts. Keep each key separately in order to avoid a starting malfunction.

⚡ CAUTION

Do not put metal accessories near the ignition switch. Metal accessories may interrupt the transponder signal and may prevent the engine from being started.

*** NOTICE**

We recommend that you consult an authorized Kia dealer.

⚡ CAUTION

The transponder in your ignition key is an important part of the immobilizer system. It is designed to give years of trouble-free service, however you should avoid exposure to moisture, static electricity and rough handling. Immobilizer system malfunction could occur.

⚡ CAUTION

Do not change, alter or adjust the immobilizer system because it could cause the immobilizer system to malfunction. We recommend that the system be serviced by an authorized Kia dealer. Malfunctions caused by improper alterations, adjustments or modifications to the immobilizer system are not covered by your vehicle manufacturer warranty.

REMOTE KEYLESS ENTRY (IF EQUIPPED)



Remote keyless entry system operations

Lock (1)

1. Close all doors.
2. Press the lock button.
3. The hazard warning light will blink once to indicate that all doors are locked.

Unlock (2)

1. Press the unlock button.
2. The hazard warning lights will blink twice to indicate that all doors are unlocked.

*** NOTICE**

After unlocking all doors, the doors will lock automatically unless a door is opened within 30 seconds.

Transmitter precautions

*** NOTICE**

The transmitter will not work if any of following occur:

- The ignition key is in ignition switch.
- You exceed the operating distance limit (about 10 m [30 feet]).
- The battery in the transmitter is weak.
- Other vehicles or objects may be blocking the signal.
- The weather is extremely cold.
- The transmitter is close to a radio transmitter such as a radio station or an airport which can interfere with normal operation of the transmitter.
- When the transmitter does not work properly, open and close the door with the ignition key. If you have a problem with the transmitter, we recommend that you contact an authorized Kia dealer.

(Continued)

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

(Continued)

- If the transmitter is in close proximity to your cell phone or smart phone, the signal from the transmitter could be blocked by normal operation of your cell phone or smart phone. This is especially important when the phone is active such as making call, receiving calls, text messaging, and/or sending/receiving emails. Avoid placing the transmitter and your cell phone or smart phone in the same pants or jacket pocket and maintain adequate distance between the two devices.

CAUTION

- **Keep the transmitter away from water or any liquid. If the keyless entry system is inoperative due to exposure to water or liquids, it will not be covered by your manufacturer vehicle warranty.**
- **Keep the transmitter away from electromagnetic materials that blocks electromagnetic waves to the key surface.**

CAUTION

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. If the keyless entry system is inoperative due to changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance, it will not be covered by your manufacturer's vehicle warranty.



OPU026067

Battery replacement

The transmitter uses a 3 volt lithium battery which will normally last for several years. When replacement is necessary, use the following procedure.

1. Insert a slim tool into the slot and gently pry open the transmitter center cover (1).
2. Replace the battery with new one. When replacing the battery, make sure the battery position.
3. Install the battery in the reverse order of removal.

For replacement transmitters, we recommend that you contact an authorized Kia dealer.

⚡ CAUTION

- *The keyless entry system transmitter is designed to give you years of trouble-free use, however it can malfunction if exposed to moisture or static electricity. If you are unsure how to use your transmitter or replace the battery, we recommend that you contact an authorized Kia dealer.*
- *Using the wrong battery can cause the transmitter to malfunction. Be sure to use the correct battery.*
- *To avoid damaging the transmitter, don't drop it, get it wet, or expose it to heat or sunlight.*

⚡ CAUTION

An inappropriately disposed battery can be harmful to the environment and human health. Dispose the battery according to your local law(s) or regulation.

1

2

3

4

5

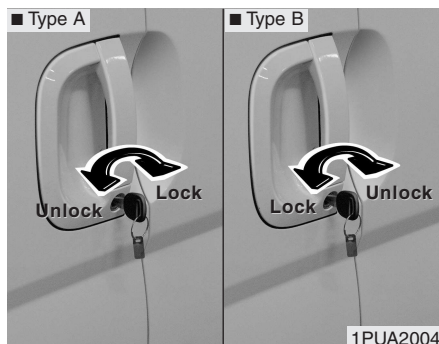
6

7

8

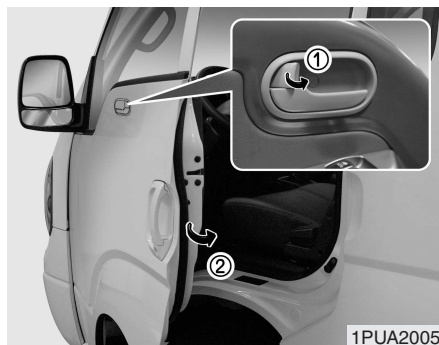
9

DOOR LOCKS



Operating door locks from outside the vehicle

- Turn the key toward rear of vehicle to lock and toward front of vehicle to unlock.
- Once the doors are unlocked, it may be opened by pulling the door handle.
- When closing the door, push the door by the hand. Make sure that doors are closed securely.



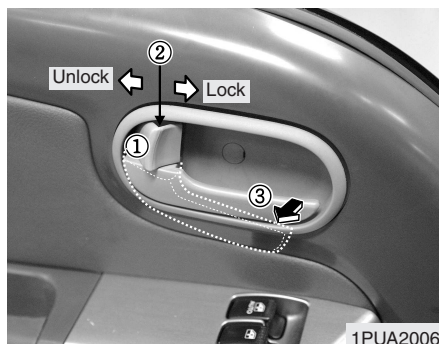
To lock a door without the key, push the inside door lock button (①) to the “Lock” position and close the door (②).

* NOTICE

Always remove the ignition key, engage the parking brake, close all windows and lock all doors when leaving your vehicle unattended.

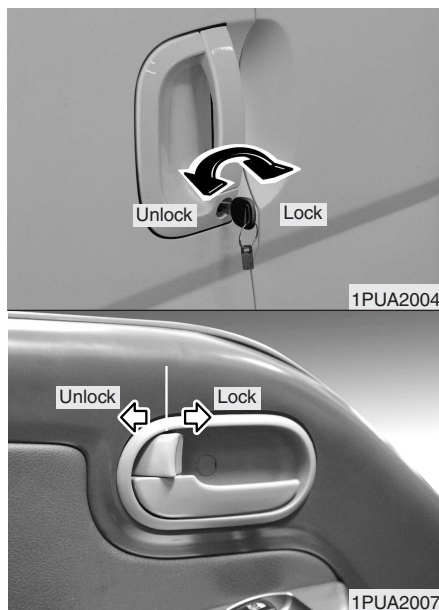
* NOTICE

If the door is locked/unlocked multiple times in rapid succession with either the vehicle key or door lock button, the system may stop operating temporarily in order to protect the circuit and prevent damage to system components.



Operating door locks from inside the vehicle

- To unlock a door, push the door lock button to the “Unlock” position.
- To lock a door, push the door lock button (①) to the “Lock” position. If the door is locked, red part (②) of the knob becomes invisible.
- To open a door, pull the door handle (③).



Central door lock system (if equipped)

If you lock/unlock the driver's door with a key or door lock button, front doors will lock/unlock automatically.

CAUTION

- *The doors should always be fully closed and locked while the vehicle is in motion to prevent accidental opening of the door. Locked doors will also discourage potential intruders when the vehicle stops or slows.*
- *Be careful when opening doors and watch for vehicles, motorcycles, bicycles or pedestrians approaching the vehicle in the path of the door. Opening a door when something is approaching can cause damage or injury.*

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

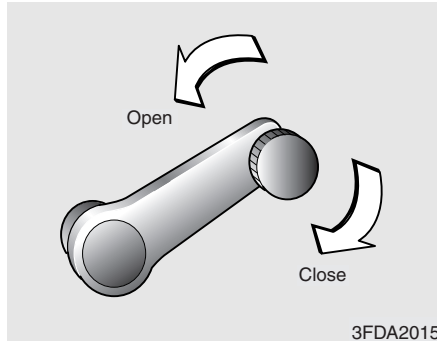
WARNING

Leaving your vehicle unlocked can invite theft or possible harm to you or others from someone hiding in your vehicle while you are gone. Always remove the ignition key, engage the parking brake, close all windows and lock all doors when leaving your vehicle unattended.

WARNING - Unattended children

An enclosed vehicle can become extremely hot, causing death or severe injury to unattended children or animals who cannot escape the vehicle. Furthermore, children might operate features of the vehicle that could injure them, or they could encounter other harm, possibly from someone gaining entry to the vehicle. Never leave children or animals unattended in your vehicle.

WINDOWS



Manual windows (if equipped)

Use the window crank to open and close each window.

* NOTICE

If you notice buffeting and pulsation (wind shock) with either side window open, you should open the opposite window slightly to reduce the condition.

Power windows (if equipped)

The ignition switch must be in the ON position for power windows to operate. Front doors have a power window switch that controls that door's window.

* NOTICE

To prevent the power window system from the possibility of damage, do not open or close two windows at the same time. This will also ensure the longevity of the fuse.

CAUTION

- **Make sure heads and hands are safely out of the way before closing a window.**
- **Do not allow children to play with the power windows. Serious injury can result from unintentional window operation by the child.**
- **Do not extend face or arms outside through the window opening while driving.**
- **Always double check to make sure all arms, hands and other obstructions are safely out of the way before closing a window.**

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9



Power window timer (if equipped)

The power windows can be operated for approximately 30 seconds after the ignition key is removed or turned to the ACC or LOCK position. However, if the front doors are opened, the power windows cannot be operated even within the 30 seconds after the ignition key removal.

Window opening and closing

The driver's door has a master power window switch that controls the front windows in the vehicle. To open or close a window, press down (1) or pull up (1) the front portion of the corresponding switch.

SEAT

⚠ WARNING

- Loose objects in the driver's foot area could interfere with the operation of the foot pedals, possibly causing an accident. Loose objects might interfere with the seat slide mechanism. Do not place anything under the front seats.
- Children should never be left unattended in the car.
- Use extreme caution when picking small objects trapped under the seats or between the seat and the center console. Your hands might be cut or injured by the sharp edges of the seat mechanism.

⚠ WARNING - Driver's seat

- Never attempt to adjust seat while the vehicle is moving. This could result in loss of control, and an accident causing death, serious injury, or property damage.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- Do not allow anything to interfere with the normal position of the seatback. Storing items against a seatback or in any other way interfering with proper locking of a seatback could result in serious or fatal injury in a sudden stop or collision.
- Always drive and ride with your seatback upright and the lap portion of the safety belt, or lap belt, snug and low across the hips. This position puts your safety belts in the best position to protect you in case of an accident.

Front seat adjustment

Adjust the seat before driving, and make sure the seat is locked securely by trying to move forward and backward without using the control lever. If the seat moves, it is not locked properly.

***Adjusting the seat forward and backward (driver's seat)***

To move the seat forward or backward:

1. Pull the seat slide adjustment lever under the front edge of the seat cushion up and hold it.
2. Slide the seat to the position you desire.
3. Release the lever and make sure the seat is locked in place.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

1

2

3

4

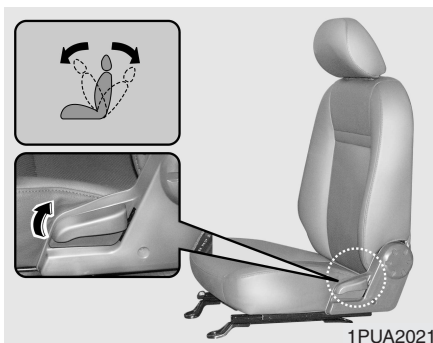
5

6

7

8

9



Adjusting the seatback recliner (if equipped)

To recline the seatback:

1. Lean forward slightly and lift up on the seatback recline lever located on the outside of the seat, at the rear.
2. Carefully lean back on the seat and adjust the seatback to the position you desire.
3. Release the lever and make sure the seatback is locked in place. (The lever **MUST** return to its original position for the seatback to lock.)

⚠ WARNING

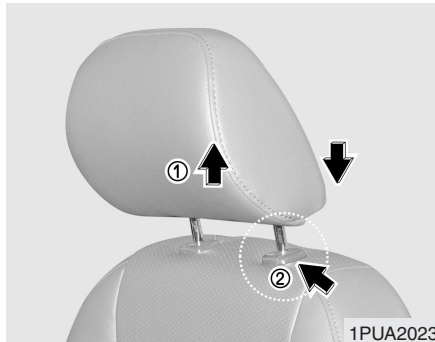
Driving or riding in a vehicle with a front seatback reclined could lead to serious or fatal injury in an accident. If a front seat is reclined during an accident, the occupant's hips may slide under the lap portion of the safety belt applying great force to the unprotected abdomen or neck. Serious or fatal internal injuries could result. Keep the seatbacks in a comfortably upright position whenever the vehicle is in motion.



Lumbar support (for driver's seat, if equipped)

The lumbar support can be adjusted by pressing the lumbar support switch on the side of the seat.

1. Press the front portion of the switch to increase support, or the rear portion of the switch, to decrease support.
2. Release the switch once it reaches the desired position.

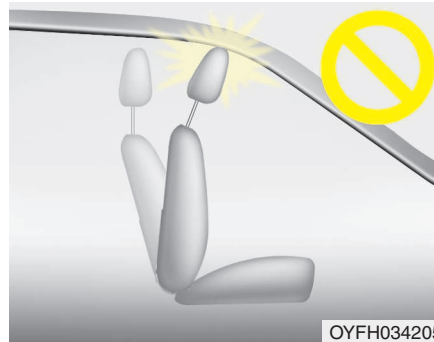


Headrest adjustment

Adjusting the height up and down

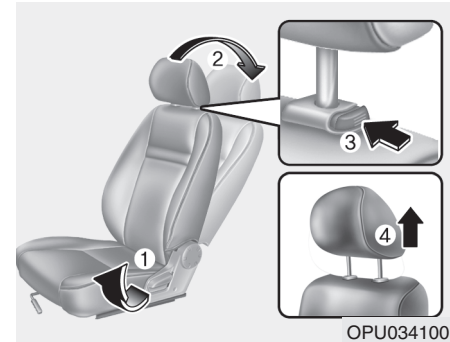
The headrest not only provides comfort for the driver and passengers, but also helps to protect the head and neck in the event of a collision.

To raise the headrest, pull it up to the desired position. To lower the headrest, push and hold the release button on the headrest support and lower the headrest to the desired position. For best protection, adjust the headrest so its center is as high as your ears.



CAUTION

If you recline the seatback towards the front with the headrest and seat cushion raised, the headrest may come in contact with the sunvisor or other parts of the vehicle.



Removal and installation

To remove the headrest:

1. Recline the seatback (2) with the recline lever (1).
2. Raise headrest as far as it can go.
3. Press the headrest release button (3) while pulling the headrest up (4).

WARNING

NEVER allow anyone to ride in a seat with the headrest removed.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

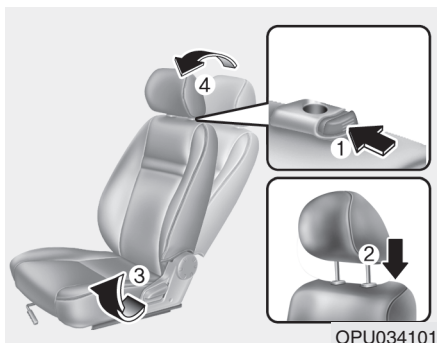
9

1

2

3

4



To reinstall the headrest :

1. Put the headrest poles (2) into the holes while pressing the release button (1).
2. Recline the seatback (4) with the recline lever (3).
3. Adjust the headrest to the appropriate height.

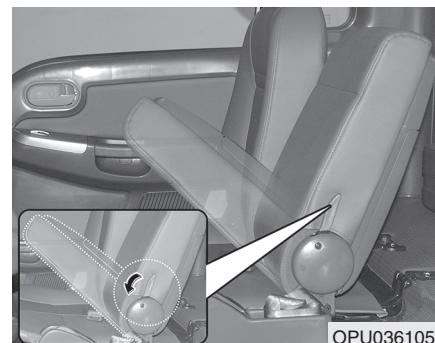
⚠ WARNING

Always make sure the headrest locks into position after reinstalling and adjusting it properly.

⚠ WARNING

To reduce the risk of head and neck injuries, do not drive the vehicle with the headrest removed or improperly positioned.

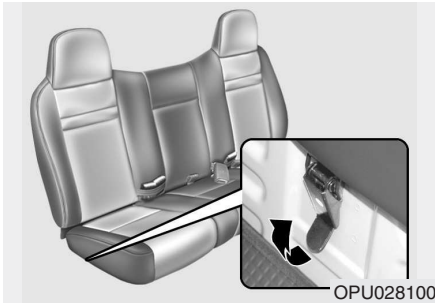
Do not adjust the driver's headrest while driving.



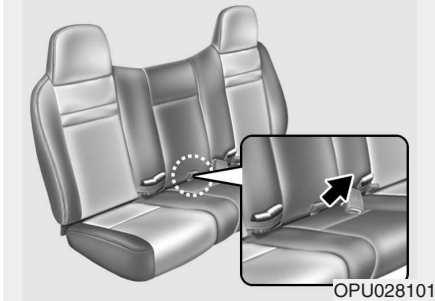
Center seat

To use it as a console box, push down the release lever beside the seat and fold the seatback forward.

To use it as a seat, push down the release lever beside the seat and stand the seatback upright.



OPU028100



OPU028101

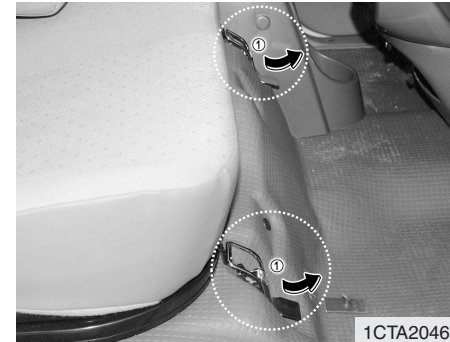
Rear seat cushion under box (if equipped)

There is multipurpose receipt space under the rear seat cushion.

1. Unsnap the clasps at the front of the seat cushion.
2. Raise up the seat cushion at the rear of the seat cushion.

⚠ WARNING

When you return the seat cushion to its original position, make sure the safety belts are in position to be accessible and to function properly.



1CTA2046

Engine room access

Front passenger's seat

To access the engine room under the front passenger's seat,

1. Fold the passenger's seatback and center seatback.
2. Unsnap the clasps (①) at the front of the seat cushion.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

1

2

3

4

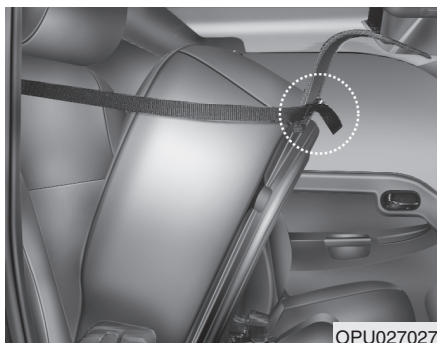
5

6

7

8

9



3. Raise the seat and lock the tie-down strap on the anchor below the passenger's seat to fasten the seat. Use each bezel on the strap to adjust the angle when raising the seat.

⚠ WARNING

Do not leave gloves, rags or any other combustible material in the engine compartment. Doing so may cause a heat-induced fire.

⚠ WARNING - 2.5L Engine

Never work on injection system with engine running or within 30 seconds after shutting off engine. High-pressure pump, rail, injectors and high-pressure pipes are subject to high pressure even after the engine stopped. The fuel jet produced by fuel leaks may cause serious injury, if it touches the body. People using pacemakers should not move than 30cm closer to the ECU or wiring harness within the engine room while engine is running, since the high currents in the electronic engine control system produce considerable magnetic fields.

SAFETY BELTS

Safety belt restraint system

WARNING - Safety belts

- **To minimize the risk of serious or fatal injury in an accident, the driver and all passengers should use the appropriate safety restraints for their age and size.**
- **Never wear a seat belt over fragile objects. If there is a sudden stop or impact, the seat belt can damage it.**

We strongly recommend that the driver and all passengers be properly restrained at all times by using the safety belts provided with the vehicle. Proper use of the safety belts decreases the risk of severe injury or death in accidents or sudden stops.

Front seats have lap/shoulder belts. Inertial locks in the safety belt retractors allow all of the lap/shoulder safety belts to remain unlocked during normal vehicle operation. This allows the occupants some freedom of movement and increased comfort while using the safety belts. If a force is applied to the vehicle, such as a strong stop, a sharp turn, or a collision, the safety belt retractors will automatically lock the safety belts.

Since the inertial locks do not require a collision in order to lock up, you may become aware of the safety belts locking while braking or going around sharp corners.

Safety belts provide the best restraint when:

- The seatback is upright.
- The occupant is sitting upright (not slouched).
- The lap belt is snug across the hips.
- The shoulder belt is snug across the chest.
- The knees are straight forward.

To help you remember to fasten your safety belt, a warning light will come on.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

⚠ WARNING - After a collision

- Lap/shoulder belt assemblies may be stretched or damaged when subjected to the stress and forces of a collision.
- The entire restraint system should be inspected following any collision. All belts, retractors, anchors and hardware damaged by a collision should be replaced before the vehicle is operated again.

⚠ WARNING - Cargo area

Passengers should never be allowed to ride in the cargo area of a vehicle. No safety belts are provided for the cargo area. Persons riding in the vehicle without a fastened safety belt are much more likely to suffer serious bodily injury or death during an accident.

⚠ WARNING - Twisted belts

A twisted or jammed safety belt cannot restrain you properly. If you cannot untwist or unjam the safety belt, we recommend that you contact an authorized Kia dealer. Never drive or ride with a twisted or jammed safety belt.

⚠ WARNING - Belt use

Safety belts must be used correctly to work properly in an accident. Each seating position in your vehicle has a specific safety belt assembly that includes a buckle and tongue designed to be used together.

For greatest effectiveness, follow these guidelines in using safety belts:

- Use the shoulder portion of the safety belt on the outside shoulder only. Never wear the shoulder portion under the arm.
- Never swing the safety belt around your neck to fit over the inside shoulder.
- Never wear the shoulder portion of the safety belt across the neck or face.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- Wear the lap portion as low as possible. Be sure that the lap belt fits snugly around the hips. Never wear a lap portion of a lap/shoulder belt over your waist; it should always go over the stronger area of your hips.
- Never use a single safety belt for more than one person.
- The front seatbacks should always remain in a comfortable, upright position when the vehicle is moving.

⚠ WARNING - Safety belt care

- A damaged belt may not give you the protection you need in an accident.
- Inspect your safety belts periodically for excessive wear or damage. Pull out each belt fully and look for fraying, cuts, burns or other damage. Pull the safety belt out and let it retract a number of times. Make sure that the lap/shoulder belts return smoothly and easily into the retractor.
- Check the latches to make sure they latch and release without interference or delay.
- Never close the doors on any part of the lap or shoulder belt.
- Any belt not in good condition or in good working order should be promptly replaced.

⚡ CAUTION

Never close the doors on any part of the lap or shoulder belt. It can damage the safety belt or buckle which could increase the risk of injury in case of an accident.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

1

2

3

4

5

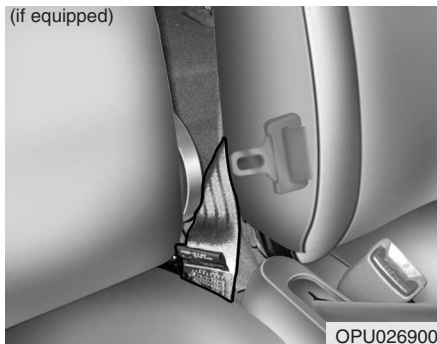
6

7

8

9

(if equipped)



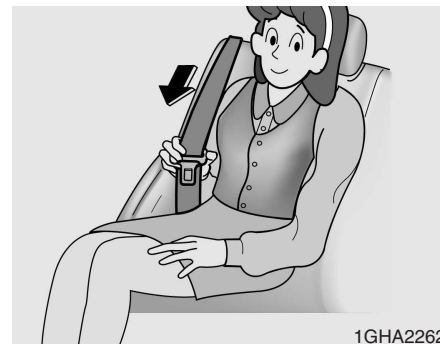
CAUTION

When you fold the center seatback, put the center safety belt into the rear seatback pocket of the driver's seat. Doing so can prevent the safety belt from being damaged by the center seatback.



Safety belt warning light

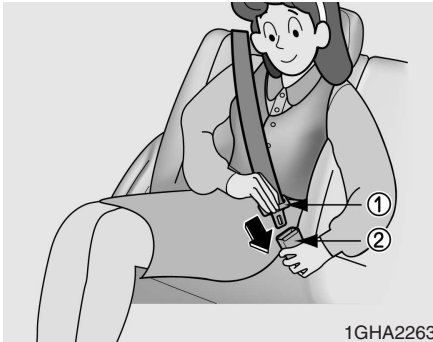
As a reminder to the driver and passenger (if equipped), safety belt warning light will blink and chime will sound (if equipped) for approximately 6 seconds each time you turn the ignition switch ON.



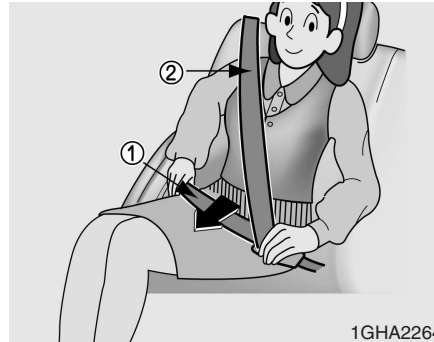
Lap/shoulder belt

To fasten the front lap/shoulder belt:

1. Grasp the buckle and tongue plate.
2. Slowly pull the lap/shoulder belt out from the retractor.



3. Insert the tongue plate (①) into the open end of the buckle (②) until an audible “click” is heard, indicating the belt is locked in the buckle.



4. Position the lap portion (①) of the belt across your lap as **LOW ON THE HIPS** as possible to reduce the risk of sliding under it during an accident. Adjust the belt to a **SNUG FIT** by pulling up on the shoulder portion (②) of the safety belt. The belt retractor is designed to take up excess webbing automatically and to maintain tension on the belt. For your safety, do not put any excess slack into the safety belt at any location.

* NOTICE

If you are not able to pull out the safety belt from the retractor, firmly pull the belt out and release it. Then you will be able to pull the belt out smoothly.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

1

2

3

4

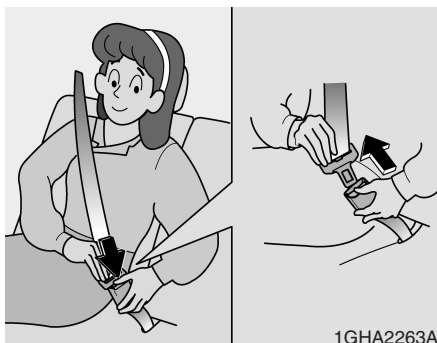
5

6

7

8

9



To unfasten the front lap/shoulder belt:

Press the release button on the buckle and allow the belt to slowly retract.

⚠ WARNING

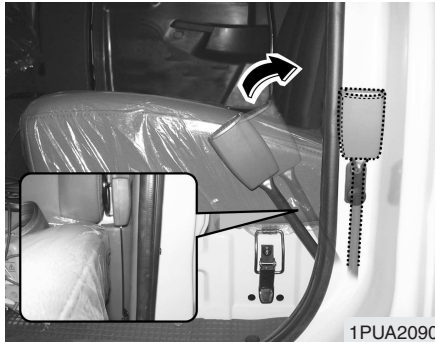
- The seatbacks should always remain in a comfortable, upright position while the vehicle is in motion. The safety belt system will provide the most protection with the seatbacks in an upright position.
- Never wear the shoulder portion of the safety belt under the outside arm or behind the back.
- Never wear the shoulder portion of the safety belt across the neck or face.
- Wear the lap portion of the safety belt as low on the hips as possible. Be sure the lap belt fits snugly around the hips. Never wear the lap belt over your waist.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- Never drive or ride with a twisted or jammed safety belt. If you cannot untwist or unjam the safety belt, we recommend that you contact an authorized Kia dealer.
- Never use a single belt to restrain more than one person at a time.

Failure to follow these warnings will increase the risk and severity of injury in an accident.

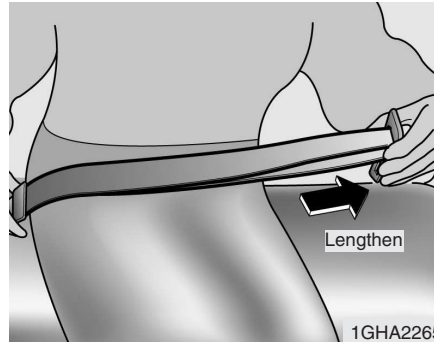


**Rear seat safety belt
(for DOUBLE CAB model)**

⚠ WARNING

When you do not fasten the safety belts on the outsides of the rear seats, keep the buckle in an upright position towards the back of the seat to maintain it safely.

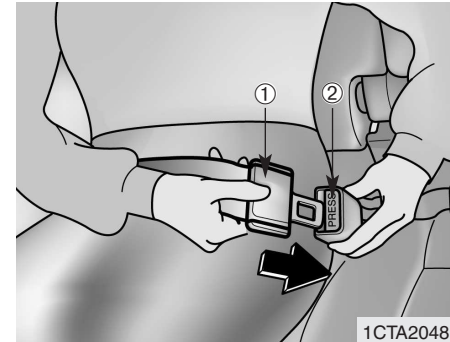
Doing so can prevent the buckle from being damaged causing serious or fatal injuries in an accident.



Lap belt (if equipped)

To fasten the lap belt:

1. Grasp the tongue plate end and pull it low over the abdomen.



2. Insert the tongue plate (①) into the open end of the buckle (②) until an audible “click” is heard, indicating the latch is locked. Make sure the belt is not twisted.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

1

2

3

4

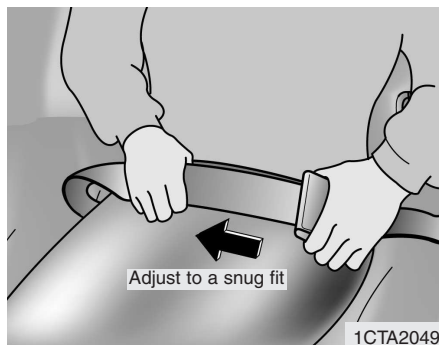
5

6

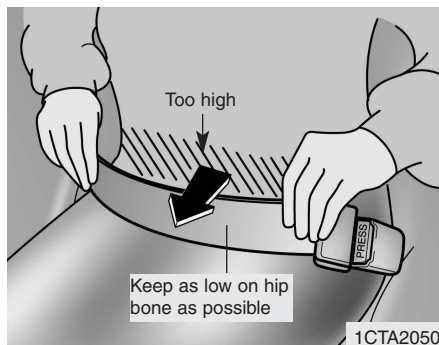
7

8

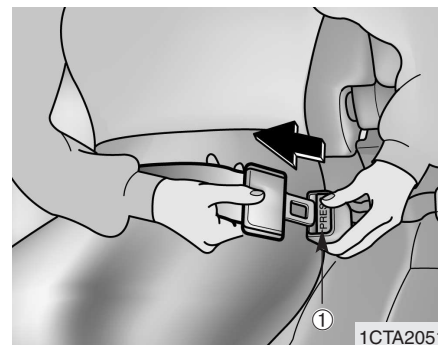
9



3. Grasp the free portion of the belt webbing and pull until the belt is snug over the hips and lower abdomen. If it becomes necessary to lengthen or shorten the belt, hold the latch plate tongue at right angles to the webbing and pull.



4. Make sure that the belt is placed as **LOW ON THE HIPS** as possible.



To unfasten the lap belt:

Press the release button (①) on buckle.

⚠ WARNING - Lap belt

Be sure the lap belt is positioned snugly around the hips, and not on the waist. Failure to position the lap belt snugly around the hips will increase the chance and severity of injury in the event of a collision.

Proper use and care of the safety belt system

To ensure that the safety belts provide the maximum protection, please follow these instructions:

- Use the belts at all times - even on short trips.
- If the safety belt is twisted, straighten it prior to use.
- Keep sharp edges and damaging objects away from the belts.
- Periodically inspect belt webbing, anchors, buckles and all other parts for signs of wear and damage. Replace damaged, excessively worn or questionable parts immediately.

- To clean the belt webbing, use a mild soap solution recommended for cleaning upholstery or carpets. Follow the instructions provided with the soap.
- Do not make modifications or additions to the safety belt.
- After wearing a safety belt, make sure it fully retracts to the stowed position. Do not allow the belt to get caught in the door when you close it.

WARNING

Do not bleach or dye the webbing because this may weaken the webbing fibers and allow them to fail when loaded in a collision.

Restraint of pregnant women

Pregnant women should wear lap/shoulder belt assemblies whenever possible according to specific recommendations by their doctors. The lap portion of the belt should be worn **AS SNUGLY AND LOW AS POSSIBLE**.

WARNING - Pregnant women

Pregnant women must never place the lap portion of the safety belt over the area of the abdomen where the fetus is located or above the abdomen where the belt could crush the fetus during an impact.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

Restraint of infants and small children

1

To increase their safety, infants and young children should always be restrained by a restraint system approved for their age and size.

2

Never allow a child to stand or kneel on the seat of a moving vehicle. Never allow a safety belt to be placed around both a child and an adult or around two children at the same time.

3

It is best for children to be seated in the rear seat.

4

5

6

7

8

9

WARNING - Children on laps

Never hold a child on your lap or in your arms in a moving vehicle.

Even a very strong person cannot hold onto a child in the event of even a minor collision.

CAUTION - Hot metal parts

Safety belts and seats can become hot in a vehicle that has been closed during warm/hot weather; they could burn a child. Check seat covers and buckles before you place a child anywhere near them.

Many companies manufacture child restraint systems (often called child seats) for infants and small children. An acceptable child restraint system must always satisfy the Safety Standards of your country. Make sure that any child-restraint system you use in your vehicle is labelled as complying with those safety standards.

The child-restraint system should be chosen to fit both the size of the child and the size of the vehicle seat. Be sure to follow any instructions provided by the child-restraint system manufacturer when installing the child-restraint system.

Restraint of larger children

As children grow, they may need to use new child-restraint systems, including larger child seats or booster seats, which are appropriate for their increased size.

A child who has outgrown available child-restraint systems should use the belts provided in the vehicle. When seated in the rear outboard seats, the child should be restrained by the lap/shoulder belt.

If the shoulder belt portion slightly touches the child's neck or face, try placing the child closer to the center of the vehicle. If the shoulder belt still touches their face or neck they may need to be returned to a child restraint system. In addition, after-market devices are available from independent manufacturers which help pull the shoulder belt down and away from the child's face or neck.

WARNING - Shoulder belts on small children

- **Never allow a shoulder belt to be in contact with a child's neck or face while the vehicle is in motion.**
- **If safety belts are not properly worn and adjusted, there is a risk of death or serious injury to such a child.**

Installation on the rear seats

WARNING

- **Before installing the child restraint system, read the instructions supplied by the child restraint system manufacturer.**
- **Failure to observe this manual instructions regarding child restraint system and the instructions provided with the child restraint system could increase the chance and/or severity of injury in an accident.**
- **If the child restraint seat is not anchored properly, the risk of a child being seriously injured or killed in a collision greatly increases.**

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

1

2

3

4

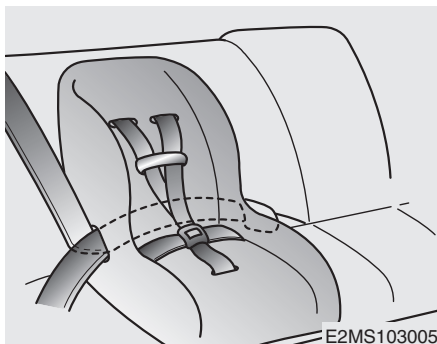
5

6

7

8

9



Installing a child restraint system by lap/shoulder belt (on the outboard rear seat)

To install a child restraint system on the outboard rear seat, do the following:

1. Place the child restraint system in the desired position.
2. Extend the shoulder/lap belt from its retractor.



3. Route the lap/shoulder belt through the restraint according to the seat manufacturer's instructions.



4. Buckle the seat belt and allow the seat belt to take up any slack. After installation of the child restraint system, try to move it in all directions to be sure the child restraint system is securely installed.

If you need to tighten the belt, pull more webbing toward the retractor. When you unbuckle the seat belt and allow it to retract, the retractor will automatically revert back to its normal seated passenger emergency locking usage condition.

Child seat restraint suitability for seat position using the seat belt - For Europe

Use child safety seats that have been officially approved and are appropriate for your children. When using the child safety seats, refer to the following table.

Age group	Seating Position			
	1st row passenger	1st row center	2nd row outboards	2nd row center
0 : Up to 10 kg (0 to 9 months)	X	X	UF	X
0+ : Up to 13 kg (0 to 2 years)	X	X	UF	X
I : 9 kg to 18 kg (9 months to 4 years)	X	X	UF	X
II&III : 15 kg to 36 kg (4 to 12 years)	X	X	UF	X

X : Seat position not suitable for children in this mass group

UF: Suitable for forward-facing "universal" category restraints approved for use in this mass group

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9



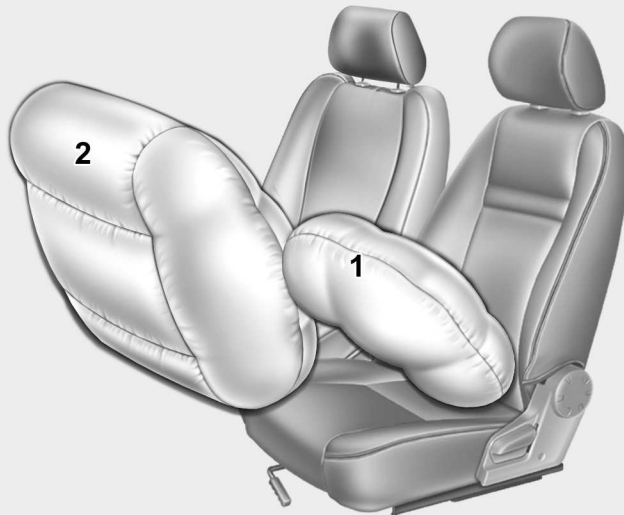
Installing a child restraint system by lap belt (on the center rear seat) (if equipped-Except Europe)

To install a child restraint system on the center rear seats, do the following:

1. Place the child restraint system on the center rear seat.
2. Extend the latch plate tongue of the lap belt.

3. Route the lap belt through the restraint according to the seat manufacturer's instructions.
4. Buckle the seat belt and adjust the lap belt for a snug hold on the child restraint by pulling on the loose end of the belt. After installation of the child restraint system, try to move it in all directions to be sure the child restraint system is securely installed.

AIR BAG - SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)



* The actual air bag in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

OJK034068

- (1) Driver's air bag*
- (2) Passenger's air bag*
- * : if equipped

⚠ WARNING

- Even in vehicles with air bag, you must always wear the safety belts provided in order to minimize the risk and severity of injury in the event of a collision or rollover.
- SRS and pretensioners contain explosive chemicals.
If scraping a vehicle without removing SRS and pretensioners from a vehicle, it may cause fire. Before scraping a vehicle, we recommend that you contact an authorized Kia dealer.
- Keep the SRS parts and wirings away from water or any liquid. If the SRS components are inoperative due to exposure to water or liquids, it may cause fire or severe injury.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

How does the air bag system operate

- Air bag is activated (able to inflate if necessary) only when the ignition switch is turned to the ON or START position.
- Air bag inflates instantly in the event of serious frontal in order to help protect the occupants from serious physical injury.

- There is no single speed at which the air bag will inflate.

Generally, air bag is designed to inflate based upon the severity of a collision and its direction. These two factors determine whether the sensors produce an electronic deployment/ inflation signal.

- Air bag deployment depends on a number of factors including vehicle speed, angles of impact and the density and stiffness of the vehicles or objects which your vehicle hits in the collision. The determining, factors are not limited to those mentioned above.

- The front air bag will completely inflate and deflate in an instant.

It is virtually impossible for you to see the air bag inflates during an accident. It is much more likely that you will simply see the deflated air bag hanging out of their storage compartments after the collision.

- In order to help provide protection in a severe collision, the air bag must inflate rapidly. The speed of air bag inflation is a consequence of extremely short time in which a collision occurs and the need to get the air bag between the occupant and the vehicle structures before the occupant impacts those structures. This speed of inflation reduces the risk of serious or life-threatening injuries in a severe collision and is thus a necessary part of air bag design.

However, air bag inflation can also cause injuries which can include facial abrasions, bruises and broken bones because the inflation speed also causes the air bag to expand with a great deal of force.

- There are even circumstances under which contact with the steering wheel air bag can cause fatal injuries, especially if the occupant is positioned excessively close to the steering wheel.

⚠ WARNING

- To avoid severe personal injury or death caused by deploying air bag in a collision, the driver should sit as far back from the steering wheel air bag as possible (at least 250 mm (10 inches) away).
- Air bag inflation may cause injuries including facial or bodily abrasions, injuries from broken glasses or burns.

Noise and smoke

When the air bag inflates, they make a loud noise and they leave smoke and powder in the air inside of the vehicle. This is normal and is a result of the ignition of the air bag inflator. After the air bag inflates, you may feel substantial discomfort in breathing due to the contact of your chest with both the seat belt and the air bag, as well as from breathing the smoke and powder. **Open your doors and/or windows as soon as possible after impact in order to reduce discomfort and prevent prolonged exposure to the smoke and powder.**

Though smoke and powder are non-toxic, it may cause irritation to the skin (eyes, nose and throat, etc.). If this is the case, wash and rinse with cold water immediately and consult the doctor if the symptom persists.



W7-147

Air bag warning light

The purpose of the air bag warning light in your instrument panel is to alert you of a potential problem with your air bag - Supplemental Restraint System (SRS).

When the ignition switch is turned ON, the warning light should illuminate for approximately 6 seconds, then go off.

Have the system checked if:

- The light does not turn on briefly when you turn the ignition ON.
- The light stays on after illuminating for approximately 6 seconds.
- The light comes on while the vehicle is in motion.

⚠ WARNING

When the air bag deploys, the air bag related parts in the steering wheel is very hot. To prevent injury, do not touch the air bag storage areas internal components immediately after an air bag has inflated.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

Driver's air bag



OPU022447

Driver's air bag (if equipped)

Your vehicle is equipped with a Supplemental Restraint (Air Bag) System and lap/shoulder belts at the driver seating positions.

The indications of the system's presence are the letters "AIR BAG" embossed on the air bag pad cover in the steering wheel.

The SRS consists of air bag installed under the pad covers in the center of the steering wheel.

The purpose of the SRS is to provide the vehicle's driver with additional protection than that offered by the seat belt system alone in case of a frontal impact of sufficient severity.

⚠ WARNING

- If an air bag deploys, there may be a loud noise followed by a fine dust released in the vehicle. These conditions are normal and are not hazardous - the air bag is packed in this fine powder. The dust generated during air bag deployment may cause skin or eye irritation as well as aggravate asthma for some persons. Always wash all exposed skin areas thoroughly with cold water and a mild soap after an accident in which the air bag was deployed.
- The SRS can function only when the ignition switch is in the ON position.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- Before you replace a fuse or disconnect a battery terminal, turn the ignition switch to the LOCK position and remove the ignition key. Never remove or replace the air bag related fuse(s) when the ignition switch is in the ON position. Failure to heed this warning will cause the SRS air bag warning light to illuminate.

Why didn't my air bag go off in a collision? (Inflation and non-inflation conditions of the air bag)

There are many types of accidents in which the air bag would not be expected to provide additional protection.

These include rear impacts, side impacts, rollover, second or third collisions in multiple impact accidents, as well as low speed impacts.



Air bag collision sensors

- (1) SRS control module
- (2) Front impact sensor

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

⚠ WARNING

- Do not hit or allow any objects to impact the locations where air bag or sensors are installed. This may cause unexpected air bag deployment, which could result in serious personal injury or death.

- If the installation location or angle of the sensors is altered in any way, the air bag may deploy when they should not or they may not deploy when they should, causing severe injury or death.

Therefore, do not try to perform maintenance on or around the air bag sensors. We recommend that the system be checked and repaired by an authorized Kia dealer.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- Problems may arise if the sensor installation angles are changed due to the deformation of the front bumper or body. We recommend that the system be checked and repaired by an authorized Kia dealer.
- Your vehicle has been designed to absorb impact and deploy the air bag in certain collisions. Installing aftermarket bumper guards or replacing a bumper with non-genuine parts may adversely affect your vehicles collision and air bag deployment performance.



OHR012031

Air bag inflation conditions

Front air bag is designed to inflate in a frontal collision depending on the intensity, speed or angles of impact of the front collision.



Air bag non-inflation conditions

- In certain low-speed collisions the air bag may not deploy. The air bag is designed not to deploy in such cases because they may not provide benefits beyond the protection of the seat belts in such collisions.



- Air bag is not designed to inflate in rear collisions, because occupants are moved backward by the force of the impact. In this case, inflated air bag would not be able to provide any additional benefit.



- Front air bag may not inflate in side impact collisions, because occupants move to the direction of the collision, and thus in side impacts, frontal air bag deployment would not provide additional occupant protection.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

1

2

3

4

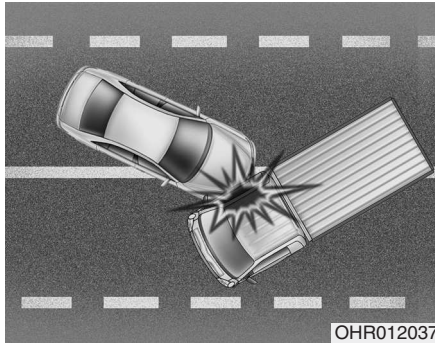
5

6

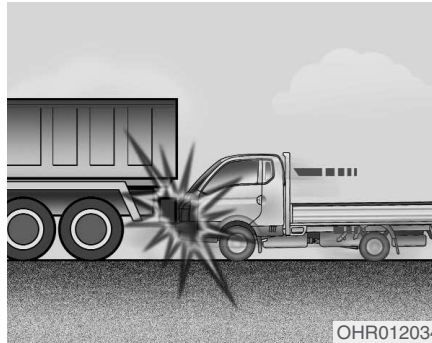
7

8

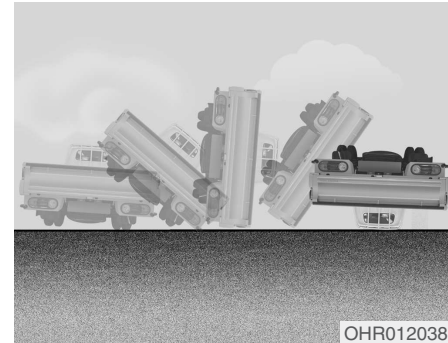
9



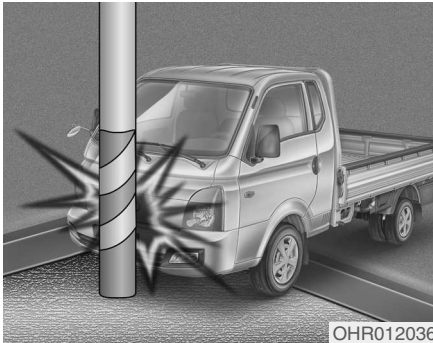
- In a slant or angled collision, the force of impact may direct the occupants in a direction where the air bag would not be able to provide any additional benefit, and thus the sensors may not deploy any air bag.



- Just before impact, drivers often brake heavily. Such heavy braking lowers the front portion of the vehicle causing it to “ride” under a vehicle with a higher ground clearance. Air bag may not inflate in this “under-ride” situation because deceleration forces that are detected by sensors may be significantly reduced by such “under-ride” collisions.



- Airbag do not inflate in most rollover accidents.



OHR012036

- Air bag may not inflate if the vehicle collides with objects such as utility poles or trees, where the point of impact is concentrated to one area and the full force of the impact is not delivered to the sensors.

SRS Care

The SRS is virtually maintenance-free and so there are no parts you can safely service by yourself. If the SRS air bag warning light does not illuminate when you turn the ignition ON, or if it continuously remains on, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.

Improper handling of the SRS system may result in serious personal injury.

⚠ WARNING

- **Modification to SRS components or wiring, including the addition of any kind of badges to the pad covers or modifications to the body structure, can adversely affect SRS performance and lead to possible injury.**
- **For cleaning the air bag pad covers, use only a soft, dry cloth or one which has been moistened with plain water. Solvents or cleaners could adversely affect the air bag covers and proper deployment of the system.**
- **No objects should be placed over or near the air bag modules on the steering wheel, instrument panel, and the front passenger's panel above the glove box, because any such object could cause harm if the vehicle is in a crash severe enough to cause the air bag to inflate.**

(Continued)

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

(Continued)

- If the air bags inflate, we recommend that the system be replaced by an authorized Kia dealer.
- Do not tamper with or disconnect SRS wiring, or other components of the SRS system. Doing so could result in injury, due to accidental inflation of the air bag or by rendering the SRS inoperative.
- If components of the air bag system must be discarded, or if the vehicle must be scrapped, certain safety precautions must be observed. An authorized Kia dealer knows these precautions and can give you the necessary information. Failure to follow these precautions and procedures could increase the risk of personal injury.
- If your car was flooded and has soaked carpeting or water on the flooring, you shouldn't try to start the engine; we recommend that you contact an authorized Kia dealer.

WARNING

- Sitting improperly or out of position can cause occupants to be shifted too close to a deploying air bag, strike the interior structure or be thrown from the vehicle resulting in serious injury or death.
- Always sit upright with the seatback in an upright position, centered on the seat cushion with your seat belt on, legs comfortably extended and your feet on the floor.

Adding equipment to or modifying your air bag-equipped vehicle

If you modify your vehicle by changing your vehicle's frame, bumper system, front end or side sheet metal or ride height, this may affect the operation of your vehicle's air bag system.

HOOD



Opening the hood:

1. Pull the release lever on the lower left side of the instrument panel to unlatch the hood. The hood should pop open slightly.



2. Go to the front of the vehicle, raise the hood slightly, pull the secondary latch inside of the hood center and lift the hood.
3. Lift the hood and hold it open with the support rod by inserting the free end of the rod into the slot.

Closing the hood

1. Before closing the hood, check the following:
 - All filler caps in the under hood area must be correctly installed.
 - Jack must be secured in its retainer to prevent it from rattling **(for 1Ton only)**.
2. Secure the support rod in its clip.
3. Lower the hood to about 30 cm (12 inches) height and then let it drop to properly lock in place.

Make sure the hood is properly locked before driving.
4. Check that the hood has engaged properly. If the hood can be raised slightly, it is not properly engaged. Open it again and close it with a little more force.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

REAR GATE

1

2

3

4



Opening the rear gate

1. Lift up the rear gate handle, push it inside and pull it toward you.
2. Lower the rear gate slowly with it received on both arms.

5

6

7

8

9

⚠ WARNING

When the rear combination lamps are hidden, other road users should be warned by means of warning triangle or other devices.



Closing the rear gate

Lift the rear gate up and lock the rear gate handle in place.

Make sure the rear gate is properly locked before driving.

⚠ WARNING

- Do not open the rear gate, while the vehicle is in motion.
- Fasten rope into the rope hook securely not to loosen the rope while the vehicle is in motion.

SIDE GATE



Opening the side gate

1. With the rear gate opened, pull up the knob to release the support bar down.



2. Remove the side gate handle from the hook after pulling it up.
3. Lower the side gate slowly with it received on both arms.

Closing the side gate

1. Lift the side gate up and lock the side gate handle in place.
2. Push the knob down to lock the side gates.

⚠ WARNING

When locking the side gate handle, be careful not to get your fingers into the chink in the handle.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

FUEL FILLER



1. Stop the engine.
2. Insert the key (1) and turn the key counterclockwise (if equipped).
3. To remove the cap, turn the fuel tank cap counterclockwise.
4. Refuel as needed.
5. To install the cap, turn it clockwise until it “clicks”. This indicates that the cap is securely tightened.

⚠ WARNING - Refueling

- If pressurized fuel sprays out, it can cause serious injuries. Always remove the fuel cap carefully and slowly. If the cap is venting fuel or if you hear a hissing sound, wait until the condition stops before completely removing the cap.
- Fuel vapor is very hazardous and can explode. When refueling, always stop the engine. Never allow sparks or open flames near the filler neck. Always put out cigarettes and other smoking materials before refueling.

*** NOTICE**

- Make sure to refuel with diesel fuel only for the diesel engine vehicles.
- Check to make sure the fuel filler cap is securely closed after refueling.
- If the fuel filler cap requires replacement, use only a genuine Kia cap or the equivalent specified for your vehicle. An incorrect fuel filler cap can result in a serious malfunction of the fuel system or emission control system. We recommend that caps be replaced by an authorized Kia dealer.
- Do not spill fuel on the exterior surfaces of the vehicle. Any type of fuel spilled on painted surfaces may damage the paint.

MIRRORS

Outside rearview mirror

Be sure to adjust mirror angles before driving.

Your vehicle is equipped with both left-hand and right-hand outside rearview mirrors. The mirror heads can be folded back to prevent damage during an automatic car wash or when passing in a narrow street.

CAUTION

- *The outside rearview mirror is convex. Objects seen in the mirror are closer than they appear.*
- *Use your interior rearview mirror or direct observation to determine the actual distance of following vehicles when changing lanes.*

*** NOTICE**

Do not scrape ice off the mirror face; this may damage the surface of the glass. If ice should restrict movement of the mirror, do not force the mirror for adjustment. To remove ice, use a deicer spray, or a sponge or soft cloth with very warm water.



1PUA2034

Manual type

To adjust an outside mirror, move the mirror.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

1

2

3

4

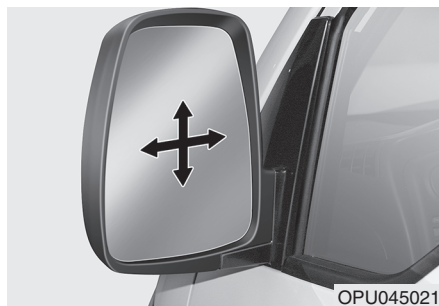
5

6

7

8

9



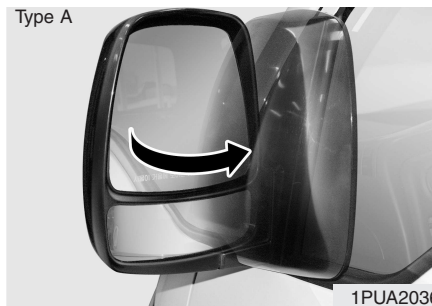
OPU045021



OPU026072

Electric type (if equipped)

The electric remote control mirror switch allows you to adjust the position of the left and right outside rearview mirrors. To adjust the position of either mirror, select the right side mirror or the left side mirror, then press a corresponding point (●) on the mirror adjustment control to position the selected mirror up, down, left or right.



1PUA2036



OPU026510L

Folding the outside rearview mirror

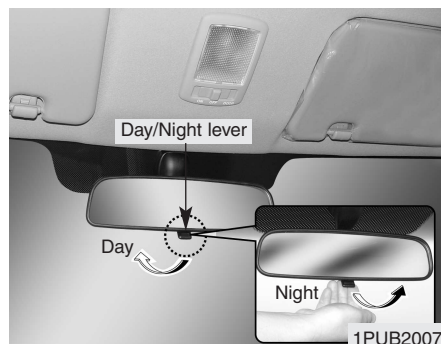
- For Type A

To fold outside rearview mirror, grasp the housing of mirror and then fold it toward the rear of the vehicle.

- For Type B

The outside rearview mirror can be folded or unfolded by pressing the switch as below.

- Folding : When you push the switch, switch indicator is illuminated.
- Unfolding : When you push the switch, switch indicator is not illuminated.

**Day/Night rearview mirror
(if equipped)**

Make this adjustment before you start driving and while the day/night lever is in the day position.

Pull the day/night lever toward you to reduce glare from the headlights of vehicles behind you during night driving.

Remember that you lose some rearview clarity in the night position.

1

2

3

4

5

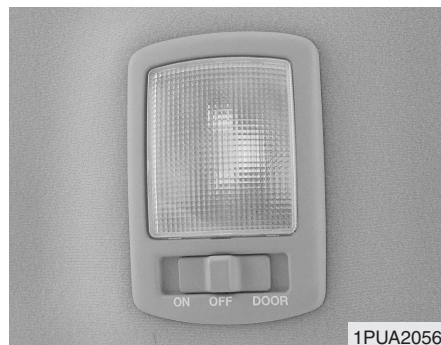
6

7

8

9

INTERIOR LIGHTS



- ① ON - The light turns on and stays on even when the doors are all closed.
- ② OFF - The light stays off even when a door is open.
- ③ DOOR - The light turns on or off when a door is opened or closed.

STORAGE COMPARTMENT

These compartments can be used to store small items required by the driver or passengers.

* NOTICE

- To avoid possible theft, do not leave valuables in the storage compartment.
- Since stored items may move while driving, be sure to position them in the storage compartment so that they do not make noise or cause a potential safety hazard when the vehicle is moving.

⚠ WARNING

Do not store cigarette lighters, propane cylinders, or other flammable/explosive materials in the vehicle. These items may catch fire and/or explode if the vehicle is exposed to hot temperatures for extended periods.



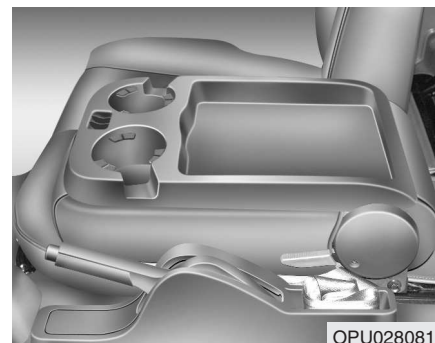
Glove box

To open the glove box, pull the handle (1) and the glove box will automatically open (2). Close the glove box after use.

For your convenience, a tissue holder is located in the glove box cover.

⚡ CAUTION

To reduce the risk of injury in case of an accident or sudden stop, always keep the glove box door closed while driving.



Center seatback console tray (if equipped)

The tray is used for storing cassette tapes or small articles.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

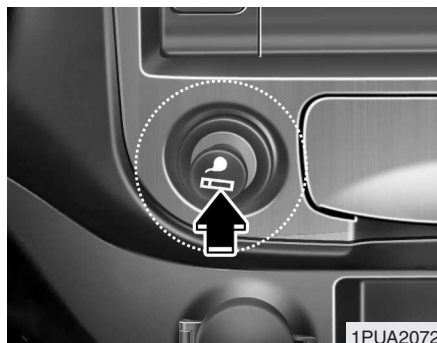
INTERIOR FEATURES

1

2

3

4



Cigarette lighter

To operate the cigarette lighter, press it in and release it. When it is heated, it automatically pops out ready for use.

If the engine is not running, the ignition switch must be in the ACC position for the lighter to operate.

* NOTICE

- Do not hold the lighter in after it is already heated because it will overheat.
- Only a genuine Kia lighter should be used in the cigarette lighter socket. The use of plug-in accessories (shavers, hand-held vacuums, and coffee pots, for example) may damage the socket or cause electrical failure.
- If the lighter does not pop out within 30 seconds, remove it to prevent overheating.

⚠ WARNING

- Never attempt to adjust the cigar lighter while the vehicle is moving. This could result in loss of control, and an accident causing death, serious injury, or property damage.
- Do not insert foreign objects into the socket of the cigarette lighter. It may damage the cigarette lighter.

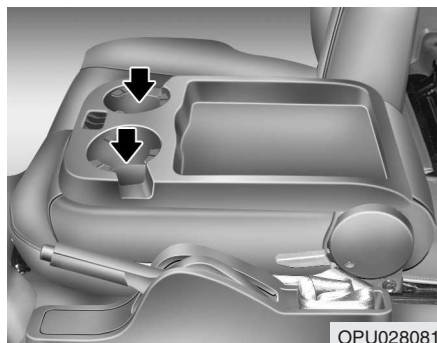


Ashtrays

To remove the ashtray to empty or clean, push the tab (①) and pull it all the way out.

⚠ WARNING - Ashtray use

- Do not use the vehicle's ashtrays as waste receptacles.
- Putting lit cigarettes or matches in an ashtray with other combustible materials may cause a fire.



OPU028081

Cup holder (if equipped)

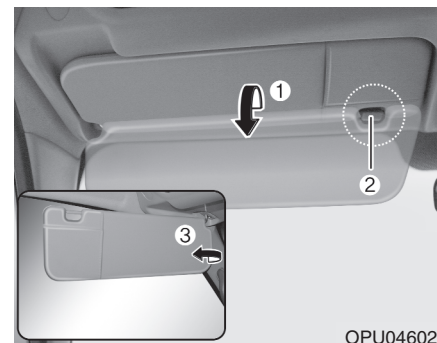
The cup holder is used for holding cups and cans.

⚠ WARNING - Hot liquids

- Do not place uncovered cups of hot liquid in the cup holder while the vehicle is in motion. If the hot liquid spills, you could be burned. Such a burn to the driver could cause a loss of control of the vehicle.
- To reduce the risk of personal injury in the event of sudden stop or collision, do not place uncovered or insecure bottles, glasses, cans, etc., in the cup holder while the vehicle is in motion.

*** NOTICE**

Do not place heavy cups or cans in cup holder. Cup holder could be damaged.



OPU046020

Sunvisor

Use the sunvisor to shield direct light through the front or side windows.

To use a sunvisor, pull it downward (1).

To use a sunvisor for a side window, pull it downward (1), unhook it from the bracket (2) and swing it to the side (3).

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

1

2

3

4



Aux, USB and iPod (if equipped)

If your vehicle has an aux and/or USB(universal serial bus) port, you can use an aux port to connect audio devices and an USB port to plug in an USB and an iPod.

* NOTICE

When using a portable audio device connected to the power outlet, noise may occur during playback. If this happens, use the power source of the portable audio device.



Digital clock

Whenever the battery terminals, or memory fuse are disconnected, you must reset the time.

When the ignition switch is in the ON position, the clock buttons operate as follows:

⚠ WARNING

Never attempt to adjust the digital clock while the vehicle is moving. This could result in loss of control, and an accident causing death, serious injury, or property damage.

- **HOUR:**

Turn the knob to the left (H), will advance the time displayed by one hour.

- **MINUTE:**

Turn the knob to the right (M), will advance the time displayed by one minute.

- **RESET:**

To clear away minutes, press the knob with your finger. Then the clock will be set precisely on the hour.

For example, if the knob is pressed while the time is between 9:01 and 9:29, the display will be reset to 9:00.

9:01~9:29 ⇒ 9:00

9:30~9:59 ⇒ 10:00

* NOTICE

Do not turn the knob excessively to prevent knob damage.

EXTERIOR TOOL BOX (FOR 1.4 TON ONLY) (IF EQUIPPED)

The exterior tool box is located behind the rear tire on right side to store jack.

To open it pull up the clamp lever and unhook the clamp.

To fix the jack, use the rubber band.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

AUDIO SYSTEM

* NOTICE

- If you install an after market HID head lamp, your vehicle's audio and electronic device may malfunction.
- Prevent chemicals such as perfume, cosmetic oil, sun cream, hand cleaner, and air freshener from contacting the interior parts because they may cause damage or discoloration.



Antenna

Your car uses a manual stainless steel antenna to receive both AM and FM broadcast signals. Pull up the antenna using your fingers.

* NOTICE

- If the antenna is dirty, be sure to clean it in order to avoid an operation malfunction.
- Before entering an automatic car wash or a place with a low height clearance, be sure that the antenna is fully retracted.

WARNING

Never attempt to adjust the antenna while the vehicle is moving. This could result in loss of control, and an accident causing death, serious injury, or property damage.

1

2

3

4

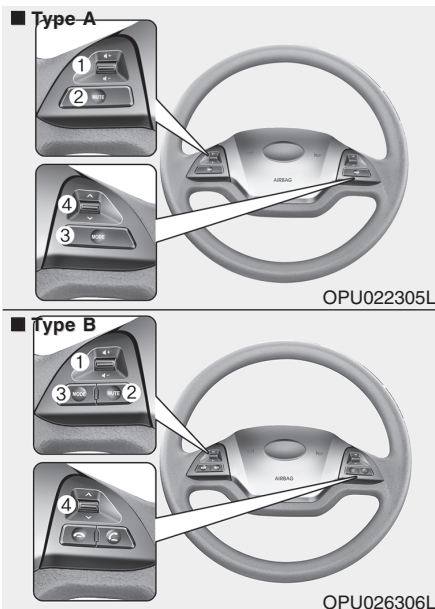
5

6

7

8

9



Audio remote control (if equipped)

The steering wheel audio remote control button is installed to promote safe driving.

CAUTION

Do not operate the audio remote control buttons simultaneously.

VOLUME (+ / -) (1)

- Push up the lever to increase volume.
- Push down the lever to decrease volume.

MUTE (2)

- Press the MUTE button to cancel the sound.
- Press the MUTE button again to activate the sound.

MODE (3)

Press the button to select Radio or CD (compact disc).

TRACK/SEEK UP (4)

- Radio Mode : Automatically searches for broadcast frequencies.
- CD modes :
 - Shortly press the key (under 0.8 seconds): Moves to next or previous song.
 - Press and hold the key (over 0.8 seconds): Rewinds or fast-forwards the current song.

Detailed information for audio control buttons is described in the following pages in this section.

1

2

3

4

5

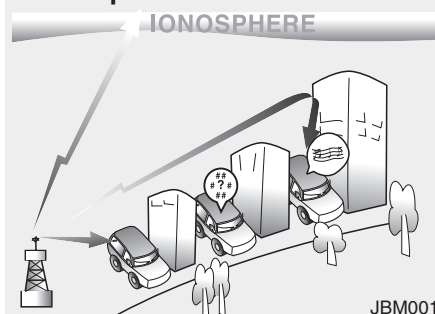
6

7

8

9

FM reception

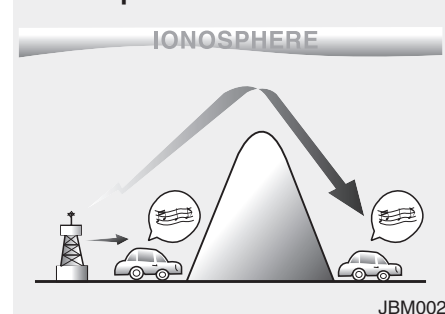


When a strong radio signal has reached your vehicle, the precise engineering of your audio system ensures the best possible quality reproduction. However, in some cases the signal coming to your vehicle may not be strong and clear. This can be due to factors such as the distance from the radio station, closeness of other strong radio stations or the presence of buildings, bridges or other large obstructions in the area.

How vehicle audio works

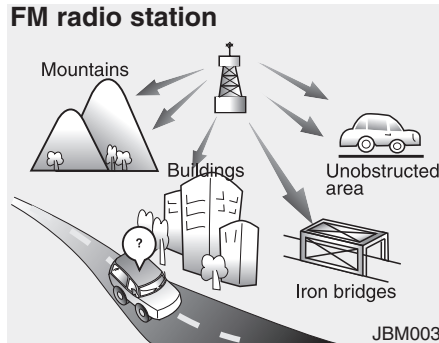
AM and FM radio signals are broadcast from transmitter towers located around your city. They are intercepted by the radio antenna on your vehicle. This signal is then received by the radio and sent to your vehicle speakers.

AM reception



AM broadcasts can be received at greater distances than FM broadcasts. This is because AM radio waves are transmitted at low frequencies. These long, low frequency radio waves can follow the curvature of the earth rather than travelling straight out into the atmosphere. In addition, they curve around obstructions so that they can provide better signal coverage.

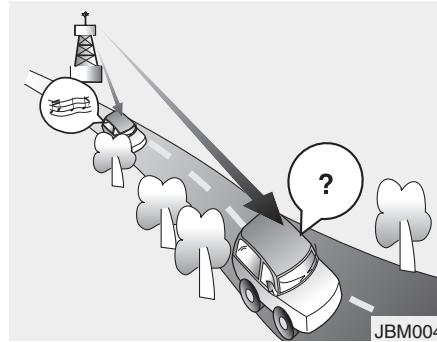
FM radio station



JBM003

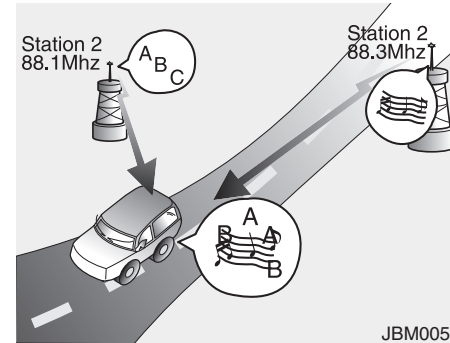
FM broadcasts are transmitted at high frequencies and do not bend to follow the earth's surface. Because of this, FM broadcasts generally begin to fade at short distances from the station.

Also, FM signals are easily affected by buildings, mountains, or other obstructions. These can result in certain listening conditions which might lead you to believe a problem exists with your radio. The following conditions are normal and do not indicate radio trouble:



JBM004

- **Fading** - As your vehicle moves away from the radio station, the signal will weaken and sound will begin to fade. When this occurs, we suggest that you select another stronger station.
- **Flutter/Static** - Weak FM signals or large obstructions between the transmitter and your radio can disturb the signal causing static or fluttering noises to occur. Reducing the treble level may lessen this effect until the disturbance clears.



JBM005

- **Station Swapping** - As a FM signal weakens, another more powerful signal near the same frequency may begin to play. This is because your radio is designed to lock onto the clearest signal. If this occurs, select another station with a stronger signal.
- **Multi-Path Cancellation** - Radio signals being received from several directions can cause distortion or fluttering. This can be caused by a direct and reflected signal from the same station, or by signals from two stations with close frequencies. If this occurs, select another station until the condition has passed.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

Using a cellular phone or a two-way radio

When a cellular phone is used inside the vehicle, noise may be produced from the audio equipment. This does not mean that something is wrong with the audio equipment. In such a case, use the cellular phone at a place as far as possible from the audio equipment.

CAUTION

When using a communication system such a cellular phone or a radio set inside the vehicle, a separate external antenna must be fitted. When a cellular phone or a radio set is used with an internal antenna alone, it may interfere with the vehicle's electrical system and adversely affect safe operation of the vehicle.

WARNING

Don't use a cellular phone when you are driving. You should stop at a safe place to use a cellular phone.

iPod®

iPod® is a trademark of Apple Inc.

Bluetooth® Wireless Technology

The Bluetooth® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Kia is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.



1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

AUDIO (Without Touch Screen A Type)

■ Type A-1



■ Type A-2



4EL3G0000EE/4EL3G0001EE

Feature of Your Audio

Head unit

■ Type A-1



■ Type A-2



* The actual features in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

(1) RADIO

- Plays Radio(FM/AM) mode.
- Each time the button is pressed, the mode is changed sequentially.

(2) MEDIA

- Plays Media USB(iPod®), AUX mode.
- Each time the button is pressed, the mode is changed sequentially.

(3) POWER/VOL knob

- Power knob: Turns power On/Off by pressing the knob.
- Volume knob: Sets volume by turning the knob left/right.

(4) SEEK

When pressed quickly

- Radio mode: Searches broadcast frequencies.
- Media mode: Changes the track, file or title. (except AUX)

When pressed and held

- Frequency is controlled by 1 step quickly. When the button is released after pressing and holding, searches broadcast frequencies.
- Media mode: Rewinds or fast-forwards the song. (except AUX)

(5) [1] ~ [3] (Preset)

When pressed quickly

- Radio mode: Receives saved frequencies(channels).
- Media mode(except AUX)
 - [1 RPT] button: Repeat/Repeat Folder
 - [2 RDM] button: Random Folder/Random

When pressed and held

- Radio mode: Saves frequencies (channels).

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

■ Type A-1



■ Type A-2



(6) **SETUP**

- Moves to Setup screen.

(7) **BACK**

- Moves to previous screen.

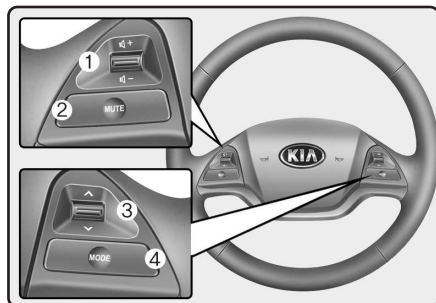
(8) **TUNE** knob

- Pressing **TUNE** knob: Displays menus for the current mode.
- Radio mode: Changes frequency by turning the knob left/right.
- Media mode: Searches songs(files) by turning the knob left/right.

(9) **FLDR**

- USB mode: Searches folders.

Steering Wheel Controls



* The actual features in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

(1) **VOLUME**

- Controls the audio volume

(2) **MUTE**

- Mutes the audio volume.

(3) **SEEK/TRACK**

When pressed quickly

- Radio mode: Searches broadcast frequencies saved to Presets.
- Media mode: Changes track, file or title. (except AUX)

When pressed and held

- Frequency is controlled by 1 step quickly. When the button is released after pressing and holding, searches broadcast frequencies.
- Media mode: Rewinds or fast-forwards the song. (except AUX)

(4) **MODE**

- Each time this is pressed, the mode is changed sequentially.
- If the media is not connected, the corresponding modes will be disabled.
- Press and hold to turn the Audio system on/off*.
- When power is off, press button to turn power back on*.

* if equipped

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

⚠ WARNING

- Audio System Safety Warnings

- Do not stare at the screen while driving. Staring at the screen for prolonged periods of time could lead to traffic accidents.
- Do not disassemble, assemble, or modify the audio system. Such acts could result in accidents, fire, or electric shock.
- Using the phone while driving may lead to a lack of attention of traffic conditions and increase the likelihood of accidents. Use the phone feature after parking the vehicle.
- Exercise caution not to spill water or introduce foreign objects into the device. Such acts could lead to smoke, fire, or product malfunction.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- Please refrain from use if the screen is blank or no sound can be heard as these signs may indicate product malfunction. Continued use in such conditions could lead to accidents (fires, electric shock) or product malfunctions.
- Do not touch the antenna during thunder or lightening as such acts may lead to lightning induced electric shock.
- Do not stop or park in parking-restricted areas to operate the product. Such acts could lead to traffic accidents.
- Use the system with the vehicle ignition turned on. Prolonged use with the ignition turned off could result in battery discharge.

⚠ WARNING - Distracted Driving

Driving while distracted can result in a loss of vehicle control that may lead to an accident, severe personal injury, and death. The driver's primary responsibility is in the safe and legal operation of a vehicle, and use of any handheld devices, other equipment, or vehicle systems which take the driver's eyes, attention and focus away from the safe operation of a vehicle or which are not permissible by law should never be used during operation of the vehicle.

⚡ CAUTION

- *Operating the device while driving could lead to accidents due to a lack of attention to external surroundings. First park the vehicle before operating the device.*
- *Adjust the volume to levels that allow the driver to hear sounds from outside of the vehicle. Driving in a state where external sounds cannot be heard may lead to accidents.*
- *Pay attention to the volume setting when turning the device on. A sudden output of extreme volume upon turning the device on could lead to hearing impairment. (Adjust the volume to a suitable levels before turning off the device.)*

(Continued)

(Continued)

- *If you want to change the position of device installation, please inquire with your place of purchase or service maintenance center. Technical expertise is required to install or disassemble the device.*
- *Turn on the car ignition before using this device. Do not operate the audio system for long periods of time with the ignition turned off as such operations may lead to battery discharge.*
- *Do not subject the device to severe shock or impact. Direct pressure onto the front side of the monitor may cause damage to the LCD or touch screen.*

(Continued)

(Continued)

- *When cleaning the device, make sure to turn off the device and use a dry and smooth cloth. Never use tough materials, chemical cloths, or solvents (alcohol, benzene, thinners, etc.) as such materials may damage the device panel or cause color/quality deterioration.*
- *Do not place beverages close to the audio system. Spilling beverages may lead to system malfunction.*
- *In case of product malfunction, please contact your place of purchase or After Service center.*
- *Placing the audio system within an electromagnetic environment may result in noise interference.*
- *Prevent caustic solutions such as perfume and cosmetic oil from contacting the dashboard because they may cause damage or discoloration.*

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

Radio

Radio Mode

Change Mode: **[RADIO]** button

- Plays Radio(FM/AM) mode. Each time the button is pressed, the mode is changed sequentially.

Search Frequency: **[SEEK]** button

- Searches the previous/next broadcast frequencies.
- Pressing the button: Searches broadcast frequencies.
- Frequency is controlled by 1 step quickly. When the button is released after pressing and holding, searches broadcast frequencies.

Change Frequency: **TUNE** knob

- Changes frequency by turning the knob left/right. You can seek available frequencies manually.

Saved Frequency: **[1] ~ [3]** (Preset) buttons

- Pressing the button: Plays the frequency saved in the corresponding button.
- Pressing and holding the button: Saves the currently playing broadcast to the selected button.

FM/AM (without RDS)



Displays Menu Popup when pressing the **TUNE** knob.

Select menu by turning the **TUNE** knob.

- A.STORE: Saves broadcasts with superior reception to **[1] ~ [3]** buttons. If no frequencies are received, then the most recently received frequency will be broadcast.
- SCAN: The broadcast frequency increases and previews each broadcast for 5 seconds each. After scanning all frequencies, returns and plays the current broadcast frequency.
- SOUND: Moves to Sound Settings.

Media

* NOTICE - Using MP3

Supported Audio Formats

Compressed audio formats	MPEG1 Audio Layer3
	MPEG2 Audio Layer3
	MPEG2.5 Audio Layer3
	Windows Media Audio Ver 7.X & 8.X

* NOTICE

File formats that do not comply with the above formats may not be properly recognized or play without properly displaying file names or other information.

Support for Compressed Files

1. Supported Bitrates (Kbps)

	MPEG1	MPEG2	MPEG2.5	WMA
	Layer3	Layer3	Layer3	High Range
BIT RATE (kbps)	32	8	8	48
	40	16	16	64
	48	24	24	80
	56	32	32	96
	64	40	40	128
	80	48	48	160
	96	56	56	192
	112	64	64	
	128	80	80	
	160	96	96	
	192	112	112	
	224	128	128	
	256	144	144	
	320	160	160	

2. Sampling Frequencies (Hz)

MPEG1	MPEG2	MPEG2.5	WMA
44100	22050	11025	32000
48000	24000	12000	44100
3000	16000	8000	48000

- For MP3/WMA compression files, differences in sound quality will occur depending on the bitrate. (Higher sound quality can be experienced with higher bitrates.)

- This device only recognizes files with MP3/WMA extensions. Other file extensions may not be properly recognized.

- Maximum number of recognized folders and files.

- Folder: 1,000 folders for USB
- File: 5,000 files for USB
- There are no limitations to the number of recognized folder levels.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

*** NOTICE - Using the USB Devices**

- 1 • Connect the USB device after turning on the engine. The USB device may become damaged if it is already connected when the ignition is turned on. The USB device may not operate properly if the car ignition is turned on or off with the USB device connected.
- 2 • Be careful for static electricity when connecting/disconnecting USB devices.
- 3 • Encoded MP3 Players will not be recognized when connected as an external device.
- 4 • When connecting an external USB device, the vehicle's audio system may not recognize the USB depending on what firmware is used by USB device or what files are on the USB.
- 5 • Only products formatted with byte/sectors under 64Kbyte will be recognized.
- 6 • This device recognizes USB devices formatted in FAT 12/16/32 file formats. This device does not recognize files in NTFS file format.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- Some USB devices may not be supported due to compatibility issues.
- Avoid contact between the USB connector and bodily parts or foreign objects.
- Repeated connecting/disconnecting of USB devices within short periods of time may result in product malfunction.
- A strange noise may occur when disconnecting the USB.
- Make sure to connect/disconnect external USB devices with the audio power turned off.
- The amount of time required to recognize the USB device may differ depending on the type, size or file formats stored on the USB. Such differences in time are not indications of malfunctions.
- The vehicle audio system only supports USB devices designed to play music files.
- USB images and videos are not supported.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- Do not use the USB I/F to charge batteries or USB accessories that generate heat. Doing so may lead to worsened performance or damage to the audio system.
- The audio system may not recognize the USB device if separately purchased USB hubs and extension cables are being used. Connect the USB device directly with the USB port of the vehicle.
- When using mass storage USB devices with separate logical drives, only files saved to the root drive can be played.
- Files may not properly operate if application programs are installed on the USBs.
- The audio system may not operate normally if MP3 Players, cellular phones, digital cameras, or other electronic devices (USB devices not recognized as portable disk drives) are connected with the audio system.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- Charging through the USB may not work for some mobile devices.
- The device may not support normal operation when using an atypical USB memory device (miniature, keychain, etc.). For best results, use a typical USB device that has a metal case.
- The device may not support normal operation when using formats such as HDD Type, CF, or SD Memory.
- The device will not support files locked by DRM (Digital Rights Management.).
- USB memory sticks used by connecting an Adaptor (SD Type or CF Type) may not be properly recognized.
- The device may not operate properly when using USB HDDs or USBs subject to connection failures caused by vehicle vibrations. (e.g. i-stick type)

(Continued)

(Continued)

- Avoid use of USB memory products that can also be used as key chains or mobile phone accessories. Use of such products may cause damage to the USB jack.
- Connecting an MP3 device or phone through various channels, such as AUX or Audio/USB mode may result in pop noises or abnormal operation.



* NOTICE - Using an iPod®

- iPod® is a registered trademark of Apple Inc.
- In order to use the iPod® with your vehicle's audio system, you must use a dedicated iPod® cable. (the cable that is supplied when purchasing iPod®/iPhone® products)
- If the iPod® is connected to the vehicle while it is playing, a high pitch sound could occur for approximately 1-2 seconds immediately after connecting. If possible, connect the iPod® to the vehicle with the iPod® stopped/paused.
- When the vehicle ignition is set to ACC or ON, connecting the iPod® through the iPod® cable will charge the iPod® through the car audio system.
- When connecting with the iPod® cable, make sure to fully insert the jack to prevent communication interference.

(Continued)

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

(Continued)

- When the EQ features of an external device, such as the iPod®, and the audio system are both active, EQ effects could overlap and cause sound deterioration and distortion. Whenever possible, turn off the EQ feature within the external device when it is connected to the audio system.
- Noise may occur when an iPod® or AUX device is connected. When such devices are not being used, disconnect the device for storage.
- When the iPod® or AUX device power is connected to the power jack, playing the external device may result in noise. In such cases, disconnect the power connection before use.
- Skipping or improper operation may occur depending on the characteristics of your iPod®/iPhone® device.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- If your iPhone® is connected to both the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology and USB, the sound may not be properly played. In your iPhone®, select the Dock connector or *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology to change the sound output (source).
- iPod® mode cannot be operated when the iPod® cannot be recognized due to the playing of versions that do not support communication protocols, cases of iPod® abnormalities and defects.
- For fifth generation iPod® Nano devices, the iPod® may not be recognized when the battery level is low. Please charge the iPod® for use.
- The search/play orders shown within the iPod® device may differ from the orders shown within the audio system.
- If the iPod® malfunctions due to an iPod® device defect, reset the iPod® and try again. (To learn more, refer to your iPod® manual)

(Continued)

(Continued)

- Some iPod®s may not sync with the System depending on the version. If the Media is removed before the Media is recognized, then the system may not properly restore the previously operated mode. (iPod® charging is not supported.)
- Use an iPod® cable shorter than 1 meter in length such as the one originally supplied with a new iPod®, longer cables may lead to the audio system not recognizing the iPod®.

Media Mode

Change Mode: [MEDIA] button

- Press the [MEDIA] button to change the mode in order of USB(iPod®) → AUX.
- If media device(USB, AUX) is connected, then it will automatically operate. Once it is disconnected, the previous mode will be restored.

Repeat: [1 RPT] button

- Repeats the current song or repeats all songs within the current folder.
- iPod® mode: Repeat Song → Repeat Off
- USB mode: Repeat Song → Repeat Folder → Off

Random: [2 RDM] button

- Plays all songs within the current folder(category) or play all songs in random order.
- iPod® mode: Random Folder → Random Off
- USB mode: Random Folder → Random All → Off

Change Song/File: [SEEK] button

[V SEEK] button

- Pressing the button: Plays the current song from the beginning. If the [V SEEK] button is pressed again within 3 seconds, the previous song is played.
- Pressing and holding the button: Rewinds the song.

[SEEK ^] button

- Pressing the button: Plays the next song.
- Pressing and holding the button: Fast-forwards the song.

* NOTICE

AUX don't support Repeat, Random, SEEK and Rewind/Fast forward feature.

Search Song: TUNE knob

- Turning TUNE knob: Searches for songs(files).
- Pressing TUNE knob: Plays selected song(file).

* NOTICE

AUX and iPod® don't support playlist feature.

Search Folder: [FLDR] button

- Searches the previous/next folder. (USB)
- If a folder is selected by pressing the TUNE knob, the first file within the selected folder will be played.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

USB

iPod®

AUX

1



2

Displays Menu Popup when pressing the **TUNE** knob.

3

- LIST: Moves to the list screen.
- SCAN: Scans the beginning parts of all songs. (approximately 10 seconds per file)
- SOUND: Moves to Sound Settings.

4

5

6

7

8

9



Displays Menu Popup when pressing the **TUNE** knob.

- SOUND: Moves to Sound Settings.



Displays Menu Popup when pressing the **TUNE** knob.

- SOUND: Moves to Sound Settings.

* NOTICE

- **AUX mode can be used only when an external audio player has been connected.**
- **If only a cable is connected to the AUX without an external device, the mode will be changed to AUX, but noise may occur. When an external device is not being used, remove the connector jack.**
- **When the external device power is connected to the power jack, playing the external device may output noise. In such cases, disconnect the power connection before use.**

Setup

Sound Settings

Press the **[SETUP]** button → Select **[SOUND]**.

- **BASS, MIDDLE, TREBLE:** Selects the sound tone.
- **BALANCE:** Selects the sound balance.
- **DEFAULT:** Restores default settings.

Speed dependent vol.

Press the **[SETUP]** button → Select **[SDVC]**.

- The volume level is controlled automatically according to the vehicle speed. SDVC can be set by selecting from On/Off.

Display Off

Press the **[SETUP]** button → Select **[DISP OFF]**.

- Audio operation is maintained and only the screen will be turned Off. In the Screen Off state, press any button to turn the Screen On again.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

AUDIO (Without Touch Screen B Type)

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

■ Type B-1



■ Type B-2



4FN3G0000EE/4FN3G0001EE

Feature of Your Audio

Head Unit

■ Type B-1



■ Type B-2



※ The actual features in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

(1) RADIO

- Plays Radio(FM/AM) mode.
- Each time the button is pressed, the media mode popup will be displayed or closed.
- The radio mode popup will not be displayed when [SETUP] button ► [Display] ► [Mode popup] is turned [Off].

(2) MEDIA

- Plays USB(iPod®), AUX mode.
- Each time the button is pressed, the media mode popup will be displayed or closed.
- The media mode popup will not be displayed when [SETUP] button ► [Display] ► [Mode popup] is turned [Off].

(3) SETUP

- Moves to Setup screen.

(4) POWER/VOL knob

- Power knob: Turns power On/Off by pressing the knob.
- Volume knob: Sets volume by turning the knob left/right.

(5) SEEK/TRACK

When pressed quickly

- Radio mode: Searches broadcast frequencies.
- Media mode: Changes the track, file or title. (except AUX)

When pressed and held

- Radio mode: Frequency is controlled by 1 step quickly. When the button is released after pressing and holding, searches broadcast frequencies.
- Media mode: Rewinds or fast-forwards the song. (except AUX)

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

■ Type B-1



■ Type B-2



(6) DISP

- Turns off the screen.
- Each time the button is pressed, it sets the Screen Off → On → Off.

(7) MENU

- Displays menus for the current mode.

(8) BACK

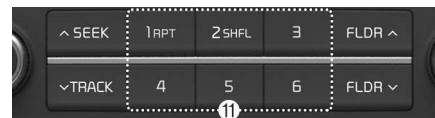
- Moves to previous screen.

(9) TUNE knob

- Radio mode: Changes frequency by turning the knob left/right.
- Media mode: Searches songs(files) by turning the knob left/right.

(10) FLDR

- USB mode: Searches folders.



(11) [1] ~ [6] (Preset)

When pressed quickly

- Radio mode: Receives saved frequencies(channels).
- Media mode(USB)
 - [1 RPT] button: Repeat/Repeat Folder
 - [2 SHFL] button: Shuffle Folder/Shuffle
- Media mode(iPod®)
 - [1 RPT] button: Repeat
 - [2 SHFL] button: Shuffle
- In case of Menu popup, the number menu is selected.

When pressed and held

- Radio mode: Saves frequencies (channels).

■ Type B-3



■ Type B-4



(With *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology)

4FN3G0002EE/4FN3G0003EE

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

Feature of Your Audio

Head Unit

■ Type B-3



■ Type B-4



※ The actual features in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

(1) RADIO

- Plays Radio(FM/AM) mode.
- Each time the button is pressed, the media mode popup will be displayed or closed.
- The radio mode popup will not be displayed when **[SETUP]** button ► [Display] ► [Mode popup] is turned [Off].

(2) MEDIA

- Plays USB(iPod®), BT Audio, AUX mode.
- Each time the button is pressed, the media mode popup will be displayed or closed.
- The media mode popup will not be displayed when **[SETUP]** button ► [Display] ► [Mode popup] is turned [Off].

(3) PHONE

- Moves to Phone screen.
- If Bluetooth® is not connected, displays Bluetooth® Pair/Connection screen.

(4) POWER/VOL knob

- Power knob: Turns power On/Off by pressing the knob.
- Volume knob: Sets volume by turning the knob left/right.

(5) SEEK/TRACK

When pressed quickly

- Radio mode: Searches broadcast frequencies.
- Media mode: Changes the track, file or title. (except AUX)

When pressed and held

- Radio mode: Frequency is controlled by 1 step quickly. When the button is released after pressing and holding, searches broadcast frequencies.
- Media mode: Rewinds or fast-forwards the song. (except BT Audio, AUX)

■ Type B-3



■ Type B-4



(6) **SETUP**

- Moves to Setup screen.

(7) **MENU**

- Displays menus for the current mode.

(8) **BACK**

- Moves to previous screen.

(9) **TUNE** knob

- Radio mode: Changes frequency by turning the knob left/right.
- Media mode: Searches songs(files) by turning the knob left/right.

(10) **FLDR**

- USB mode: Searches folders.



(11) [1] ~ [6] (Preset)

When pressed quickly

- Radio mode: Receives saved frequencies(channels).
- Media mode(USB)
 - [1 RPT] button: Repeat/Repeat Folder
 - [2 SHFL] button: Shuffle Folder/Shuffle
- Media mode(iPod®)
 - [1 RPT] button: Repeat
 - [2 SHFL] button: Shuffle
- In case of Menu popup, the number menu is selected.

When pressed and held

- Radio mode: Saves frequencies (channels).

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

■ Type B-5



■ Type B-6



(With *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology)

4FN3G0004EE/4FN3G0005EE

Feature of Your Audio

Head Unit

■ Type B-5



■ Type B-6



※ The actual features in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

(1) EJECT

- Ejects the disc.

(2) MEDIA

- Plays Disc, USB(iPod®), BT Audio, AUX mode.
- Each time the button is pressed, the media mode popup will be displayed or closed.
- The media mode popup will not be displayed when [SETUP] button ► [Display] ► [Mode popup] is turned [Off].

(3) PHONE

- Moves to Phone screen.
- If Bluetooth® is not connected, displays Bluetooth® Pair/Connection screen.

(4) SETUP

- Moves to Setup screen.

(5) RADIO

- Plays Radio(FM/AM) mode.
- Each time the button is pressed, the media mode popup will be displayed or closed.
- The radio mode popup will not be displayed when [SETUP] button ► [Display] ► [Mode popup] is turned [Off].

(6) SEEK/TRACK

When pressed quickly

- Radio mode: Searches broadcast frequencies.
- Media mode: Changes the track, file or title. (except AUX)

When pressed and held

- Radio mode: Frequency is controlled by 1 step quickly. When the button is released after pressing and holding, searches broadcast frequencies.
- Media mode: Rewinds or fast-forwards the song. (except BT Audio, AUX)

(7) POWER/VOL knob

- Power knob: Turns power On/Off by pressing the knob.
- Volume knob: Sets volume by turning the knob left/right.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

■ Type B-5



■ Type B-6



(8) MENU

- Displays menus for the current mode.

(9) DISP

- Turns off the screen.
- Each time the button is pressed, it sets the Screen Off → On → Off.

(10) BACK

- Moves to previous screen.

(11) FLDR

- Disc MP3, USB mode: Searches folders.

(12) TUNE knob

- Radio mode: Changes frequency by turning the knob left/right.
- Media mode: Searches songs(files) by turning the knob left/right.



(13) [1] ~ [6] (Preset)

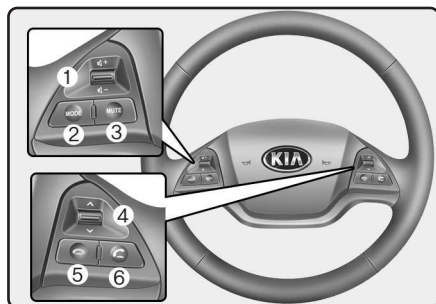
When pressed quickly

- Radio mode: Receives saved frequencies(channels).
- Media mode(USB, Disc MP3)
 - [1 RPT] button: Repeat/Repeat Folder
 - [2 SHFL] button: Shuffle Folder/Shuffle
- Media mode(iPod®, Disc CD)
 - [1 RPT] button: Repeat
 - [2 SHFL] button: Shuffle
- In case of Menu popup, the number menu is selected.

When pressed and held

- Radio mode: Saves frequencies (channels).

Steering wheel remote control



* The actual features in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

(1) **VOLUME**

- Controls the audio or call volume.

(2) **MODE**

- Each time this is pressed, the mode is changed sequentially.
- If the media is not connected, the corresponding modes will be disabled.
- Press and hold to turn the Audio system on/off*.
- When power is off, press button to turn power back on*.

* if equipped

(3) **MUTE**

- Mutes the audio volume.
- When a call is active, mic volume is muted.

(4) **SEEK/TRACK**

- When pressed quickly
 - Radio mode: Searches broadcast frequencies saved to Presets.
 - Media mode: Changes track, file or title. (except AUX)
- When pressed and held
 - Radio mode: Frequency is controlled by 1 step quickly. When the button is released after pressing and holding, searches broadcast frequencies.
 - Media mode: Rewinds or fast-forwards the song. (except BT Audio*, AUX)

* if equipped

(5) **CALL (if equipped)**

- When pressed quickly
 - Display the last dialed number.
 - When pressed in the incoming call screen, answers the call.
 - When pressed during call waiting, switches to waiting call.
- When pressed and held
 - Call to last dialed number.
 - When pressed during a Bluetooth® Handsfree call, switches call back to Bluetooth® device(private mode).
 - When pressed while calling on the Bluetooth® device, switches call back to Bluetooth® Handsfree.
 - If Bluetooth® is not connected, displays Bluetooth® Pair/Connection screen.

(6) **END (if equipped)**

- When pressed during a call, ends the phone call.
- When pressed in the incoming call screen, rejects the call.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

⚠ WARNING

- Audio System Safety Warnings

- Do not stare at the screen while driving. Staring at the screen for prolonged periods of time could lead to traffic accidents.
- Do not disassemble, assemble, or modify the audio system. Such acts could result in accidents, fire, or electric shock.
- Using the phone while driving may lead to a lack of attention of traffic conditions and increase the likelihood of accidents. Use the phone feature after parking the vehicle.
- Exercise caution not to spill water or introduce foreign objects into the device. Such acts could lead to smoke, fire, or product malfunction.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- Please refrain from use if the screen is blank or no sound can be heard as these signs may indicate product malfunction. Continued use in such conditions could lead to accidents (fires, electric shock) or product malfunctions.
- Do not touch the antenna during thunder or lightening as such acts may lead to lightning induced electric shock.
- Do not stop or park in parking-restricted areas to operate the product. Such acts could lead to traffic accidents.
- Use the system with the vehicle ignition turned on. Prolonged use with the ignition turned off could result in battery discharge.

⚠ WARNING - Distracted Driving

Driving while distracted can result in a loss of vehicle control that may lead to an accident, severe personal injury, and death. The driver's primary responsibility is in the safe and legal operation of a vehicle, and use of any handheld devices, other equipment, or vehicle systems which take the driver's eyes, attention and focus away from the safe operation of a vehicle or which are not permissible by law should never be used during operation of the vehicle.

⚡ CAUTION

- *Operating the device while driving could lead to accidents due to a lack of attention to external surroundings. First park the vehicle before operating the device.*
- *Adjust the volume to levels that allow the driver to hear sounds from outside of the vehicle. Driving in a state where external sounds cannot be heard may lead to accidents.*
- *Pay attention to the volume setting when turning the device on. A sudden output of extreme volume upon turning the device on could lead to hearing impairment. (Adjust the volume to a suitable levels before turning off the device.)*

(Continued)

(Continued)

- *If you want to change the position of device installation, please inquire with your place of purchase or service maintenance center. Technical expertise is required to install or disassemble the device.*
- *Turn on the car ignition before using this device. Do not operate the audio system for long periods of time with the ignition turned off as such operations may lead to battery discharge.*
- *Do not subject the device to severe shock or impact. Direct pressure onto the front side of the monitor may cause damage to the LCD or touch screen.*

(Continued)

(Continued)

- *When cleaning the device, make sure to turn off the device and use a dry and smooth cloth. Never use tough materials, chemical cloths, or solvents (alcohol, benzene, thinners, etc.) as such materials may damage the device panel or cause color/quality deterioration.*
- *Do not place beverages close to the audio system. Spilling beverages may lead to system malfunction.*
- *In case of product malfunction, please contact your place of purchase or After Service center.*
- *Placing the audio system within an electromagnetic environment may result in noise interference.*
- *Prevent caustic solutions such as perfume and cosmetic oil from contacting the dashboard because they may cause damage or discoloration.*

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

Radio

Radio Mode

Change Mode: [RADIO] button

- Plays Radio mode. Each time the button is pressed, the radio mode popup will be displayed or closed.
- The radio mode popup will not be displayed when [SETUP] button ► [Display] ► [Mode popup] is turned [Off].

Search Frequency: [SEEK/TRACK] button

- Searches the previous/next broadcast frequencies.
 - Pressing the button: Searches broadcast frequencies.
 - Frequency is controlled by 1 step quickly. When the button is released after pressing and holding, searches broadcast frequencies.

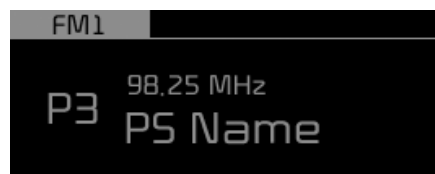
Change Frequency: TUNE knob

- Changes frequency by turning the knob left/right. You can seek available frequencies manually.

Saved Frequency: [1] ~ [6] (Preset) buttons

- Pressing the button: Plays the frequency saved in the corresponding button.
- Pressing and holding the button: Saves the currently playing broadcast to the selected button and sound a BEEP.

FM/AM (with RDS)



FM/AM (without RDS)



Displays Menu Popup when pressing the [MENU] button.

Autostore

Saves broadcasts with superior reception to [1] ~ [6] buttons. If no frequencies are received, then the most recently received frequency will be broadcast.

Scan

The broadcast frequency increases and previews each broadcast for 5 seconds each. After scanning all frequencies, returns and plays the current broadcast frequency.

Sound Settings

Moves to Sound Settings.

Traffic Announcement (for RDS model)

TA(Traffic Announcement) feature On/Off.

Presets (for RDS model)

Displays saved presets.

Media

* NOTICE - Using Compact Discs (if equipped)

- This device has been manufactured to be compatible with software bearing the following logo marks.
- Do not clean discs with chemical solutions, such as record sprays, antistatic sprays, antistatic liquids, benzene, or thinners.
- After using a disc, put the disc back in its original case to prevent disc scratches.
- Hold discs by their edges or within the center hole to prevent damage to disc surfaces.
- Do not introduce foreign substances into the disc insert/eject slot. Introducing foreign substances could damage the device interior.
- Do not insert two discs simultaneously.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- When using CD-R/CD-RW discs, differences in disc reading and playing times may occur depending on the disc manufacturer, production method and the recording method used.
- Clean fingerprints and dust off the disc surface (coated side) with a soft cloth.
- The use of CD-R/CD-RW discs attached with labels may result in disc slot jams or difficulties in disc removal. Such discs may also result in noise while playing.
- Some CD-R/CD-RW discs may not properly operate depending on the disc manufacturer, production method and the recording method used. If problems persist, trying using a different CD as continued use may result in malfunctions.
- The performance of this product may differ depending on the CDRW Drive Software.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- Copy-protected CDs such as Stype CDs may not function in the device. DATA discs cannot be played. (However, such discs may still operate but will do so abnormally.)
- Do not use abnormally shaped discs (8cm, heart-shaped, octagon shaped) as such discs could lead to malfunctions.
- If the disc is straddled on the disc slot without removal for 10 seconds, the disc will automatically be re-inserted into the disc player.
- Only genuine audio CDs are supported. Other discs may result in recognition failure. (e.g. copy CDR, CDs with labels)

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

1

• Compatibility by Disc Type

1. Playing MIXED CDs: First plays the audio CD, then plays the compressed file(s).
2. Playing EXTRA CDs: First plays the audio CD, then plays the compressed file(s).
3. Playing multi session CDs: Plays in order of sessions.
 - MIXED CD: CD type in which both MP3 and audio CD files are recognized in one disc.
 - Multisession CD: CD type that includes more than two sessions. Different from Extra CDs, multi-session CDs are recorded by sessions and have no media limitation.

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

⚡ CAUTION - Upon Writing Disc

- *In all cases except when creating multi session discs, check the close session option before creating the disc. Though product malfunctions will not occur, some time may be required for the device to check whether the session state is closed (approximately 25 seconds). (Additional time may also be required depending on the number of folders or files.)*
- *Changing the MP3/WMA file extensions or changing files of other extensions to MP3/WMA may result in product malfunction.*
- *When naming files with MP3/WMA file extensions, write using only Korean and English. (Korean, English and Chinese are supported.)*

(Continued)

(Continued)

- *Unauthorized use or duplication of music files are prohibited by law.*
- *Prolonged use of CD-R/CD-RW discs that do not satisfy related standards and/or specifications could result in product malfunction.*

* NOTICE - Using MP3

Supported audio formats

File System	ISO 9660 Level 1
	ISO 9660 Level 2
	Romeo/Juliet (128 characters)
Audio Compression	MPEG1 Audio Layer3
	MPEG2 Audio Layer3
	MPEG2.5 Audio Layer3
	Windows Media Audio Ver 7.X & 8.X

* NOTICE

File formats that do not comply with the above formats may not be properly recognized or play without properly displaying file names or other information.

Support for Compressed Files

1. Supported Bitrates (Kbps)

BIT RATE (kbps)	MPEG1	MPEG2	MPEG2.5	WMA
	Layer3	Layer3	Layer3	High Range
	32	8	8	48
	40	16	16	64
	48	24	24	80
	56	32	32	96
	64	40	40	128
	80	48	48	160
	96	56	56	192
	112	64	64	
	128	80	80	
	160	96	96	
	192	112	112	
	224	128	128	
	256	144	144	
	320	160	160	

2. Sampling Frequencies (Hz)

MPEG1	MPEG2	MPEG2.5	WMA
44100	22050	11025	32000
48000	24000	12000	44100
3000	16000	8000	48000

- For MP3/WMA compression files, differences in sound quality will occur depending on the bitrate. (Higher sound quality can be experienced with higher bitrates.)

- This device only recognizes files with MP3/WMA extensions. Other file extensions may not be properly recognized.

3. Maximum number of recognized folders and files

- Folder: 1,000 folders for USB
- File: 5,000 files for USB
- There are no limitations to the number of recognized folder levels.

4. Text Display (Based on Unicode)

- File name: Maximum 40 English characters
- Folder name: Max 40 English characters

* NOTICE

Using the scroll feature allows you to see the entire name of files with names that are too long to be displayed at once.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

Language Support (Unicode Support)

- Korean: 2,604 characters
- English: 94 characters
- Common Chinese characters: 4,888 characters
- Special symbols: 986 characters

* NOTICE

Japanese/Simplified Chinese characters are not supported.

* NOTICE - Using the USB Devices

- Connect the USB device after turning on the engine. The USB device may become damaged if it is already connected when the ignition is turned on. The USB device may not operate properly if the car ignition is turned on or off with the USB device connected.
- Be careful for static electricity when connecting/disconnecting USB devices.
- Encoded MP3 Players will not be recognized when connected as an external device.
- When connecting an external USB device, the vehicle's audio system may not recognize the USB depending on what firmware is used by USB device or what files are on the USB.
- Only products formatted with byte/sectors under 64Kbyte will be recognized.
- This device recognizes USB devices formatted in FAT 12/16/32 file formats. This device does not recognize files in NTFS file format.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- Some USB devices may not be supported due to compatibility issues.
- Avoid contact between the USB connector and bodily parts or foreign objects.
- Repeated connecting/disconnecting of USB devices within short periods of time may result in product malfunction.
- A strange noise may occur when disconnecting the USB.
- Make sure to connect/disconnect external USB devices with the audio power turned off.
- The amount of time required to recognize the USB device may differ depending on the type, size or file formats stored on the USB. Such differences in time are not indications of malfunctions.
- The vehicle audio system only supports USB devices designed to play music files.
- USB images and videos are not supported.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- Do not use the USB I/F to charge batteries or USB accessories that generate heat. Doing so may lead to worsened performance or damage to the audio system.
- The audio system may not recognize the USB device if separately purchased USB hubs and extension cables are being used. Connect the USB device directly with the USB port of the vehicle.
- When using mass storage USB devices with separate logical drives, only files saved to the root drive can be played.
- Files may not properly operate if application programs are installed on the USBs.
- The audio system may not operate normally if MP3 Players, cellular phones, digital cameras, or other electronic devices (USB devices not recognized as portable disk drives) are connected with the audio system.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- Charging through the USB may not work for some mobile devices.
- The device may not support normal operation when using an atypical USB memory device (miniature, keychain, etc.). For best results, use a typical USB device that has a metal case.
- The device may not support normal operation when using formats such as HDD Type, CF, or SD Memory.
- The device will not support files locked by DRM (Digital Rights Management.).
- USB memory sticks used by connecting an Adaptor (SD Type or CF Type) may not be properly recognized.
- The device may not operate properly when using USB HDDs or USBs subject to connection failures caused by vehicle vibrations. (e.g. i-stick type)

(Continued)

(Continued)

- Avoid use of USB memory products that can also be used as key chains or mobile phone accessories. Use of such products may cause damage to the USB jack.
- Connecting an MP3 device or phone through various channels, such as AUX/BT or Audio/USB mode may result in pop noises or abnormal operation.



1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

*** NOTICE - Using an iPod®**

- iPod® is a registered trademark of Apple Inc.
- In order to use the iPod® with your vehicle's audio system, you must use a dedicated iPod® cable. (the cable that is supplied when purchasing iPod®/iPhone® products)
- If the iPod® is connected to the vehicle while it is playing, a high pitch sound could occur for approximately 1-2 seconds immediately after connecting. If possible, connect the iPod® to the vehicle with the iPod® stopped/paused.
- When the vehicle ignition is set to ACC or ON, connecting the iPod® through the iPod® cable will charge the iPod® through the car audio system.
- When connecting with the iPod® cable, make sure to fully insert the jack to prevent communication interference.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- When the EQ features of an external device, such as the iPod®, and the audio system are both active, EQ effects could overlap and cause sound deterioration and distortion. Whenever possible, turn off the EQ feature within the external device when it is connected to the audio system.
- Noise may occur when an iPod® or AUX device is connected. When such devices are not being used, disconnect the device for storage.
- When the iPod® or AUX device power is connected to the power jack, playing the external device may result in noise. In such cases, disconnect the power connection before use.
- Skipping or improper operation may occur depending on the characteristics of your iPod®/iPhone® device.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- If your iPhone® is connected to both the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology and USB, the sound may not be properly played. In your iPhone®, select the Dock connector or *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology to change the sound output (source).
- iPod® mode cannot be operated when the iPod® cannot be recognized due to the playing of versions that do not support communication protocols, cases of iPod® abnormalities and defects.
- For fifth generation iPod® Nano devices, the iPod® may not be recognized when the battery level is low. Please charge the iPod® for use.
- The search/play orders shown within the iPod® device may differ from the orders shown within the audio system.
- If the iPod® malfunctions due to an iPod® device defect, reset the iPod® and try again. (To learn more, refer to your iPod® manual)

(Continued)

(Continued)

- Some iPod®s may not sync with the System depending on the version. If the Media is removed before the Media is recognized, then the system may not properly restore the previously operated mode. (iPad® charging is not supported.)
- Use an iPod® cable shorter than 1 meter in length such as the one originally supplied with a new iPod®, longer cables may lead to the audio system not recognizing the iPod®.

*** NOTICE - Using the
Bluetooth® Wireless
Technology Audio
Mode (if equipped)**

- *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology Audio Mode can be used only when a *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology phone has been connected.
- *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology Audio Mode will not be available when connecting mobile phones that do not support this feature.
- If a *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology Phone is being used to play music and receives an incoming or outgoing phone call, then the music will stop.
- Moving the Track up/down while playing *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology audio mode may result in pop noises with some mobile phones.
- *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology streaming audio may not be supported in some mobile phones.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- When returning to *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology Audio mode after ending a call, the mode may not automatically restart in some mobile phones.
- Receiving an incoming call or making an outgoing call while playing *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology Audio may result in audio interference.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

Media Mode

Change Mode: [MEDIA] button

- Each time the button is pressed, the media mode popup will be displayed or closed.
- The media mode popup will not be displayed when [SETUP] button ► [Display] ► [Mode popup] is turned [Off].

You can select a menu in the mode popup by using the [1] ~ [6] (Preset) buttons or **TUNE** knob.

- If media device(USB, AUX) is connected, then it will automatically operate. Once it is disconnected, the previous mode will be restored.
- The Audio/BT Audio*/AUX volume can also be controlled.

* if equipped

Repeat: [1 RPT] button

- Repeats the current song or repeats all songs within the current folder.
 - Disc CD*, iPod® mode: Repeat Song → Repeat Off.
 - Disc MP3*, USB mode: Repeat Song → Repeat Folder → Off .
- * if equipped

Shuffle: [2 SHFL] button

- Plays all songs within the current folder(category) or play all songs in random order.
- Disc CD*, iPod® mode: Shuffle All → Shuffle Off.
- Disc MP3*, USB mode: Shuffle Folder → Shuffle All → Off.

* if equipped

Change Song/File: [SEEK/TRACK] button

[√ TRACK]/[√ SEEK/TRACK] button

- Pressing the button: Plays the current song from the beginning. If the [√ TRACK]/[√ SEEK/TRACK] button is pressed again within 2 seconds, the previous song is played.
- Pressing and holding the button: Rewinds the song.

[SEEK ^]/[SEEK/TRACK ^] button

- Pressing the button: Plays the next song.
- Pressing and holding the button: Fast-forwards the song.

* NOTICE

- **AUX and BT Audio* don't support Rewind/Fast-forward feature.**
- **Changing the previous/next song may not be supported in some Bluetooth® devices.**

* if equipped

Search Song: **TUNE** knob

- Turning **TUNE** knob: Searches for songs(files).
- Pressing **TUNE** knob: Plays selected song(file).

* NOTICE

- **BT Audio***, **iPod®** and **AUX** don't support playlist feature.
- While **BT Audio*** is playing, pressing the **TUNE** knob plays and pauses the current song.
- * if equipped

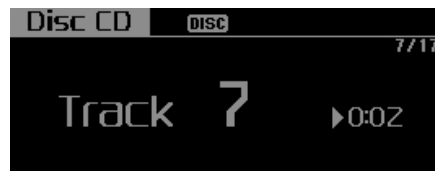
Search Folder: **[FLDR]** button

- Searches the previous/next folder. (Disc MP3*, USB)
- * if equipped

* NOTICE

If a folder is selected by pressing the **TUNE** knob, the first file within the selected folder will be played.

Disc CD (Type B-5, Type B-6)



Displays Menu Popup when pressing the **[MENU]** button.

List

Moves to the list screen.

Repeat

Repeats the current song. Press it again to turn off.

Shuffle

Randomly plays all songs. Press it again to turn off.

Scan

Scans the beginning parts of all songs. (approximately 10 seconds per file)

Information

Displays information of the current song.

Sound Settings

Moves to Sound Settings.

1

2

3

4

5

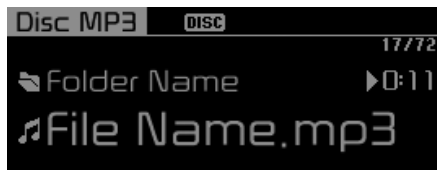
6

7

8

9

Disc MP3 (Type B-5, Type B-6)/USB



Displays Menu Popup when pressing the **[MENU]** button.

List

Moves to the list screen.

Repeat

Repeats the current song. Press it again to turn off.

Repeat Folder

Repeats songs within the current folder. Press it again to turn off.

Shuffle Folder

Randomly plays songs within the current folder. Press it again to turn off.

Shuffle

Randomly plays all songs. Press it again to turn off.

Scan

Scans the beginning parts of all songs. (approximately 10 seconds per file)

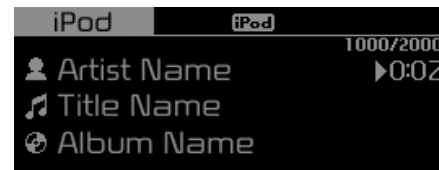
Information

Displays information of the current song.

Sound Settings

Moves to Sound Settings.

iPod®



Displays Menu Popup when pressing the **[MENU]** button.

List

Moves to the list screen.

Repeat

Repeats the current song. Press it again to turn off.

Shuffle

Plays all songs within the currently playing category in random order. Press it again to turn off.

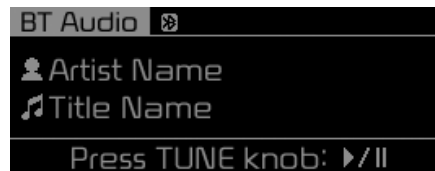
Information

Displays information of the current song.

Sound Settings

Moves to Sound Settings.

Bluetooth® (BT) Audio (if equipped)



Displays Menu Popup when pressing the [MENU] button.

Sound Settings

Moves to Sound Settings.

* NOTICE

- Audio may not automatically start playing in some Bluetooth® devices. If the music in the Bluetooth® device is not played after changing to audio streaming mode, press the **TUNE** knob. Check if the music is playing in the Bluetooth® device after changing to audio streaming mode.
- Audio streaming may not be supported for some Bluetooth® devices.
- If Bluetooth® device is disconnected, BT Audio* is ended.
- Bluetooth® connection is required to use BT Audio*. Refer to the Bluetooth® manual for more information.

* if equipped

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

AUX

1

AUX

AUX

2

AUX cable connected.

3

Displays Menu Popup when pressing the [MENU] button.

4

Sound Settings

5

Moves to Sound Settings.

6

* NOTICE

- AUX mode can be used only when an external audio player has been connected.
- If only a cable is connected to the AUX without an external device, the mode will be changed to AUX, but noise may occur. When an external device is not being used, remove the connector jack.
- When the external device power is connected to the power jack, playing the external device may output noise. In such cases, disconnect the power connection before use.

7

8

9

Phone (if equipped)

* NOTICE - Using Bluetooth® (BT) Phone

What is Bluetooth® Wireless Technology?

- Bluetooth® Wireless Technology refers to a short-distance wireless networking technology which uses a 2.45GHz frequency to connect various devices within a certain distance.
- Supported within PCs, external devices, Bluetooth® phones, PDAs, various electronic devices, and automotive environments, Bluetooth® Wireless Technology to be transmitted at high speeds without having to use a connector cable.
- Bluetooth® Handsfree refers to a device which allows the user to conveniently make phone calls with Bluetooth® devices through the Multimedia system.
- The Bluetooth® Handsfree feature may not be supported in some Bluetooth® devices. For Bluetooth® supporting devices details and compatibility, visit <http://kiaeuropa.nextgen-technology.net>

WARNING - Distracted Driving

- Focus on the road while driving. The driver's primary responsibility is in the safe and legal operation of the vehicle. Drivers should not use any hand held devices or other equipment or vehicle systems that distract the driver during vehicle operation.
- Do not stare at the multimedia screen for long periods of time while driving. Staring at the screen for prolonged periods of time can lead to traffic accidents and can result in personal injuries.

⚡ CAUTION - For Safe Driving

- *Bluetooth® is a feature that enables drivers to make handsfree calls. Connecting the head unit with a Bluetooth® phone allows the user to conveniently make calls, receive calls, and manage the phonebook. Before using Bluetooth® Wireless Technology, carefully read the contents of this user's manual.*
- *Excessive use or operations while driving may lead to negligent driving practices and be the cause of accidents. Do not operate the device excessively while driving.*
- *Viewing the screen for prolonged periods of time is dangerous and may lead to accidents. When driving, view the screen only for short periods of time.*

(Continued)

(Continued)

- *Pairing Bluetooth® devices and use of other Bluetooth® features are not supported when the vehicle is in motion. For safety, please first park your vehicle.*

⚡ CAUTION

- For Connecting a Bluetooth® Phone

- *Before connecting the head unit with the Bluetooth® device, check to see that the mobile device supports Bluetooth® features.*
- *Even if the mobile device supports Bluetooth® Wireless Technology, the device will not be found during device searches if the device has been set to hidden state or the Bluetooth® power is turned off. Disable the hidden state or turn on the Bluetooth® power prior to searching/connecting with the head unit.*

(Continued)

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

(Continued)

- *If a Bluetooth® Wireless Technology device becomes disconnected due to being out of communication range, turning the device OFF, or a Bluetooth® Wireless Technology communication error, corresponding Bluetooth® Wireless Technology devices are automatically searched and reconnected.*
- *If you do not want automatic connection with your Bluetooth® device, turn the Bluetooth® feature off in the Bluetooth® device.*
- *Only one Bluetooth® Wireless Technology device can be connected at a time.*
- *Bluetooth® connection may become intermittently disconnected in some Bluetooth® devices. Follow these steps to try again.*

(Continued)

(Continued)

1. *Turn the Bluetooth® function within the Bluetooth® device OFF/ON and try again.*
2. *Turn the Bluetooth device power OFF/ON and try again.*
3. *Completely remove the Bluetooth® device battery, reboot, and then again.*
4. *Reboot the Multimedia System and try again.*
5. *Delete all paired devices from both of Bluetooth® device and Head Unit sides and then try again.*

CAUTION

- Upon Using Bluetooth® Phone

- *If the Bluetooth® device is not connected, it is not possible to enter Phone mode. After connecting your Bluetooth® device to your car, use the Bluetooth® features.*
- *You will not be able to use the handsfree feature when your phone is outside of the cellular service area (e.g. in a tunnel, in a underground, in a mountainous area, etc.).*
- *If the cellular phone signal is poor or the vehicles interior noise is too loud, it may be difficult to hear the other person's voice during a call.*
- *Do not place the Bluetooth® device near or inside metallic objects, otherwise communications with Bluetooth® Wireless Technology system or cellular service stations can be disturbed.*

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **Placing the audio system within an electromagnetic environment may result in noise interference.**
- **Some Bluetooth® devices may cause interference noise or malfunction to audio system. In this case, store the device in a different location may resolve the condition.**
- **While a device is connected through Bluetooth® Wireless Technology, your device may discharge quicker than usual for additional Bluetooth® Wireless Technology-related operations.**
- **The handsfree call volume and quality may differ depending on the Bluetooth® device.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

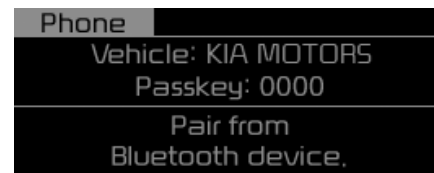
- **If Connection Priority is set upon vehicle ignition (IGN/ACC ON), the Bluetooth® Wireless Technology device will be automatically connected. Even if you are outside, the Bluetooth® Wireless Technology device will be automatically connected once you are in the vicinity of the vehicle. If you do not want to automatically connect your Bluetooth® Wireless Technology device, turn off the Bluetooth® Wireless Technology feature in your Bluetooth® device.**
- **In some Bluetooth® devices, starting the ignition while talking through Bluetooth® Wireless Technology enabled hands-free call will result in the call becoming disconnected due to car handsfree call transfer. If you use your phone outside the vehicle, turn off the Bluetooth® Wireless Technology feature in your phone.**

Bluetooth® Connection

Before you can use the Bluetooth® feature, you must first pair/connect your Bluetooth® device to your car.

Pairing a New Device

Press the **[PHONE]** button in the head unit or **[CALL]** button in the steering wheel remote control.



In your Bluetooth® device,

1. Pair your car after your Bluetooth® device detects the Bluetooth® device.
2. Enter the passkey(0000) or accept the authorization popup.
3. Connect Bluetooth®.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

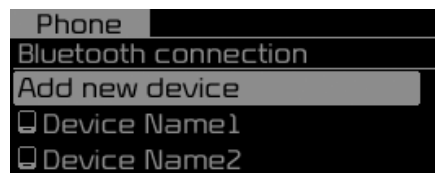
* NOTICE

- 1 • Up to 5 Bluetooth® devices can be paired.
- 2 • The default passkey is 0000.
- 3 • During a Bluetooth® device connection, another device cannot be paired.
- 4 • The Vehicle Name above is an example. Check the actual information on the product.
- 5 • Pairing and connecting a *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology enabled Bluetooth® device will work only when the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology option within your Bluetooth® device has been turned on. (Methods of turning on the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology enabled feature may differ depending on the Bluetooth® device.)
- 6 • After pairing is complete, a contacts download request is sent to the Bluetooth® device. Some Bluetooth® devices may require confirmation upon receiving a download request. Ensure your Bluetooth® device accepts the connection. Refer to your phone's user manual for additional information regarding phone pairing and connections.
- 7
- 8
- 9

Connecting Bluetooth® Devices

Press the **[PHONE]** button in the head unit or **[CALL]** button in the steering wheel remote control ► Select the name of the device to connect ► Connect Bluetooth®.

- Connects the Bluetooth® devices that you add.



* NOTICE

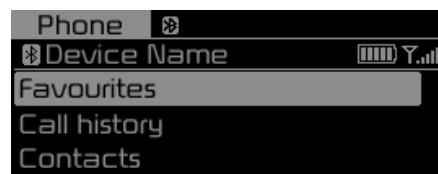
- Only one Bluetooth® device can be connected at a time.
- *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology features supported within the vehicle are as follows. Some features may not be supported depending on your Bluetooth® Wireless Technology device.
 - Outgoing/Incoming Handsfree calls
 - Operations during a call: Switch to Private, Switch to call waiting, MIC on/off
 - Downloading Call History
 - Downloading Contacts
 - *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device Auto Connection
 - Bluetooth® Audio Streaming

Bluetooth® Phone

Favourites(Favorites)

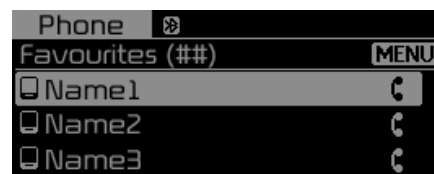
Press the **[PHONE]** button ► Select [Favourites(Favorites)].

- Displays Phone Menu screen.
- The connected device name is displayed in the top of the display.



- : Call signal strength indicator.
- : Battery level of the Bluetooth® devices connected.

- Lists the phone numbers saved as Favorites. Select from the list to dial the number.



Displays Menu Popup when pressing the **[MENU]** button.

- Add new favourites(Add New Favorites): Adds a phone number to Favorites.
- Delete items: Deletes numbers that you select from Favorites.
- Delete all: Deletes all of the numbers from Favorites.

* NOTICE

- Up to 20 favorites can be saved in favorites of each device.
- Downloading favorites in your Bluetooth® device does not be supported.
- To save favorite, contacts should be downloaded.
- Contact saved in favorites will not be automatically updated if the contact has been updated in the phone. To update Favorites, delete the favorite and create a new favorite.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

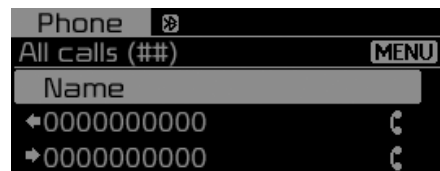
8

9

Call history

Press the **[PHONE]** button ► Select [Call history].

- Displays all of your call history. Select from the list to dial the number.



Displays Menu Popup when pressing the **[MENU]** button.

- Download: Downloads the call history information from your Bluetooth® device.
- All calls: Lists the all call history.
- Dialed calls: Lists the calls that you made.
- Received calls: Lists the calls that you have received.
- Missed calls: Lists the calls you missed.

* NOTICE

- Call history may not be saved in the call history list in some Bluetooth® devices.
- Calls from restricted ID's are not saved in the call history list.
- Up to 50 calls can be added in each Dialed Calls/Received Calls/Missed Calls list.
- The durations of each dialed/received call are not displayed in your car's Call History list.
- While the call history download is in progress, the status bar displays an icon (⬇️).
- If the call history download is turned off on the Bluetooth® device, the call history download will fail.
- Some devices require a device authentication for downloading your call history. If download fails, check if the Bluetooth® settings or display status are normal.

Contacts

Press the **[PHONE]** button ► Select [Contacts].

- Displays the list of Contacts. Select from the list to dial the number.



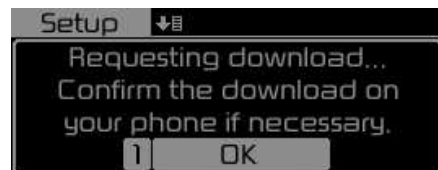
Displays Menu Popup when pressing the **[MENU]** button.

- Download: Downloads contacts from your Bluetooth® device.

Requesting Download

Some devices require a device authentication for downloading your call history and contacts.

If download fails, check the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device settings or the screen state.



* NOTICE

- Up to 2000 phone numbers can be downloaded from a single, paired Bluetooth® device.
- You cannot edit or delete downloaded phone numbers from your car.
- Contacts can be viewed only when the Bluetooth® device is connected.

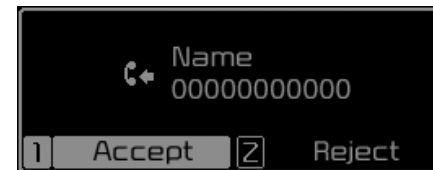
(Continued)

(Continued)

- Even if the Bluetooth® device is disconnected, the downloaded data will remain. (Note that deleting a paired device will also delete all downloaded Contacts and Call History data)
- Downloaded phone numbers may be lost depending on the condition of the head unit. Keep your important data in a safe place.
- The status bar displays a (↓) while downloading contacts.
- The download will not be available if the contacts download function is turned off on your Bluetooth® device.
- Phone contact names should be saved in English or they may not be displayed correctly.
- The time of contacts/call history download may differ depending on the Bluetooth® devices.
- Some devices require a device authentication for downloading your contacts. If download fails, check your phone screen and confirm the download if necessary.

Accept/Reject Call

If there is an incoming call, a popup message will appear.



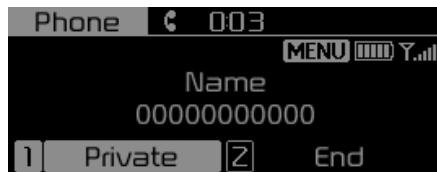
- To answer the incoming call, select [Accept] on the screen or press the [CALL] button on the steering remote control.
- To reject the call, select [Reject] on the screen or press the [END] button on the steering wheel control.

* NOTICE

In some Bluetooth® devices, the caller's number may not be displayed, and the Reject feature may not be supported.

Using the Menu During a Phone Call

When making a call, you can use the following menu items.



(1) Private: Switches a voice call from the car Hands-free to the Bluetooth® device.

(2) End: Ends a call.

Displays Menu Popup when pressing the **[MENU]** button.

- Microphone Volume(Outgoing Volume): Displays the Mic Volume settings. You can adjust the in-call volume that the other party hears (level 1 - 5).

* NOTICE

- Up to 2000 phone numbers can be downloaded from a single, paired Bluetooth® device.
- If the caller's number is listed in Contacts, the caller's name will be displayed. Otherwise, only the number will be displayed. In some Bluetooth® devices, the phone number may not be displayed.
- In some Bluetooth® devices, the Use Private feature may not be supported.
- In some Bluetooth® devices, the Switch feature may not be supported.
- The phone number may not be properly displayed in some Bluetooth® devices.
- During a phone call on a Bluetooth® Handsfree, you cannot access other modes, such as Radio and Setup.
- Depending on handset types, the in-call volume the other party hears may differ. If the other party hears your voice too low or too loud, adjust the mic volume.

Phone Settings

Press the **[PHONE]** button ► Select [Phone settings].

- Moves to a screen of Phone Settings. Refer to [Setup] ► [Phone settings] manual for more information.

Setup

Display

Press the **[SETUP]** button ► Select [Display].

- Song information(Media Display): When playing an MP3 file, select the desired display info from [Folder/File] or [Artist/Title/Album].
- Mode popup: During [On] state, press the **[RADIO]** or **[MEDIA]** button to display the mode change popup.
- Scroll text(Text Scroll)*: If MP3 file name is too long to display, the file name is scrolled from right to left.

* if equipped

Sound

Press the **[SETUP]** button ► Select [Sound].

- Balance: Selects the sound balance.
- Equaliser(Tone): Selects the sound equaliser(tone).
- Speed dependent vol.: Controls the volume level automatically according to the speed of the vehicle.

Phone (if equipped)

Add new device

Press the **[SETUP]** button ► Select [Phone] ► Select [Add new device].

- The following steps are the same as those described in the section [Pairing a New Device] on the previous page.

Connect/Disconnect Device

Press the **[SETUP]** button ► Select [Phone] ► Select [Paired devices].

- Displays the paired Bluetooth® device list.
- From the paired device list, select the device you want to connect or disconnect.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

* NOTICE

- Displays the icons when Bluetooth® device is connected.

: An icon appears when you make a Bluetooth® Audio connection.

: An icon appears when you make a Bluetooth® Handsfree connection.

- Only one Bluetooth® device can be connected at a time.
- Bluetooth® Handsfree and Bluetooth® Audio functions are supported. Handsfree and audio-supported devices, such as a Bluetooth® smartphone or audio, will function normally.
- If the system is not stable due to a vehicle-Bluetooth® device communication error, delete the paired device on each device and pair/connect the Bluetooth® device again.

Delete devices

Press the **[SETUP]** button ► Select [Phone] ► Select [Delete devices].

- Displays the paired Bluetooth® device list.
- When selecting from the list, the device is deleted.

* NOTICE

- When you delete a paired device, the Call History and Contacts stored in the head unit are also deleted.
- To re-use a deleted device, you must pair the device again.

Auto Connection priority

Press the **[SETUP]** button ► Select [Phone] ► Select [Connection priority].

- Select the device to want to set the connection priority of paired devices.
- If “None” is chosen, the Bluetooth® system will try to connect to the last connected device, then to all paired devices.

* NOTICE

- When the engine is running, the selected Bluetooth® device is automatically connected. If you fail to connect the selected device, the previously-connected device is automatically connected, and if it also fails, then it tries to connect all paired devices sequentially.
- Depending on auto connection priority, connection to a device may take time.
- If a *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device becomes disconnected due to being out of communication range, turning the device OFF, or a *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology communication error, corresponding *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology devices are automatically searched and reconnected.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- Even if you are outside, the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology device will be automatically connected once you are in the vicinity of the vehicle. If you do not want to automatically connect your *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology device, turn off the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology feature in your *Bluetooth*® device.
- In some *Bluetooth*® devices, starting the ignition while talking through *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology enabled handsfree call will result in the call becoming disconnected due to car handsfree call transfer. If you use your phone outside the vehicle, turn off the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology feature in your phone.

Language

Press the **[SETUP]** button ► Select [Language].

- Changes the display language.

Display Off

Press the **[SETUP]** button ► Select [Display off].

- Audio operation is maintained and only the screen will be turned Off. In the Screen Off state, press any button to turn the Screen On again.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

Declaration of Conformity CE for EU

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

Declaration of Conformity

We, manufacturer, hereby declare that the product

Model: ACB00HDEE
Additional Model: ACB00HDGG / ACB00HDGN
Type: Car Audio System

satisfies all the technical regulations applicable to the product within the scope of Council Directive 2014/30/EU:

EMC: EN 55013 : 2013
EN 55020 : 2007 / A11 : 2011

All essential radio test suites have been carried out.

Testing laboratory: HCT CO., LTD.

74, Seoicho-en-ro 578beon-gil, Majang-myeon, Icheon-si, Gyeonggi-do, Korea 467-811
Tel. +82-31-645-6983 / Fax. +82-31-645-6401

Authorized representative or manufacturer:

HYUNDAI MOBIS Co., Ltd.
203, Teheran-ro, Gangnam-gu, Seoul, 135-977, Korea
Tel. 82-31-260-0098 / Fax. 82-31-899-1788

This declaration is issued under the sole responsibility of the manufacturer and, if applicable, his authorized Representative, and is marked in accordance with the CE marking directive 93/68/EEC.

Point of contact :

HYUNDAI MOBIS Co., Ltd. Tel. 82-31-260-0098 / Fax. 82-31-899-1788

Seoul, Korea June. 24, 2016



최능훈

/ S. H. Choe
/ Director

Declaration of Conformity

We, manufacturer, hereby declare that the product

Model: ACB10HDEE
Additional Model: ACB10HDGG / ACB01HDEE (NONBT) / ACB01HDGG
Type: Car Audio System

satisfies all the technical regulations applicable to the product within the scope of Council Directives 2006/95/EC, 2004/108/EC and 99/5/EC:

Radio: EN 300 328 V.1.9.1
EMC: EN 55013 : 2013
EN 55020 : 2007 + A11 : 2011
ETSI EN 301 488-1 V.1.9.2
ETSI EN 301 488-17 V.2.2.1
Safety: EN 60065:2002+A1:2008+A11:2008+A2:2010+A12:2011

All essential radio test suites have been carried out.

Testing laboratory: HCT CO., LTD.

74, Seoicho-en-ro 578beon-gil, Majang-myeon, Icheon-si, Gyeonggi-do, Korea 467-811
Tel. +82-31-645-6983 / Fax. +82-31-645-6401

Authorized representative or manufacturer:

HYUNDAI MOBIS Co., Ltd.
203, Teheran-ro, Gangnam-gu, Seoul, 135-977, Korea
Tel. 82-31-260-0098 / Fax. 82-31-899-1788

This declaration is issued under the sole responsibility of the manufacturer and, if applicable, his authorized Representative, and is marked in accordance with the CE marking directive 93/68/EEC.

Point of contact :

HYUNDAI MOBIS Co., Ltd. Tel. 82-31-260-0098 / Fax. 82-31-899-1788

Seoul, Korea June. 24, 2016



최능훈

/ S. H. Choe
/ Director

Declaration of Conformity

We, manufacturer, hereby declare that the product

Model: AC110HDEE
Additional Model: AC110HDGG
Type: Car Audio System

satisfies all the technical regulations applicable to the product within the scope of Council Directives 2006/95/EC, 2004/108/EC and 99/5/EC:

Radio: EN 300 328 V.1.9.1
EMC: EN 55013 : 2013
EN 55020 : 2007 + A11 : 2011
ETSI EN 301 489-1 V.1.9.2
ETSI EN 301 489-17 V.2.2.1
Safety: EN 60065-2002+A1:2006+A11:2008+A2:2010+A12:2011

All essential radio test suites have been carried out.

Testing laboratory: HCT CO., LTD.

74, Seichocho-ro 578beon-gil, Majang-myeon, Icheon-si, Gyeonggi-do, Korea 467-811
Tel. +82-31-645-6983 / Fax +82-31-645-6401

Authorized representative or manufacturer:

HYUNDAI MOBIS Co., Ltd.
203, Teheran-ro, Gangnam-gu, Seoul, 135-977, Korea
Tel. 82-31-260-0098 / Fax. 82-31-899-1788

This declaration is issued under the sole responsibility of the manufacturer and, if applicable, his authorized Representative, and is marked in accordance with the CE marking directive 93/68/EEC.

Point of contact :

HYUNDAI MOBIS Co., Ltd. Tel. 82-31-260-0098 / Fax. 82-31-899-1788

Seoul, Korea June 24, 2016



최승훈

/ S. H. Choe
/ Director

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

NCC for Taiwan

1

根據交通部低功率電波輻射性電機管理辦法 規定：

2

第十二條 經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。

3

第十四條 低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。
前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信。
低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

4

5

6

7

8

9

ANATEL for Brazil

“Este produto está homologado pela ANATEL, de acordo com os procedimentos regulamentados pela resolução nº . 242/2000 e atende aos requisitos técnicos e aplicados”

Para maiores informações, consulte o site da ANATEL www.anatel.gov.br



Este equipamento opera em caráter secundário, isto é, não tem direito a proteção contra interferência prejudicial, mesmo de estações do mesmo tipo, e não pode causar interferência a sistemas operando em caráter primário.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

“Este produto está homologado pela ANATEL, de acordo com os procedimentos regulamentados pela resolução nº . 242/2000 e atende aos requisitos técnicos e aplicados”

Para maiores informações, consulte o site da ANATEL www.anatel.gov.br



Este equipamento opera em caráter secundário, isto é, não tem direito a proteção contra interferência prejudicial, mesmo de estações do mesmo tipo, e não pode causar interferência a sistemas operando em caráter primário.

	Ignition switch / 4-2	1
	Starting the engine / 4-4	
	Manual transmission / 4-7	2
	Limited slip differential / 4-9	
	Locking differential / 4-10	
	Brake system / 4-11	3
	Steering wheel / 4-21	
	Driving your vehicle	4
	Instrument cluster / 4-23	5
	Gauges / 4-25	
	Warnings and indicators / 4-29	
	Rear parking assist system / 4-37	6
	Lighting / 4-40	
	Wipers and washers / 4-45	7
	Defroster - for middle east / 4-48	
	Hazard warning flasher / 4-48	
	Climate control system / 4-49	8
	Windshield defrosting and defogging / 4-57	
	Four-wheel drive (4WD) / 4-60	9

IGNITION SWITCH



OPU036044

Ignition switch and anti-theft steering column lock

Ignition switch position

LOCK

The steering wheel locks to protect against theft. The ignition key can be removed only in the LOCK position.

ACC (Accessory)

The steering wheel is unlocked and electrical accessories are operative.

ON

The warning lights can be checked before the engine is started. This is the normal running position after the engine is started.

Do not leave the ignition switch ON if the engine is not running to prevent battery discharge.

START

Turn the ignition key to the START position to start the engine. The engine will crank until you release the key; then it returns to the ON position. The brake warning lamp can be checked in this position.

*** NOTICE**

If difficulty is experienced turning the ignition switch to the ACC position, turn the key while turning the steering wheel right and left to release the tension.

⚠ WARNING

When you intend to park or stop the vehicle with the engine on, be careful not to depress the accelerator pedal for a long period of time. It may overheat the engine or exhaust system and cause fire.

⚠ WARNING - Ignition key

- Never turn the ignition switch to LOCK or ACC while the vehicle is moving. This would result in loss of directional control and braking function, which could cause an immediate accident.
- The anti-theft steering column lock is not a substitute for the parking brake. Before leaving the driver's seat, always make sure the shift lever is engaged in 1st gear, set the parking brake fully and shut the engine off. Unexpected and sudden vehicle movement may occur if these precautions are not taken.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- Never reach for the ignition switch, or any other controls through the steering wheel while the vehicle is in motion. The presence of your hand or arm in this area could cause a loss of vehicle control, an accident and serious bodily injury or death.
- Do not place any movable objects around the driver's seat as they may move while driving, interfere with the driver and lead to an accident.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

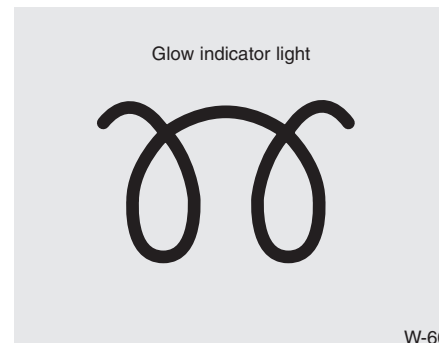
STARTING THE ENGINE

⚠ WARNING

- Always wear appropriate shoes when operating your vehicle. Unsuitable shoes (high heels, ski boots, etc.) may interfere with your ability to use the brake and accelerator pedal, and the clutch (if equipped).
- Do not start the vehicle with the accelerator pedal depressed. The vehicle can move and lead to an accident.
- Wait until the engine rpm is normal. The vehicle may suddenly move if the brake pedal is released when the rpm is high.

To start the diesel engine when the engine is cold, it has to be pre-heated before starting the engine and then have to be warmed up before starting the driving.

1. Make sure the parking brake is applied.
2. **Manual Transmission** - Depress the clutch pedal fully and shift the transmission into the Neutral. Keep the clutch pedal depressed while cranking the engine.
3. Turn the ignition switch ON position to pre-heat the engine. Then the glow indicator light will illuminate.



4. If the glow indicator light goes out, turn the ignition switch to START and hold it there until the engine starts (a maximum of 10 seconds), then release the key.

* NOTICE

If the engine were not started within 10 seconds after the preheating is completed, turn the ignition key once more to the LOCK position during 30 seconds, and then to the ON position, in order to pre-heat again.

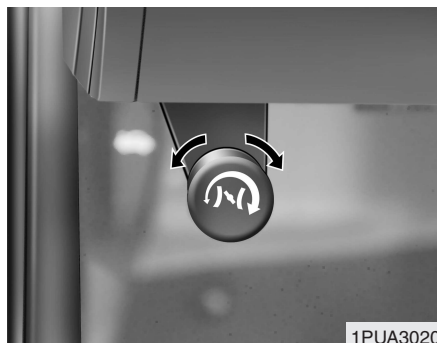
CAUTION

Do not keep the starter engaged for more than 10 seconds. If the engine stalls or falters in starting, wait 30 seconds before reengaging the starter; otherwise you may damage it.

If the engine cannot be started, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

*** NOTICE**

Whether the engine is warm or cold, it should be started without first depressing the accelerator pedal. However, if the engine is unusually difficult to restart when it is warm (fails to start after repeated attempts without depressing the accelerator pedal), start it while depressing the accelerator pedal about halfway.

**Starting the cold engine
(for 2.7L / 3.0L engine only)**

1. If the glow indicator light goes out, start the engine.
2. Pull the warm-up switch out and turn it clockwise after starting the engine.
3. Turn the warm-up switch OFF by rotating it counterclockwise and depressing it in place if the engine temperature gauge moves slightly.

If you do not use the warm-up switch, your vehicle may have the excessive fuel consumption and be damaged in the emission system.

*** NOTICE**

If you drive with turning the warm-up switch ON, the fuel consumption will be increased excessively. Also, this could the failure of engine.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

Starting and stopping the engine for turbo charger intercooler

1

1. Do not race or accelerate the engine immediately after starting.

2

If the engine is cold, idle for several seconds before sufficient lubrication is ensured in the turbo charger unit.

3

4

2. After high speed or extended driving, requiring a heavy engine load, run the engine on idle condition about 1 minute before turning it off.

5

This idle time will allow the turbo charger to cool prior to shutting the engine off.

6

7

WARNING

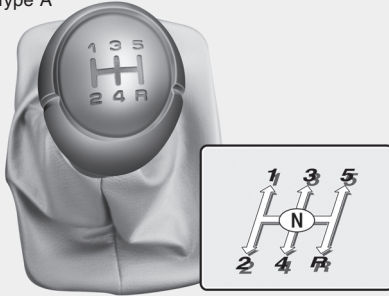
Do not turn the engine off immediately after it has been subjected to a heavy load. Doing so may cause severe damage to the engine or turbo charger unit.

8

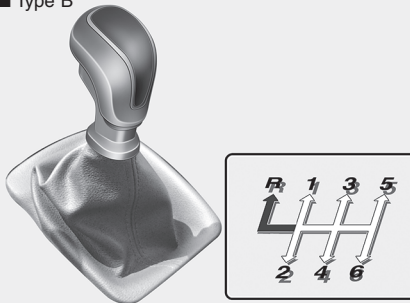
9

MANUAL TRANSMISSION

■ Type A



■ Type B



→ The shift lever can be moved without pulling the ring (1).

➡ The ring (1) must be pulled up while moving the shift lever.

OPU032018/OPU036048

Manual transmission operation

The manual transmission has 5 (or 6) forward gears.

Press the clutch pedal down fully while shifting, then release it slowly.

If your vehicle is equipped with an ignition lock switch, the engine will not start when starting the engine without depressing the clutch pedal. (if equipped)

A special safety feature prevents inadvertent shifting from 5 (Type A) to R (Reverse). The gearshift lever must be returned to the neutral position before shifting into R (Reverse).

Make sure the vehicle is completely stopped before shifting into R (Reverse).

Never operate the engine with the tachometer (rpm) in the red zone.

* NOTICE

To avoid premature clutch wear and damage, do not drive with your foot resting on the clutch pedal. Also, don't use the clutch to hold the vehicle stopped on an upgrade, while waiting for a traffic light, etc.

⚡ CAUTION

- *When shifting into 5th or 6th gear, press the shift lever to the right. Otherwise, the engine could be damaged by accidentally engaging 3rd or 4th gear.*
- *Do not downshift more than 2 gears or downshift the gear when the engine is running at high speed (5,000 RPM or higher). Such a downshifting may damage the engine, clutch and the transaxle.*
- *When downshifting from fifth gear to fourth gear, caution should be taken not to inadvertently press the gear lever sideways in such a manner that second gear is engaged. Such a drastic downshift may cause the engine speed to increase to the point that the tachometer will enter the red-zone. Such over-revving of the engine may possibly cause engine damage.*

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

WARNING - Manual transmission

- Before leaving the driver's seat, always set the parking brake fully and shut the engine off. Then make sure the transmission is shifted into 1st gear when the vehicle is parked on a level or uphill grade, and shifted into R (Reverse) gear on a downhill ground. Unexpected and sudden vehicle movement can occur if these precautions are not followed in the order identified.
- If your vehicle has a manual transaxle not equipped with a ignition lock switch, it may move and cause a serious accident when starting the engine without depressing the clutch pedal while the parking brake is released and the shift lever not in the N (Neutral) position.

Downshifting

When you must slow down in heavy traffic or while driving up steep hills, downshift before the engine starts to "labor". Downshifting reduces the chance of stalling and gives better acceleration when you again need to increase your speed. When the vehicle is traveling down steep hills, downshifting helps maintain safe speed and prolongs brake life.

CAUTION

- To avoid premature clutch wear and damage, do not drive with your foot resting on the clutch pedal. Also, don't use the clutch to hold the vehicle stopped on an uphill grade, while waiting for a traffic light, etc.
- To prevent possible damage to the clutch system, do not start with the 2nd (second) gear engaged except when you start on a slippery road.

Using the clutch

The clutch should be pressed all the way to the floor before shifting, then released slowly. The clutch pedal should always be fully released while driving. Do not rest your foot on the clutch pedal while driving. This can cause unnecessary wear. Do not partially engage the clutch to hold the vehicle on an incline. This causes unnecessary wear. Use the foot brake or parking brake to hold the vehicle on an incline. Do not operate the clutch pedal rapidly and repeatedly.

LIMITED SLIP DIFFERENTIAL (EXCEPT 2.5 ENGINE, IF EQUIPPED)

⚠ WARNING

To avoid injury, never run the engine with one wheel off the ground, such as when changing a tire.

A limited slip differential, if equipped, is for the rear wheel differential only. The features of this limited slip differential are described below;

Just as with conventional differential, the wheel on one side is allowed to turn at a different speed from the wheel on the other side when the vehicle is cornering.

The difference between the limited slip differential and a conventional differential is that if the wheel on one side of the vehicle loses traction, a greater amount of torque is applied to the rear wheel on the other side to improve traction.

- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9

LOCKING DIFFERENTIAL (FOR 2.5 ENGINE, IF EQUIPPED)

A locking differential, if equipped, is for the rear wheel differential only. The features of this locking differential are described below:

Just as with a conventional differential, the wheel on one side is allowed to turn at a different speed from the wheel on the other side when the vehicle is cornering. The difference between the locking differential and a conventional differential is that if the wheel on one side of the vehicle loses traction, a greater amount of torque is applied to the rear wheel on the other side to improve traction.

* NOTICE

In a stationary position, the LD (Locking Differential) will operate when the difference of the revolution speed between the rear right wheel and the rear left wheel occurs.

The following procedures can be used to confirm that the locking differential is functioning properly:

- (1) Position the vehicle so that one wheel is on a dry paved surface and the other on ice, snow, mud, etc. Drive the vehicle, and observe the operation of the locking differential. The vehicle should not become stuck if the differential is functioning properly.
- (2) Depress the accelerator pedal gradually, and then when traction is good, depress it forcefully. If the vehicle accelerates well, the differential is functioning properly.

* NOTICE

Usually a locking differential will operate and release automatically but occasionally it may not release automatically.

At this time you will feel the tire is dragged when you are driving or cornering. You can release it manually by slightly turning the steering wheel right and left while the vehicle is moving slowly.

CAUTION

- *Never start the engine with the gearshift lever placed in the forward or reverse while one of the rear wheels is jacked up and the other in contact with the ground; doing so may cause the vehicle to jump forward.*
- *If one of the rear wheels begins to spin in mud, snow, etc., the vehicle can sometimes be driven out by depressing the accelerator pedal further; however, avoid running the engine continuously at high rpm because doing so could damage the locking differential.*

BRAKE SYSTEM

Power brakes

Your vehicle has power-assisted brakes that adjust automatically through normal usage.

In the event that the power-assisted brakes lose power because of a stalled engine or some other reason, you can still stop your vehicle by applying greater force to the brake pedal than you normally would. The stopping distance, however, will be longer.

When the engine is not running, the reserve brake power is partially depleted each time the brake pedal is applied. Do not pump the brake pedal when the power assist has been interrupted.

Pump the brake pedal only when necessary to maintain steering control on slippery surfaces.

In the event of brake failure

If service brakes fail to operate while the vehicle is in motion, you can make an emergency stop with the parking brake. The stopping distance, however, will be much greater than normal.

WARNING - Parking brake

Pulling the parking brake while the vehicle is moving at normal speeds can cause a sudden loss of control of the vehicle. If you must use the parking brake to stop the vehicle, use great caution in applying the brake.

WARNING - Brakes

- **Do not drive with your foot resting on the brake pedal. This will create abnormal high brake temperatures, excessive brake lining and pad wear, and increased stopping distances.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **When descending a long or steep hill, shift to a lower gear and avoid continuous application of the brakes. Continuous brake application will cause the brakes to overheat and could result in a temporary loss of braking performance.**
- **Wet brakes may result in the vehicle not slowing down at the usual rate and pulling to one side when the brakes are applied. Applying the brakes lightly will indicate whether they have been affected in this way. Always test your brakes in this fashion after driving through deep water. To dry the brakes, apply them lightly while maintaining a safe forward speed until brake performance returns to normal.**

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

Disc brakes wear indicator

Your vehicle has front disc brakes.

When your front brake pads are worn and it's time for new pads, you will hear a high-pitched warning sound from your front brakes. You may hear this sound come and go or it may occur whenever you depress the brake pedal.

Please remember that some driving conditions or climates may cause a brake squeal when you first apply (or lightly apply) the brakes. This is normal and does not indicate a problem with your brakes.

* NOTICE

To avoid costly brake repairs, do not continue to drive with worn brake pads.

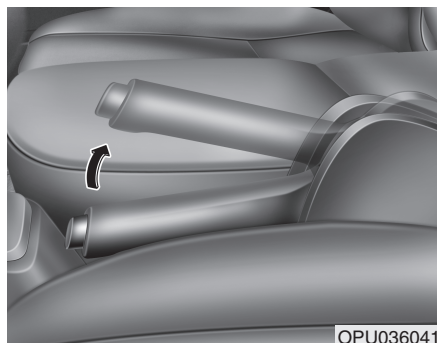
⚠ WARNING - Brake wear
This brake wear warning sound means your vehicle needs service. If you ignore this audible warning, you will eventually lose braking performance, which could lead to a serious accident.

⚡ CAUTION

Always replace front brake pads or rear brake linings as complete front or rear axle sets.

Rear drum brakes

Your rear drum brakes do not have wear indicators. Therefore, have the rear brake linings inspected if you hear a rear brake rubbing noise. Also have your rear brakes inspected each time you change or rotate your tires and when you have the front brakes replaced.



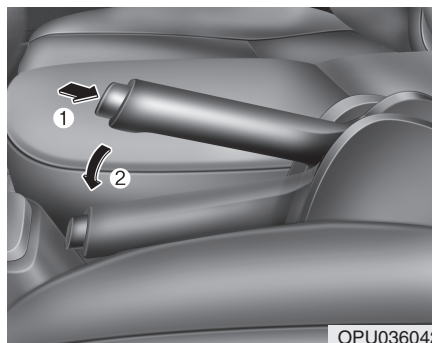
OPU036041

Parking brake

To apply the parking brake, pull the parking brake handle fully and firmly upward while applying the service brake.

CAUTION

Driving with the parking brake applied will cause excessive brake pad/lining and brake rotor wear.



OPU036042

To release the parking brake, pull the handle up slightly and push the release button, then lower the handle to the released position while holding the button in.

⚠ WARNING - Parking brake

- To prevent unintentional movement when stopped and leaving the vehicle, do not use the gearshift lever in place of the parking brake. Set the parking brake AND make sure the gearshift lever is securely positioned in 1st (First) gear or R (Reverse).
- Never allow a person who is unfamiliar with the vehicle or children to touch the parking brake. If the parking brake is released unintentionally, serious injury may occur.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

1

2

3

4



5
6
7
8
9

Check the brake warning light by turning the ignition switch ON (do not start the engine). This light will be illuminated when the parking brake is applied with the ignition switch in the START or ON position.

Before driving, be sure the parking brake is fully released and the brake warning light is off.

If the brake warning light remains on after the parking brake is released, there may be a malfunction in the brake system. Immediate attention is necessary.

If at all possible, cease driving the vehicle immediately. If that is not possible, use extreme caution while operating the vehicle and only continue to drive the vehicle until you can reach a safe location or repair shop.

Parking on curbed streets

- When parking your vehicle on an uphill grade, park as close to the curb as possible and turn the front wheels away from the curb so that the front wheels will contact the curb if the vehicle moves backward.
- When parking your vehicle on a downhill grade, park as close to the curb as possible and turn the front wheels toward the curb so that the front wheels will contact the curb if the vehicle moves forward.

Anti-lock brake system (ABS) (if equipped)

WARNING

ABS will not prevent accidents due to improper or dangerous driving maneuvers. Even though vehicle control is improved during emergency braking, always maintain a safe distance between you and objects ahead. Vehicle speeds should always be reduced during extreme road conditions.

The braking distance for vehicles equipped with an anti-lock braking system may be longer than for those without it in the following road conditions.

During these conditions the vehicle should be driven at reduced speeds:

- Rough, gravel or snow-covered roads.
- With tire chains installed.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- On roads where the road surface is pitted or has different surface height.

The safety features of an ABS equipped vehicle should not be tested by high speed driving or cornering. This could endanger the safety of yourself or others.

The ABS continuously senses the speed of the wheels. If the wheels are going to lock, the ABS system repeatedly modulates the hydraulic brake pressure to the wheels.

When you apply your brakes under conditions which may lock the wheels, you may hear a “tik-tik” sound from the brakes, or feel a corresponding sensation in the brake pedal. This is normal and it means your ABS is active.

In order to obtain the maximum benefit from your ABS in an emergency situation, do not attempt to modulate your brake pressure and do not try to pump your brakes.

Press your brake pedal as hard as possible or as hard as the situation allows the ABS to control the force being delivered to the brakes.

* **NOTICE**

A click sound may be heard in the engine compartment when the vehicle begins to move after the engine is started. These conditions are normal and indicate that the anti-lock brake system is functioning properly.

- Even with the anti-lock brake system, your vehicle still requires sufficient stopping distance. Always maintain a safe distance from the vehicle in front of you.
- Always slow down when cornering. The anti-lock brake system cannot prevent accidents resulting from excessive speeds.
- On loose or uneven road surfaces, operation of the anti-lock brake system may result in a longer stopping distance than for vehicles equipped with a conventional brake system.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

1

2

3

4



W-78

5

6

7

8

9

CAUTION

- If the ABS warning light is on and stays on, you may have a problem with the ABS. In this case, however, your regular brakes will work normally.
- The ABS warning light will stay on for approximately 3 seconds after the ignition switch is ON. During that time, the ABS will go through self-diagnosis and the light will go off if everything is normal. If the light stays on, you may have a problem with your ABS. We recommend that you contact an authorized Kia dealer.

CAUTION

- When you drive on a road having poor traction, such as an icy road, and operate your brakes continuously, the ABS will be active continuously and the ABS warning light may illuminate. Pull your vehicle over to a safe place and stop the engine.
- Restart the engine. If the ABS warning light is off, then your ABS system is normal. Otherwise, you may have a problem with the ABS. We recommend that you contact an authorized Kia dealer.

*** NOTICE**

When you jump start your vehicle because of a drained battery, the engine may not run as smoothly and the ABS warning light may turn on at the same time. This happens because of the low battery voltage. It does not mean your ABS is malfunctioning.

- Do not pump your brakes!
- Have the battery recharged before driving the vehicle.



Electronic stability control (ESC) (If equipped)

The Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system is designed to stabilize the vehicle during cornering maneuvers. ESC checks where you are steering and where the vehicle is actually going. ESC applies the brakes on individual wheels and intervenes with the engine management system to stabilize the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

Never drive too fast according to the road conditions or too quickly when cornering. Electronic Stability Control (ESC) will not prevent accidents. Excessive speed in turns, abrupt maneuvers and hydroplaning on wet surfaces can still result in serious accidents. Only a safe and attentive driver can prevent accidents by avoiding maneuvers that cause the vehicle to lose traction. Even with ESC installed, always follow all the normal precautions for driving - including driving at safe speeds for the conditions.

The Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system is an electronic system designed to help the driver maintain vehicle control under adverse conditions. It is not a substitute for safe driving practices. Factors including speed, road conditions and driver steering input can all affect whether ESC will be effective in preventing a loss of control. It is still your responsibility to drive and corner at reasonable speeds and to leave a sufficient margin of safety.

When you apply your brakes under conditions which may lock the wheels, you may hear a “tik-tik” sound from the brakes, or feel a corresponding sensation in the brake pedal. This is normal and it means your ESC is active.

* NOTICE

A click sound may be heard in the engine compartment when the vehicle begins to move after the engine is started. These conditions are normal and indicate that the Electronic Stability Control (ESC) System is functioning properly.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

ESC operation

ESC ON condition

-

- When the ignition is turned ON, ESC and ESC OFF indicator lights illuminate for approximately 3 seconds, then ESC is turned on.
- Press the ESC OFF button for at least half a second after turning the ignition ON to turn ESC off. (ESC OFF indicator will illuminate). To turn the ESC on, press the ESP OFF button (ESC OFF indicator light will go off).
- When starting the engine, you may hear a slight ticking sound. This is the ESC performing an automatic system self-check and does not indicate a problem.

When operating



When the ESC is in operation, the ESC indicator light blinks.

- When the Electronic Stability Control is operating properly, you can feel a slight pulsation in the vehicle. This is only the effect of brake control and indicates nothing unusual.
- When moving out of the mud or slippery road, pressing the accelerator pedal may not cause the engine rpm (revolutions per minute) to increase.

ESC operation off

ESC OFF state



If the engine stops when ESC is off, ESC remains off. Upon restarting the engine, the ESC will automatically turn on again.

Indicator light

■ ESC OFF indicator light



ESC OFF indicator light comes on when the ESC is turned off with the button.

CAUTION

Driving with varying tire or wheel sizes may cause the ESC system to malfunction. When replacing tires, make sure they are the same size as your original tires.

WARNING

The Electronic Stability Control system is only a driving aid; use precautions for safe driving by slowing down on curved, snowy, or icy roads. Drive slowly and don't attempt to accelerate whenever the ESC indicator light is blinking, or when the road surface is slippery.

ESC OFF usage**When driving**

- ESC should be turned on for daily driving whenever possible.
- To turn ESC off while driving, press the ESC OFF button while driving on a flat road surface.

WARNING

Never press the ESC OFF button while ESC is operating (ESC indicator light blinks).

If ESC is turned off while ESC is operating, the vehicle may slip out of control.

*** NOTICE**

- When operating the vehicle on a dynamometer, ensure that the ESC is turned off (ESC OFF light illuminated). If the ESC is left on, it may prevent the vehicle speed from increasing, and result in false diagnosis.
- Turning the ESC off does not affect ABS or brake system operation.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

Hill-start assist control (HAC) (if equipped)

A vehicle has the tendency to slip back on a steep hill when it starts to go after stopping. The Hill-start Assist Control (HAC) prevents the vehicle from slipping back by operating the brakes automatically for about 2 seconds. The brakes are released when the accelerator pedal is depressed or after about 2 seconds.

WARNING

The HAC is activated only for about 1~2 seconds, so when the vehicle is starting off always depress the accelerator pedal.

* NOTICE

- The HAC does not operate when the transaxle shift lever is in the P (Park) or N (Neutral) position.
- The HAC activates even though the ESC is off but it does not activate when the ESC has malfunctioned.

STEERING WHEEL

Power steering (if equipped)

Power steering uses energy from the engine to assist you in steering the vehicle. If the engine is off or if the power steering system becomes inoperative, the vehicle may still be steered, but it will require increased steering effort.

Should you notice any change in the effort required to steer during normal vehicle operation, we recommend that the power steering be checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

* NOTICE

- **Never hold the steering wheel against a stop (extreme right or left turn) for more than 5 seconds with the engine running. Holding the steering wheel for more than 5 seconds in either position may cause damage to the power steering pump.**
- **If the power steering drive belt breaks or if the power steering pump malfunctions, the steering effort will greatly increase.**

* NOTICE

If the vehicle is parked for extended periods outside in cold weather (below -10 °C/14 °F), the power steering may require increased effort when the engine is first started. This is caused by increased fluid viscosity due to the cold weather and does not indicate a malfunction.

When this happens, increase the engine RPM by depressing accelerator until the RPM reaches 1,500 rpm then release or let the engine idle for two or three minutes to warm up the fluid.

Tilt steering (if equipped)

A tilt steering wheel allows you to adjust the steering wheel before you drive. You can also raise it to the highest level to give your legs more room when you exit and enter the vehicle.

The steering wheel should be positioned so that it is comfortable for you to drive, while permitting you to see the instrument panel warning lights and gauges.

WARNING

- **Never adjust the angle of steering wheel while driving. You may lose your steering control and cause severe personal injury or accidents.**
- **After adjusting, push the steering wheel both up and down to be certain it is locked in position.**

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

1

2

3

4



1. Pull the lever upward and hold it to unlock.
2. Raise or lower the steering wheel to the desired position.
3. After adjust, release the lever.

Be sure to adjust the steering wheel to the desired position before driving.

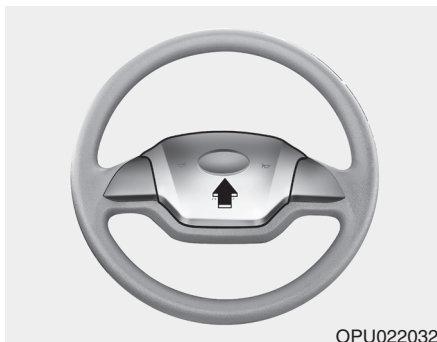
5

6

7

8

9



Horn

To sound the horn, press the horn symbol on your steering wheel.

Check the horn regularly to be sure it operates properly.

CAUTION

- To sound the horn, press the area indicated by the horn symbol on your steering wheel (see illustration). The horn will operate only when this area is pressed.
- Do not strike the horn severely to operate it, or hit it with your fist. Do not press on the horn with a sharp-pointed object.

INSTRUMENT CLUSTER

■ Type A (Diesel)



1. Engine temperature gauge
2. Turn signal indicators
3. Headlight high beam indicator

4. Speedometer
5. Fuel gauge
6. Warning and indicator lights

7. Mode button
8. Odometer / Tripmeter
9. Tachometer
10. Clock knob

* The actual cluster in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

OPU026073

■ Type B (LPG)



1. Engine temperature gauge
2. Turn signal indicators
3. Headlight high beam indicator

4. Speedometer
5. Fuel gauge
6. Warning and indicator lights

7. Mode button
8. Odometer / Tripmeter
9. Tachometer
10. Clock knob

* The actual cluster in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

OPU026074

GAUGES



Speedometer

The speedometer indicates the forward speed of the vehicle.



Odometer/Tripmeter

You can choose the odometer, tripmeter A and tripmeter B by pressing the tripmeter mode button.



Odometer

The odometer indicates the total distance the vehicle has been driven.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

1

2

3

4



OPU026076

Tripmeter

TRIP A: Tripmeter A

TRIP B: Tripmeter B

The tripmeter indicates the distance of individual trips selected by the driver. Tripmeter A and B can be reset to 0 by pressing the reset button for 1 second or more, and then releasing.

7

8

9



OPU026078L

Tachometer (if equipped)

The tachometer indicates the approximate number of engine revolutions per minute (rpm).

Use the tachometer to select the correct shift points and to prevent lugging and/or over-revving the engine.

The tachometer pointer may move slightly when the ignition switch is in ACC or ON position with the engine OFF. This movement is normal and will not affect the accuracy of the tachometer once the engine is running.

*** NOTICE**

Do not operate the engine within the tachometer's red zone.

This may cause severe engine damage.



OPU026079L

Engine temperature gauge

This gauge shows the temperature of the engine coolant when the ignition switch is ON.

Do not continue driving with an overheated engine. If your vehicle overheats, refer to “Overheating” in the Index.

* NOTICE

If the gauge pointer moves beyond the normal range area toward the “H” position, it indicates overheating that may damage the engine.



OPU026080L

Fuel gauge

The fuel gauge indicates the approximate amount of fuel remaining in the fuel tank. Fuel tank capacity - 60 liters (15.9 US gal.).

The fuel gauge is supplemented by a low fuel warning light, which will illuminate when the fuel level has dropped to about 8 liters (2.1 US gal.).

⚠ WARNING

Avoid driving with a very low fuel level. If you run out of fuel, it could cause the engine to misfire and result in excessive loading of the catalytic converter.

Trip modes (Trip computer)

The trip computer is a microcomputer-controlled driver information system that displays information related to driving.

* NOTICE

Some driving information stored in the trip computer resets if the battery is disconnected.

1

2

3

4

5

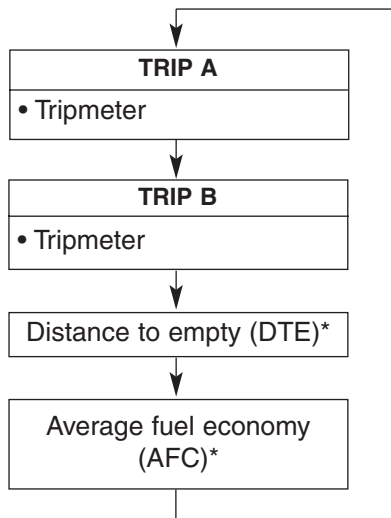
6

7

8

9

Trip modes



To change the trip mode, push the Trip switch in the trip computer mode.

* : if equipped

Distance To Empty

- The distance to empty is the estimated distance the vehicle can be driven with the remaining fuel.
 - Distance range: 1~9,999 km or 1~9,999 mi.
- If the estimated distance is below 1 km (1 mi.), the trip computer will display "---" as distance to empty.

* NOTICE

- If the vehicle is not on level ground or the battery power has been interrupted, the distance to empty function may not operate correctly.
- The distance to empty may differ from the actual driving distance as it is an estimate of the available driving distance.
- The trip computer may not register additional fuel if less than 6 liters (1.6 gallons) of fuel are added to the vehicle.
- The fuel economy and distance to empty may vary significantly based on driving conditions, driving habits, and condition of the vehicle.

Average Fuel Economy

- The average fuel economy is calculated by the total driving distance and fuel consumption since the last average fuel economy reset.
 - Fuel economy range: 0.0 ~ 99.9 L/100km or MPG
- The average fuel economy can be reset both manually and automatically.

Manual reset

To clear the average fuel economy manually, press the MODE button (reset) on the cluster for more than 1 second when the average fuel economy is displayed.

Automatic reset

To make the average fuel economy be reset automatically after refueling more than 6 liters and driving over 1.5km/h, the vehicle will reset to default automatically.

WARNINGS AND INDICATORS

Warning lights / audible indicators

Checking operation

All warning lights are checked by turning the ignition switch ON (do not start the engine). If any light that does not illuminate, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

After starting the engine, check to make sure that all warning lights are off. If any are still on, this indicates a situation that needs attention. When releasing the parking brake, the brake system warning light should go off. The fuel warning light will stay on if the fuel level is low.

Engine oil pressure warning



This warning light indicates the engine oil pressure is low.

If the warning light illuminates while driving:

1. Drive safely to the side of the road and stop.
2. With the engine off, check the engine oil level. If the level is low, add oil as required.

If the warning light remains on after adding oil or if oil is not available, we recommend that you call an authorized Kia dealer.

* NOTICE

If the engine is not stopped immediately, severe damage could result.

Charging system warning



This warning light indicates a malfunction of either the generator or electrical charging system.

If the warning light comes on while the vehicle is in motion:

1. Drive to the nearest safe location.
2. With the engine off, check the generator drive belt for looseness or breakage.
3. If the belt is adjusted properly, a problem exists somewhere in the electrical charging system. We recommend that the system be checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

Safety belt warning



As a reminder to the driver and passenger, safety belt warning light will blink for approximately 6 seconds each time you turn the ignition switch ON.

If the driver's lap/shoulder belt is not fastened when the key is turned ON or if it is unfastened after the key is ON, the safety belt warning light blinks for 6 seconds. If the system does not operate as described, we recommend that you contact an authorized Kia dealer.

Anti-lock brake system (ABS) warning light (if equipped)



This warning light illuminates if the ignition switch is turned to ON and goes off in approximately 3 seconds if the system is operating normally.

If the ABS warning light remains on, comes on while driving, or does not come on when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position, this indicates that the ABS may have malfunctioned.

If this occurs, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized Kia dealer. The normal braking system will still be operational, but without the assistance of the anti-lock brake system.

WARNING

If the both ABS and Brake warning lights are on and stay on, your vehicle's brake system will not work normally. So you may experience an unexpected and dangerous situation during sudden braking. In this case, avoid high speed driving and abrupt braking. We recommend that the system be checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

Parking brake & brake fluid warning***Parking brake warning***

This light is illuminated when the parking brake is applied with the ignition switch in the START or ON position. The warning light should go off when the parking brake is released.

Low brake fluid level warning

If the warning light remains on, it may indicate that the brake fluid level in the reservoir is low.

If the warning light remains on:

1. Drive carefully to the nearest safe location and stop your vehicle.
2. With the engine stopped, check the brake fluid level immediately and add fluid as required. Then check all brake components for fluid leaks.
3. Do not drive the vehicle if leaks are found, the warning light remains on or the brakes do not operate properly. We recommend that you contact an authorized Kia dealer.

To check bulb operation, check whether the parking brake and brake fluid warning light illuminates when the ignition switch is in the ON position.

⚠ WARNING

Driving the vehicle with a warning light on is dangerous. If the brake warning light remains on, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

Low fuel level warning

This warning light indicates the fuel tank is nearly empty. When it comes on, you should add fuel as soon as possible. Driving with the fuel level warning light on or with the fuel level below “E” can cause the engine to misfire and damage the catalytic converter.

Door ajar warning

This warning light illuminates when a door is not closed securely with the ignition in any position.

Headlight high beam indicator

This indicator illuminates when the headlights are on and in the high beam position or when the turn signal lever is pulled into the Flash-to-Pass position.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

1

Electronic Stability Control (ESC) Indicator Light (if equipped)



This indicator light illuminates:

- Once you set the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop Button to the ON position.
 - It illuminates for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
- When there is a malfunction with the ESC system.

In this case, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.

This indicator light blinks:

- While the ESC is operating.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC) OFF Indicator Light (if equipped)



This indicator light illuminates:

- Once you set the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop Button to the ON position.
 - It illuminates for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
- When you deactivate the ESC system by pressing the ESC OFF button.

Front fog light indicator (if equipped)

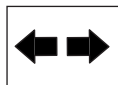


This indicator comes on when the front fog lights are ON.

Rear fog light indicator (if equipped)

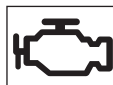


This indicator illuminates when the rear fog lights are ON.

Turn signal indicator

The blinking green arrows on the instrument cluster show the direction indicated by the turn signals. If the arrow comes on but does not blink, blinks more rapidly than normal, or does not illuminate at all, a malfunction in the turn signal system is indicated.

We recommend that the turn signal system be checked and repaired by an authorized Kia dealer.

Malfunction indicator (if equipped)

This indicator light is part of the Engine Control System which monitors various emission control system components. If this light illuminates while driving, it indicates that a potential problem has been detected somewhere in the emission control system.

Generally, your vehicle will continue to be drivable and will not need towing, but we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

CAUTION

- *Prolonged driving with the Emission Control System Malfunction Indicator Light (⚠️) illuminated may cause damage to the emission control systems which could effect drivability and/or fuel economy.*
- *If the Emission Control System Malfunction Indicator Light (⚠️) begins to flash ON and OFF, potential catalytic converter damage is possible which could result in loss of engine power. We recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.*

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

⚡ CAUTION - Diesel engine
(if equipped with DPF)

When the malfunction indicator light is blinks, it may stop blinking after driving the vehicle at more than 60km/h (37 mph) or at more than second gear with 1500 ~ 2000 engine rpm for a certain time (for about 25 minutes).

If the malfunction indicator light continues to be blinked in spite of the procedure, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

If you continue to drive with the malfunction indicator light blinking for a long time, the DPF system can be damaged and fuel consumption can be worsen.

⚡ CAUTION - Diesel engine

If the Emission Control System Malfunction Indicator Light blinks, some error related to the injection quantity adjustment occurs which could result in loss of engine power, combustion noise and poor emission. We recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.

Glow indicator



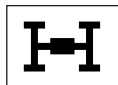
This light is turned on during warm-up and turned off after it.

*** NOTICE**

If the glow indicator continues to illuminate after the engine has warmed up or while driving, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

Fuel filter warning light

The light comes on if water in the fuel filter is accumulated more than normal. Drain water if the light is turned on. Driving with the light on may damage the engine.

4WD indicator light (if equipped)

When the key is turned to the ON position, the 4WD indicator light will come on and then go off in a few seconds.

The 4WD indicator light will illuminate when the transfer shift lever is set to 4H or 4L position.

Safety belt warning chime (if equipped)

If the driver's seat belt is not fastened when the ignition key is turned "ON" or if it is disconnected after the key is ON, the safety belt warning chime will sound for approximately 6 seconds.

Key reminder warning chime (if equipped)

If the driver's door is opened and the ignition key is left in the ignition switch in the LOCK or ACC position, the key reminder warning chime will sound. This is to prevent you from locking your keys in the vehicle.

Parking start warning sound (if equipped)

If the vehicle driven at 10km/h (6mph) for more 2~3 than seconds, the warning chime will sound continuously when the parking brake engaged.

Overspeed warning (if equipped)
120
km/h

If you drive at a speed of 120 km/h or more, the overspeed warning light will blink.

This is to warn you from driving your vehicle with excessive speed.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

1

Exhaust system (DPF) warning light (For Europe, if equipped)



2

3

4

The warning message is displayed, as above, when there is a DPF problem with your vehicle. In this case, we recommend that the DPF system be inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.

For more details, refer to the "DPF system" in chapter 5.

5

6

7

8

9



CAUTION - Diesel engine (if equipped with DPF)

When the malfunction indicator light is blinks, it may stop blinking after driving the vehicle at more than 60km/h (37 mph) or at more than second gear with 1500 ~ 2500 engine rpm for a certain time (for about 25 minutes).

(Continued)

(Continued)

If the malfunction indicator light continues to be blinked in spite of the procedure, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized Kia dealer. If you continue to drive with the malfunction indicator light blinking for a long time, the DPF system can be damaged and fuel consumption can be worsen.



CAUTION - Diesel engine

If the Emission Control System Malfunction Indicator Light blinks, some error related to the injection quantity adjustment occurs which could result in loss of engine power, combustion noise and poor emission. We recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.

Ignition Standby Indicator Light (LPG engine, if equipped)

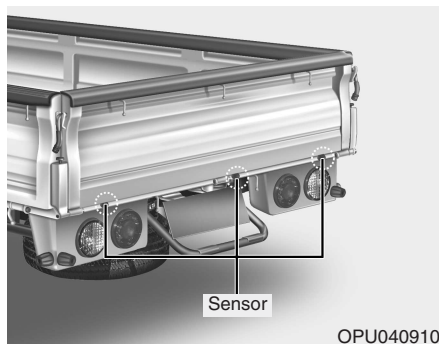


This indicator light illuminates when the ignition switch is in the ON position before starting the engine, and goes off when it reaches certain pressure to sufficiently provide liquid LPG for the engine.

It may not illuminate when the pressure is already fixed, even when the ignition switch is in the ON position.

Be sure to check the indicator light is illuminated with the ignition switch in the ON position before starting the engine.

REAR PARKING ASSIST SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)



OPU040910

The rear parking assist system assists the driver during backward movement of the vehicle by chiming if any object is sensed within a distance of 120 cm (47 in.) behind the vehicle. This system is a supplementary system and it is not intended to nor does it replace the need for extreme care and attention of the driver. The sensing range and objects detectable by the back sensors are limited. Whenever backing-up, pay as much attention to what is behind you as you would in a vehicle without a rear parking assist system.

⚠ WARNING

The rear parking assist system is a supplementary function only. The operation of the rear parking assist system can be affected by several factors (including environmental conditions). It is the responsibility of the driver to always check the area behind the vehicle before backing up.

Operation of the rear parking assist system

Operating condition

- This system will activate when backing up with the ignition key ON. If the vehicle is moving at a speed over 5 km/h (3 mph), the system may not be activated correctly.
- The sensing distance while the rear parking assist system is in operation is approximately 120 cm (47 in.).
- When more than two objects are sensed at the same time, the closest one will be recognized first.

Types of warning sound

- When an object is 120 cm to 81 cm (47 in. to 32 in.) from the rear bumper : Buzzer beeps intermittently
- When an object is 80 cm to 41 cm (31 in. to 16 in.) from the rear bumper : Buzzer beeps more frequently
- When an object is within 40 cm (15 in.) of the rear bumper : Buzzer sounds continuously.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

Non-operational conditions of rear parking assist system

The rear parking assist system may not operate properly when:

1. Moisture is frozen to the sensor. (It will operate normally when the moisture has been cleared.)
2. The sensor is covered with foreign matter, such as snow or water, or the sensor cover is blocked. (It will operate normally when the material is removed or the sensor is no longer blocked.)
3. Driving on uneven road surfaces (unpaved roads, gravel, bumps, gradient).
4. Objects generating excessive noise (vehicle horns, loud motorcycle engines, or truck air brakes) are within range of the sensor.
5. Heavy rain or water spray exists.
6. Wireless transmitters or mobile phones are within range of the sensor.
7. The sensor is covered with snow.
8. Trailer towing

9. Overloading in the cargo or luggage offset to one side.
10. Sensor protector is damaged.
11. Driving in areas generating excessive noise and ultrasonic waves such as mechanical devices or electronic tools.
12. Luggage in the cargo is interfered with the sensor.

The detecting range may decrease when:

1. The sensor is stained with foreign matter such as snow or water. (The sensing range will return to normal when removed.)
2. Outside air temperature is extremely hot or cold.

The following objects may not be recognized by the sensor:

1. Sharp or slim objects such as ropes, chains or small poles.
2. Objects which tend to absorb the sensor frequency such as clothes, spongy material or snow.
3. Undetectable objects smaller than 1 m (40 in.) and narrower than 14 cm (6 in.) in diameter.

The sensor can be damaged if any of following occur:

1. Sensor is covered with foreign matter such as animal waste or chemicals.
2. Rear gate is opened suddenly without holding rear gate.

⚠ CAUTION

- 1. The rear parking assist system may not sound sequentially depending on the speed and shapes of the objects detected.*
- 2. The rear parking assist system may malfunction if the vehicle bumper height or sensor installation has been modified or damaged. Any non-factory installed equipment or accessories may also interfere with the sensor performance.*
- 3. The sensor may not recognize objects less than 40 cm (15 in.) from the sensor, or it may sense an incorrect distance. Use caution.*
- 4. When the sensor is frozen or stained with snow, dirt, or water, the sensor may be inoperative until the stains are removed using a soft cloth.*
- 5. Do not push, scratch or strike the sensor. Sensor damage could occur.*

⚠ CAUTION

This system can only sense objects within the range and location of the sensors; It can not detect objects in other areas where sensors are not installed. Also, small or slim objects, such as poles or objects located between sensors may not be detected by the sensors.

Always visually check behind the vehicle when backing up.

Be sure to inform any drivers of the vehicle that may be unfamiliar with the system regarding the systems capabilities and limitations.

Your new vehicle warranty does not cover any accidents or damage to the vehicle or its occupants due to a rear parking assist system malfunction.

Always drive safely and cautiously.

⚠ WARNING

Pay close attention when the vehicle is driven close to objects on the road, particularly pedestrians, and especially children. Be aware that some objects may not be detected by the sensors, due to the object's distance, size or material, all of which can limit the effectiveness of the sensor. Always perform a visual inspection to make sure the vehicle is clear of all obstructions before moving the vehicle in any direction.

*** NOTICE**

If you don't hear an audible warning sound or if the buzzer sounds intermittently when shifting the gear to "R" position, this may indicate a malfunction in the rear parking assist system. If this occurs, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

LIGHTING

Battery saver function (if equipped)

- The purpose of this feature is to prevent the battery from being discharged. The system automatically turns off the parking lights when the driver removes the ignition key and opens the driver- side door.
- With this feature, the parking lights will be turned off automatically if the driver parks on the side of road at night.

If necessary, to keep the lights on when the ignition key is removed, perform the following :

- 1) Open the driver-side door.
- 2) Turn the parklights off and on again using the light switch on the steering column.

CAUTION

If the driver gets out of the vehicle through other doors (except driver's door), the battery saver function does not operate. Therefore, It causes the battery to be discharged. In this case, make sure to turn off the lamp before getting out of the vehicle.



OPU026081

Lighting control

The light switch has a Headlight and a Taillight position.

To operate the lights, turn the knob at the end of the control lever to one of the following positions:

- ① OFF position
- ② Taillight position
- ③ Headlight position
- ④ Auto light position

Taillight position (300)

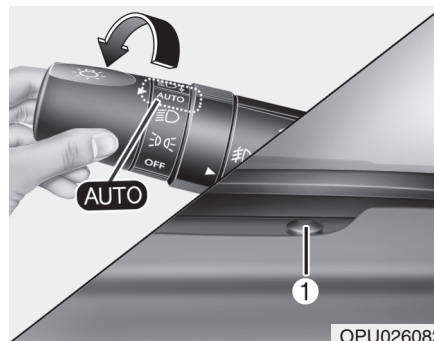
When the light switch is in the taillight position (1st position), the tail, position, license and instrument panel lights are on.

Headlight position (300)

When the light switch is in the headlight position (2nd position), the head, tail, position, license and instrument panel lights are on.

*** NOTICE**

The ignition must be in the ON position for headlights to operate.

Auto light position (if equipped)

OPU026082

When the light switch is in the AUTO light position, the taillights and headlights will turn ON or OFF automatically depending on the amount of light outside the vehicle.

High - beam operation

ORB040049D

To turn on the high beam headlamp, push the lever away from you. Pull it back for low beams.

The high beam indicator will light when the headlight high beams are switched on.

To prevent the battery from being discharged, do not leave the lights on for a prolonged time while the engine is not running.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

1

2

3

4



Flashing headlights

To flash the headlights, pull the lever towards you. It will return to the normal (low-beam) position when released. The headlight switch does not need to be on to use this flashing feature.

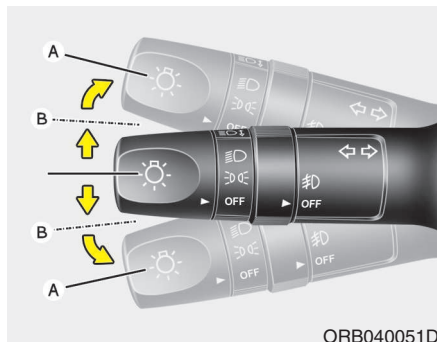
5

6

7

8

9



Turn signals

The ignition switch must be on for the turn signals to function. To turn on the turn signals, move the lever up or down (A). Green arrow indicators on the instrument panel indicate which turn signal is operating. They will self-cancel after a turn is completed.

If the indicator continues to flash after a turn, manually return the lever to the OFF position.

One Touch Triple Turn Signal (if equipped)

To signal a lane change, move the turn signal lever slightly and hold it in position (B). The lever will return to the OFF position when released.

If an indicator stays on and does not flash or if it flashes abnormally, one of the turn signal bulbs may be burned out and will require replacement.

* NOTICE

If an indicator flash is abnormally quick or slow, bulb may be burned out or have a poor electrical connection in the circuit.



ORB040052D

Front fog light (if equipped)

Fog lights are used to provide improved visibility when visibility is poor due to fog, rain or snow, etc. The fog lights will turn on when the fog light switch (1) is turned on after the parklight is turned on.

To turn off the fog lights, turn the fog light switch (1) to the OFF position.



OPU046021L

Type B



ORB040052D

Rear fog light (if equipped)

To turn the rear fog lights on, turn the headlight switch to the headlight on position and turn the rear fog light switch (1) to the on position.

The rear fog lights turn on when the rear fog light switch is turned on after the front fog light switch is turned on and the headlight switch is in the parklight position.

To turn the rear fog lights off, turn the rear fog light switch to the on position again or turn the headlight switch off.

* NOTICE

- To turn on the rear fog light switch, the ignition switch must be in the ON position.
- When in operation, the fog lights consume large amounts of vehicle electrical power. Only use the fog lights when visibility is poor or unnecessary battery and generator drain could occur.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

1

**Daytime running light
(if equipped)**

Daytime Running Lights (DRL) can make it easier for others to see the front of your vehicle during the day. DRL can be helpful in many different driving conditions, and it is especially helpful after dawn and before sunset.

The DRL system will make your low-beam headlights turn OFF when:

4

1. The head light switch is on.
2. The taillight switch is on.
3. Engine stops.

5

6

7

8

9



**Headlight leveling device
(if equipped)**

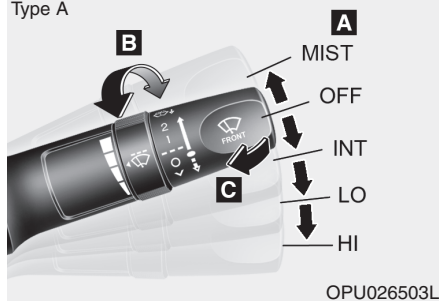
This manual system is provided to avoid obstructing oncoming drivers vision with your headlights. The headlight level can be adjusted by rotating the thumb-wheel switch in accordance with the following settings.

Switch setting:

Position	Loading on	
	Frnt. seats	Luggage
0	driver only	-
1	driver	Full load

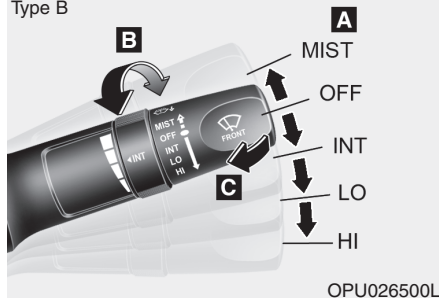
WIPERS AND WASHERS

Type A



OPU026503L

Type B



OPU026500L

Windshield wiper/washer

A : Wiper speed control

- (^ / MIST) – Single wipe
- OFF (0) – Off
- INT (---) – Intermittent wipe
- LO (1) – Low wiper speed
- HI (2) – High wiper speed

B : Intermittent wipe time adjustment

C : Wash with brief wipes (if equipped)

Operates as follows when the ignition switch is turned ON.



: For a single wiping cycle, push the lever forward and release it with the lever in the OFF (0) position. The wipers will operate continuously if the lever is pushed upward and held.

OFF (0) : Wiper is not in operation

INT (---): Wiper operates intermittently at the same wiping intervals. Use this mode in a light rain or mist.

LO (1) : Normal wiper speed

HI (2) : Fast wiper speed

* NOTICE

If there is heavy accumulation of snow or ice on the windshield, defrost the windshield for about 10 minutes, or until the snow and/or ice is removed before using the windshield wipers to ensure proper operation. If you do not remove the snow and/or ice before using the wiper and washer, it may damage the Wiper and washer system.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

Type A



OPU026504L

Type B



OPU026501L

Variable intermittent wipers (if equipped)

Set the lever to the INT (---) position and choose the desired wiper interval by turning the ring.

*** NOTICE**

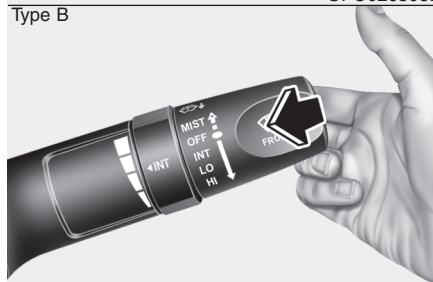
- To prevent possible damage to the wipers or windshield, do not operate the wipers when the windshield is dry.
- To prevent damage to the wiper blades, do not use gasoline, kerosene, paint thinner, or other solvents on or near them.
- To prevent damage to the wiper arms and other components, do not attempt to move the wipers manually.

Type A



OPU026505L

Type B



OPU026502L

Windshield washers

In the OFF (0) position, pull the lever gently toward you to spray washer fluid on the windshield and to run the wipers 1-3 cycles.

Use this function when the windshield is dirty.

The spray and wiper operation will continue until you release the lever.

If the washer does not work, check the washer fluid level. If the fluid level is not sufficient, you will need to add appropriate non-abrasive windshield washer fluid to the washer reservoir.

*** NOTICE**

To prevent possible damage to the washer pump, do not operate the washer when the fluid reservoir is empty.

1

2

3

4

5

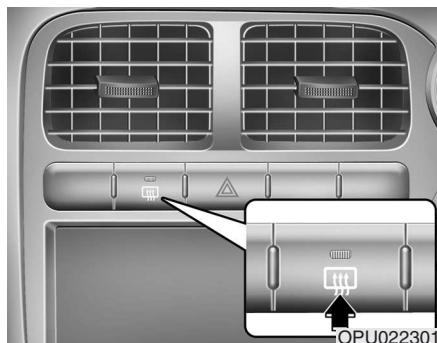
6

7

8

9

DEFROSTER - FOR MIDDLE EAST (IF EQUIPPED)



The defroster heats the window to remove frost, fog and thin ice from the interior and exterior of the rear window, while engine is running.

To activate the rear window defroster, press the rear window defroster button located in the center console switch panel. The indicator in the instrument cluster illuminates when the defroster is ON.

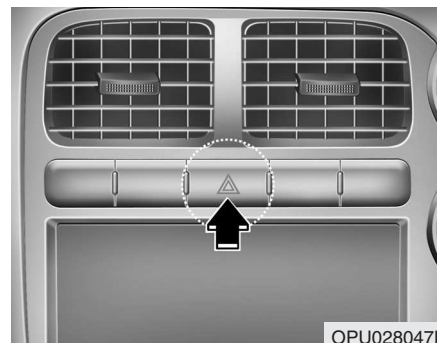
If there is heavy accumulation of snow on the rear window, brush it off before operating the rear defroster.

The rear window defroster automatically turns off after 20 minutes or when the ignition switch is turned off. To turn off the defroster, press the rear window defroster button again.

* NOTICE

- To prevent damage to the conductors bonded to the inside surface of the rear window, never use sharp instruments or window cleaners containing abrasives to clean the window.
- To prevent the battery from being discharged, operate the defroster only while the engine is running.
- If you want to defrost and defog on the front windshield, refer to “Windshield Defrosting and Defogging” in this section.

HAZARD WARNING FLASHER



The hazard warning flasher causes the rear tail lights and front turn signal lights to flash on and off, which serves as a warning to other drivers to exercise caution when approaching or passing your vehicle.

To activate the flasher, depress the hazard warning flasher switch. This switch operates in any ignition switch position.

To turn the flashers off, depress the switch again.

CLIMATE CONTROL SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

1. Mode selection knob
2. Fan speed control knob
3. Temperature control knob
4. Air intake control button
5. Air conditioning button (if equipped)

** CAUTION**

Operating the blower when the ignition switch is in the ON position could cause the battery to discharge. Operate the blower when the engine is running.

OPU026451

1

2

3

4



Fan speed control knob

Four (4) adjustable fan speeds are provided which increase as the number increases. The ignition switch must be in the ON position for fan operation.

0 - Fan off

1 - Low speed

2 - Medium speed

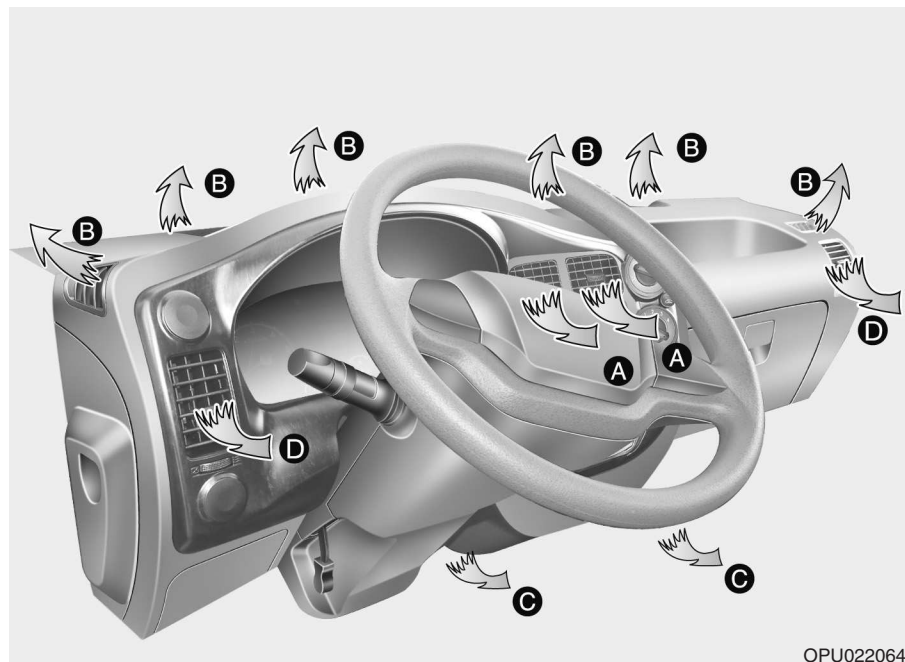
3 - High speed

4 - Maximum speed



Temperature control knob (if equipped)

The temperature control knob allows you to control the temperature of the air flowing from the ventilation system. To change the air temperature in the passenger compartment turn the knob to the right for warm and hot air or left for cooler air.



Mode selection knob

The mode selection knob controls the direction of the air flow through the ventilation system.

Face position



Air flow is directed toward the upper body and face. Additionally, each outlet can be controlled to direct the air discharged from the outlet.
(outlet port: (A), (D))

Face - floor position



Air flow is directed towards the face and the floor. The air to the floor is warmer than the air to the face (except when the temperature control is set to the extreme cold position).
(outlet port: (A), (C), (D))

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

1

Floor position



Most of the air flow is directed to the floor, with a small amount of the air being directed to the windshield and side window defroster.
(outlet port: ②, ③, ④)

2

3

Floor - defrost position



Most of the air flow is directed to the floor and the windshield with a small amount directed to the side window defrosters.
The outside (fresh) air and air conditioning will be selected automatically.
(outlet port: ②, ③, ④)

4

5

6

7

Defrost position



Most of the air flow is directed to the windshield with a small amount of air directed to the side window defrosters.
The outside (fresh) air and air conditioning will be selected automatically.
(outlet port: ②, ④)

8

9



OPU026454

Air intake control button

This is used to select outside (fresh) air position or recirculated air position.
To change the air intake control position, push the control button.

Recirculated air position



The indicator light on the button is illuminated when the recirculated air position is selected.

With the recirculated air position selected, air from passenger compartment will be drawn through the heating system and heated or cooled according to the function selected.

Outside (fresh) air position

The indicator light on the button is not illuminated when the outside (fresh) air position is selected.

With the outside (fresh) air position selected, air enters the vehicle from outside and is heated or cooled according to the function selected.

*** NOTICE**

It should be noted that prolonged operation of the heating in recirculated air position will cause fogging of the windshield and side windows and the air within the passenger compartment will become stale.

In addition, prolonged use of the air conditioning with the “recirculated air position” selected, will result in excessively dry air in the passenger compartment.

⚠ WARNING

- **Continued climate control system operation in the recirculated air position may allow humidity to increase inside vehicle which may fog the glass and obscure visibility.**
- **Do not sleep in a vehicle with air conditioning or heating system on. It may cause serious harm or death due to a drop in the oxygen level and/or body temperature.**
- **Continued climate control system operation in the recirculated air position can cause drowsiness or sleepiness, and loss of vehicle control. Set the air intake control to the outside (fresh) air position as much as possible while driving.**



OPU026453

Air conditioning button (if equipped)

Push the A/C button to turn the air conditioning system on (indicator light will illuminate). Push the button again to turn the air conditioning system off.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

System operation

Ventilation

1

1. Set the mode to the  position.

2

2. Set the air intake control to the outside (fresh) air position.

3

3. Set the temperature control to the desired position.

4

4. Set the fan speed control to the desired speed.

5

6

7

8

9

Heating

1. Set the mode to the  position.

2. Set the air intake control to the outside (fresh) air position.

3. Set the temperature control to the desired position.

4. Set the fan speed control to the desired speed.

5. If dehumidified heating is desired, turn the air conditioning system (if equipped) on.

- If cool air is desired at face level for bi-level operation, set the mode to the  position.

- If the windshield fogs up, set the mode to the  ,  position.

Air conditioning (if equipped)

All Kia Air Conditioning Systems are filled with environmentally friendly R-134a refrigerant.

1. Start the engine. Push the air conditioning button.

2. Set the mode to the  position.

3. Set the air intake control to the outside air or recirculated air position.

4. Set the temperature control knob to the desired position.

5. Set the fan speed control to the desired speed.

6. Adjust the fan speed control and temperature control to maintain maximum comfort.

- If warmer air is desired at floor level for bi-level operation, set the mode to the  position and adjust the temperature control to maintain maximum comfort.

- When maximum cooling is desired, set the temperature control to the extreme left position, set the air intake control to the recirculated air position, then set the fan speed control to the highest speed.

*** NOTICE**

- When using the air conditioning system, monitor the temperature gauge closely while driving up hills or in heavy traffic when outside temperatures are high. Air conditioning system operation may cause engine overheating. Continue to use the blower fan but turn the air conditioning system off if the temperature gauge indicates engine overheating.
- When opening the windows in humid weather air conditioning may create water droplets inside the vehicle. Since excessive water droplets may cause to damage to electrical equipment, air conditioning should only be run with the windows closed.

Air conditioning system operation tips

- If the vehicle has been parked in direct sunlight during hot weather, open the windows for a short time to let the hot air inside the vehicle escape.
- To help reduce moisture inside of windows on rainy humid days, decrease the humidity inside the vehicle by operating the air conditioning system.
- During air conditioning system operation, you may occasionally notice a slight change in engine speed at idle as the air conditioning compressor cycles on. This is a normal system operation characteristics.
- Use the air conditioning system every month if only for a few minutes to ensure maximum system performance.
- When using the air conditioning system, you may notice clear water dripping (or even pudding) on the ground under the passenger side of the vehicle. This is a normal system operation characteristics.
- The air conditioning system includes a function that automatically turns the air conditioning compressor off if engine coolant temperature approaches an over heating level. The air conditioning compressor operation will resume once engine coolant temperature returns to the normal range. Also, the air conditioning compressor is automatically turned off for a few seconds when the accelerator is fully depressed (wide open throttle).
- When operating the air conditioning system use the outside (fresh) air position.
- Operating the air conditioning system in the recirculated air position does provide maximum cooling, however, continual operation in this mode may cause the air inside the vehicle to become stale.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

1

Checking the amount of air conditioner refrigerant and compressor lubricant

When the amount of refrigerant is low, the performance of the air conditioning is reduced. Overfilling also has a bad influence on the air conditioning system.

Therefore, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.

Air conditioner refrigerant and compressor lubricant

⚠ CAUTION

Improper service may cause serious injury to the person performing the service.

For more detailed information, we recommend that you contact an authorized Kia dealer.

*** NOTICE**

When the performance of the air conditioning system is reduced it is important that the correct type and amount of oil and refrigerant is used. Otherwise, damage to the compressor and abnormal system operation may occur.

2

3

4

5

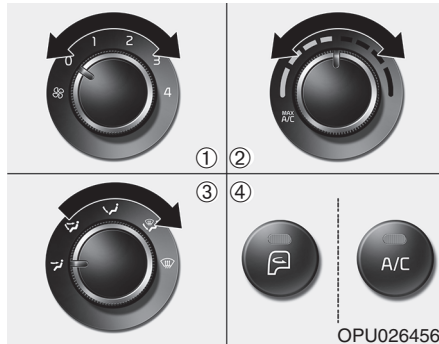
6

7

8

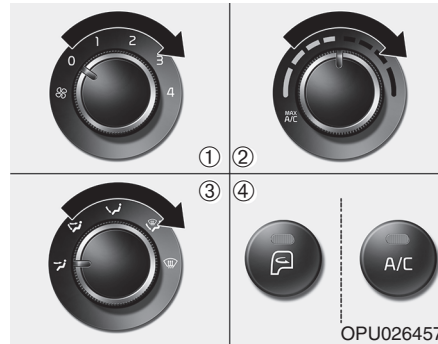
9

WINDSHIELD DEFROSTING AND DEFOGGING



To defog inside windshield

1. Select any fan speed except "0".
2. Select desired temperature.
3. Select the or position.
4. The outside (fresh) air and air conditioning will be selected.



To defrost outside windshield

1. Set the fan speed to the "3" or "4" position.
2. Set the temperature to the extreme hot position.
3. Select the position.
4. The outside (fresh) air and air conditioning will be selected.

CAUTION

Do not use the or position during cooling operation in extremely humid weather. The difference between the temperature of the outside air and that of the windshield could cause the outer surface of the windshield to fog up, causing loss of visibility. In this case, set the mode selection knob to the position and fan speed control knob to the lower speed.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

- For maximum defrosting, set the temperature control to the extreme right/hot position and the fan speed control to the highest speed.
- If warm air to the floor is desired while defrosting or defogging, set the mode to the floor-defrost position.
- Before driving, clear all snow and ice from the windshield, rear window, outside rear view mirrors, and all side windows.
- Clear all snow and ice from the hood and air inlet in the cowl grill to improve heater and defroster efficiency and to reduce the probability of fogging up inside of the windshield.

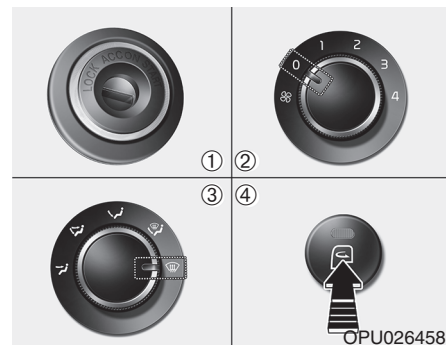
Defogging logic

To reduce the probability of fogging up the inside of the windshield, the air intake control is set to the outside (fresh) air position automatically if any of following occur.

- The mode is selected to the ,  or  while the system is activated.
- The ignition switch is turned on while the mode is selected to the  or .

In this case, the air conditioning will automatically operate if the mode is selected to the  or .

If you don't want the air-conditioning or outside (fresh) air position, press the corresponding button to cancel the operation.



How to cancel or return defogging logic of manual climate control system

1. Turn the ignition switch to the "ON" position.
2. Turn the fan speed control knob to the "0" position.
3. Turn the mode selection knob to the defrost position (.
4. Push the air intake control button () at least 5 times within 3 seconds.

Then the indicator light in the air intake control button will blink 3 times with 0.5 seconds of interval. It indicates that the defogging logic is canceled or returned to the programmed status.

If the battery has been discharged or disconnected, it is reset as the defog logic status.

1

2

3

4

5

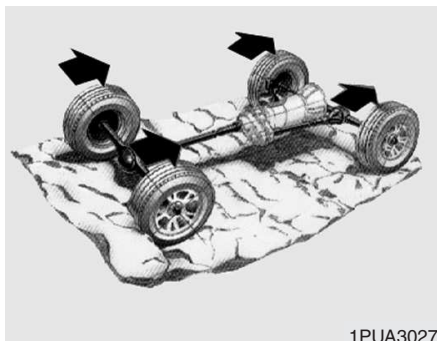
6

7

8

9

FOUR-WHEEL DRIVE (4WD) (IF EQUIPPED)



1PUA3027

You can send your engine's driving power to all front and rear wheels for maximum power.

4WD is useful when you drive in snow, mud, ice or sand where good traction is required or when your wheels lose traction or when your wheels lose traction using 2WD.

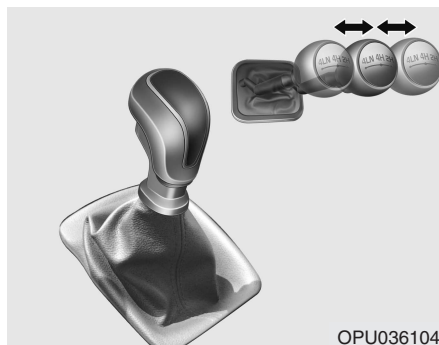
Transfer lever position

* NOTICE

- Do not select 4WD mode on flat and normal roads.
- Four-wheel driving on flat roads for a long period causes poor fuel economy and noise, and it also causes tires to wear faster.
- Four-wheel driving on flat and normal roads can result in a severe binding and chattering condition when turning the steering wheel.
- Four-wheel driving on flat roads for a long period can also cause the differential oil temperature to increase, resulting in damage to parts in the power train.
- When the vehicle shifts into 4WD mode, a slight mechanical sound and vibration may be felt and does not indicate a problem with the system.

⚠ WARNING

When shifting the transfer lever into the 4WD positions (4H and 4L), make sure the lever is fully engaged in the gear setting. Failure to fully engage the gear could allow the transfer lever to slip out of gear causing loss of power to the drive wheels. This could cause a loss of vehicle control and could possibly result in a serious accident.



This is used to set different positions.

2H (Two-wheel drive high speed)

This mode is used, when driving on normal roads and highway.

4H (Four-wheel drive high speed) : maximum speed 80km/h

This mode is used, when driving off-roads, wet or snow covered roads with normal speed.

The 4WD indicator light (**I-I**) will be turned on to remind you that you are in the 4H mode.

4L (Four-wheel drive low speed) : maximum speed 40km/h

Use 4L for climbing or descending hills, off-roads driving and towing the vehicle, especially when increased power is required.

The 4WD indicator light (**I-I**) will be turned on to remind you that you are in the 4L mode.

Transfer lever operation

■ 2H ⇄ 4H

Shift the transfer lever from the 2H mode to 4H mode (or from the 4H mode to 2H mode) at speed below 60 km/h (37 mph) and 2,500 Engine RPM.

It is not necessary to depress the clutch pedal.

CAUTION

In extremely cold weather (below -15°C, or in case of the cold engine), when shifting the transfer lever from the 2H mode to 4H mode be sure to stop your vehicle or shift the transfer lever at low speed while driving.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

■ 2H ⇔ 4L, 4H ⇔ 4L

1. Stop the vehicle.
2. Depress the clutch pedal fully and shift the transfer lever.

⚡ CAUTION

- *If the vehicle moves while the transfer shift is in process, the gearbox may be damaged.*
- *Do not over speed (above 40 km/h) in the 4L position. This may cause severe transfer damage.*

For safe four-wheel drive operation

- Your vehicle allows you to drive in on road and off-road conditions.
- However, do not try to drive in deep standing water or mud, or over steep hills.
- When you are driving up or down hills, drive as close to straight up and down the hills as possible. Use extreme caution in going up or down steep hills, since you can flip your vehicle over depending on the grade, terrain and water/mud conditions.

⚠ WARNING - Steep hills

Driving across the contour of steep hills can be extremely dangerous.

This danger can come from slight changes in the hill angle which can destabilize the vehicle. Even if the vehicle is maintaining stability under power, it can lose that stability if the vehicle may roll over without warning and without time for you to correct a mistake that could cause serious injury or death.

- You must learn how to corner in a 4WD vehicle as soon as possible. Do not rely on your experience in conventional 2WD vehicles in choosing a safe cornering speed. You must drive more slowly.
- Drive off-road carefully because your vehicle may be damaged by rocks or roots of trees. Become familiar with the off-road conditions you are going to drive before you start.

WARNING - Turning corners

Reduce speed when you turn corners. The center of gravity of 4WD vehicles is raised higher than that of conventional 2WD vehicles, making them more likely to roll over when you turn corners too fast.

CAUTION

Do not grab inside of the steering wheel when you are driving off-road.

Your arm may be hurt by a sudden steering maneuver or from steering wheel rebound due to impact with objects on the ground. This may cause you to lose steering wheel control

- Always hold the steering wheel firmly when you are driving off-road.
- Make sure all passengers are wearing seat belts.
- Do not drive in water if the level is higher than the bottom of the wheel hubs.
- Check your brake condition once you are out of mud or water. Press the brake pedal several times as you move slowly until you feel normal braking forces return.

CAUTION

If you are driving in heavy wind, the vehicle's higher center of gravity decreases your steering control capability and requires you to drive more slowly.

WARNING

If you are driving too fast in water, the water spray can get into the engine compartment and wet the ignition system, causing your vehicle to suddenly stop. If this happens and your vehicle is in a tilted position, your vehicle may roll over.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

		Emission control system / 5-2	1
		Before driving / 5-6	
		Suggestions for economical operation / 5-8	2
		Special driving conditions / 5-9	
		Trailer towing / 5-13	
		Overloading / 5-22	3
	Driving tips	Label information / 5-23	4
			5
			6
			7
			8
			9

EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM

The emission control system of your vehicle is covered by a written limited warranty. Please see the warranty information contained in the Warranty & Maintenance book in your vehicle.

Vehicle modifications

This vehicle should not be modified. Modification of your Kia could affect its performance, safety or durability and may even violate governmental safety and emissions regulations.

In addition, damage or performance problems resulting from any modification may not be covered under warranty.

- If you use unauthorized electronic devices, it may cause the vehicle to operate abnormally, wire damage, battery discharge and fire. For your safety, do not use unauthorized electronic devices.

Engine exhaust gas precautions (carbon monoxide)

WARNING

Engine exhaust gases contain carbon monoxide (CO). Though colorless and odorless, it is dangerous and could be lethal if inhaled. Follow the instructions following to avoid CO poisoning.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

- Carbon monoxide can be present with other exhaust fumes. Therefore, if you smell exhaust fumes of any kind inside your vehicle, we recommend that the system be inspected and repaired by an authorized Kia dealer. If you ever suspect exhaust fumes are coming into your vehicle, drive it only with all the windows fully open. Have your vehicle checked and repaired immediately.
- Do not operate the engine in confined or closed areas (such as garages) any more than what is necessary to move the vehicle in or out of the area.
- When the vehicle is stopped in an open area for more than a short time with the engine running, adjust the ventilation system (as needed) to draw outside air into the vehicle.
- Never sit in a parked or stopped vehicle for any extended time with the engine running.

Operating precautions for catalytic converters (if equipped)

WARNING - Fire

A hot exhaust system can ignite flammable items under your vehicle. Do not park the vehicle over or near flammable objects, such as dry grass, paper, leaves, etc.

Your vehicle is equipped with a catalytic converter emission control device.

Therefore, the following precautions must be observed:

- Use diesel only.

- Avoid driving with a very low fuel level. Running out of diesel may cause the engine to stop and result in damage to the catalytic converter.
- Do not operate the vehicle when there are signs of engine malfunction, such as misfire or a noticeable loss of performance.
- Do not misuse or abuse the engine. Examples of misuse are coasting with the ignition off and descending steep grades in gear with the ignition off.
- Do not operate the engine at high idle speed for extended periods (5 minutes or more). Avoid idling the engine for periods longer than 10 minutes.
- Do not modify or tamper with any part of the engine or emission control system. All inspections and adjustments must be made by an authorized Kia dealer.

Failure to observe these precautions could result in damage to the catalytic converter and to your vehicle. Additionally, such actions could void your warranties.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

Diesel Particulate Filter (Type A, if equipped)

1

The Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) system removes the soot emitted from the vehicle.

2

Unlike a disposable air filter, the DPF system automatically burns (oxidizes) and removes the accumulated soot according to the driving condition. In other words, the active burning by engine control system and high exhaust gas temperature caused by normal/high driving condition burns and removes the accumulated soot.

4

5

However, if the vehicle continues to be driven at low speed for long time, the accumulated soot may not be automatically removed because of low exhaust gas temperature. In this particular case, the amount of soot is out of detection limit, the soot oxidation process by engine control system may not happen and the malfunction indicator light may blink.

6

7

8

9

When the malfunction indicator light blinks, it may stop blinking by driving the vehicle at more than 60km/h (37 mph) or at more than second gear with 1500 ~ 2000 engine rpm for a certain time (for about 25 minutes).

If the malfunction indicator light continues to be blinked in spite of the procedure, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

If you continue to drive with the malfunction indicator light blinking for a long time, the DPF system can be damaged and fuel consumption can be worsen.

CAUTION - Diesel Fuel (if equipped with DPF)

It is recommended to use the regulated automotive diesel fuel for diesel vehicle equipped with the DPF system.

If you use diesel fuel including high sulfur (more than 50 ppm sulfur) and unspecified additives, it can cause the DPF system to be damaged and white smoke can be emitted.

Diesel Particulate Filter (Type B, if equipped)

The Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) system removes the soot in the exhaust gas.

Unlike a disposable air filter, the DPF system automatically burns (oxidizes) and removes the accumulated soot according to the driving condition. In other words, the active burning by engine control system and high exhaust gas temperature caused by normal/high driving condition burns and removes the accumulated soot.

However, if the vehicle continues to be driven at repeated short distance or driven at low speed for a long time, the accumulated soot may not be automatically removed because of low exhaust gas temperature. More than a certain amount of soot deposited, the malfunction indicator light (MIL) illuminates.

When the malfunction indicator light blinks, it may stop blinking by driving the vehicle at more than 60 km/h (37 mph) or at more than second gear with 1500 ~ 2500 engine rpm for a certain time (for about 25 minutes).

If the malfunction indicator light (MIL) continues to be blinked or the warning message "Check exhaust system" illuminates in spite of the procedure, please visit an authorized Kia dealer and check the DPF system.

If you continue to drive with the malfunction indicator light blinking for a long time, the DPF system can be damaged and fuel consumption can be worsen.

CAUTION - Diesel Fuel (if equipped with DPF)

It is recommended to use the regulated automotive diesel fuel for diesel vehicle equipped with the DPF system.

If you use diesel fuel including high sulfur (more than 50 ppm sulfur) and unspecified additives, it can cause the DPF system to be damaged and white smoke can be emitted.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

BEFORE DRIVING

Before entering vehicle:

- Be sure that all windows, outside mirror(s), and outside lights are clean.
- Check the condition of the tires.
- Check under the vehicle for any sign of leaks.
- Be sure there are no obstacles behind you if you intend to back up.

Necessary inspections

Fluid levels, such as engine oil, engine coolant, brake fluid, and washer fluid should be checked on a regular basis, with the exact interval depending on the fluid. Further details are provided in Section 7, Maintenance.

WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in a loss of vehicle control, that may lead to an accident, severe personal injury, and death.

The driver's primary responsibility is in the safe and legal operation of a vehicle, and use of any handheld devices, other equipment, or vehicle systems which take the driver's eyes, attention and focus away from the safe operation of a vehicle or which are not permissible by law should never be used during operation of the vehicle.

Before starting

- Close and lock all doors.
- Position the seat so that all controls are easily reached.
- Adjust the inside and outside rearview mirrors.
- Be sure that all lights work.
- Check all gauges.
- Check the operation of warning lights when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position.
- Release the parking brake and make sure the brake warning light goes out.

For safe operation, be sure you are familiar with your vehicle and its equipment.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

⚠ WARNING - Driving under the influence of alcohol or drugs

Drinking and driving is dangerous. Drunk driving is the number one contributor to the highway death toll each year. Even a small amount of alcohol will affect your reflexes, perceptions and judgement.

You are much more likely to have a serious accident if you drink and drive.

If you are drinking or taking drugs, don't drive. Do not ride with a driver who has been drinking or taking drugs. Choose a designated driver or call a cab.

Driving while under the influence of drugs is as dangerous or more dangerous than driving drunk.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

SUGGESTIONS FOR ECONOMICAL OPERATION

Your vehicle's fuel economy depends mainly on your style of driving, where you drive and when you drive.

Each of these factors affects how many kilometers (miles) you can get from a liter (gallon) of fuel. To operate your vehicle as economically as possible, use the following driving suggestions to help save money in both fuel and repairs:

- Avoid lengthy warm-up idling. Once the engine is running smoothly, begin driving. Remember, engine warm-up may take a little longer on cold days.
- Save fuel by accelerating slowly after stopping.
- Keep the engine in tune and follow the recommended periodic maintenance schedule. This will increase the life of all parts and lower your operating costs.

- Do not use the air conditioner unnecessarily.
- Slow down when driving on rough roads.
- For longer tire life and better fuel economy, always keep the tires inflated to the recommended pressures.
- Maintain a safe distance from other vehicles to avoid sudden stops. This will reduce wear on brake linings and pads. Driving in such a way will also save fuel because extra fuel is required to accelerate back to driving speed.
- Do not carry unnecessary weight in the vehicle.
- Do not rest your foot on the brake pedal while driving. This can cause needless wear, possible damage to the brakes, and poor fuel economy.
- Improper wheel alignment results in faster tire wear and lower fuel economy.

- Open windows at high speeds can reduce fuel economy.
- Fuel economy is less in crosswinds and headwinds. To help offset some of this loss, slow down when driving in these conditions.

Keeping a vehicle in good operating condition is important both for economy and safety. Therefore, we recommend that the system be serviced by an authorized Kia dealer.

WARNING - Engine off during motion

Never turn the engine off to coast down hills or anytime the vehicle is in motion. The power steering and power brakes will not function without the engine running. Instead, keep the engine on and downshift to an appropriate gear for engine braking effect.

SPECIAL DRIVING CONDITIONS

Hazardous driving conditions

When hazardous driving conditions are encountered such as water, snow, ice, mud, sand, or similar hazards, follow these suggestions:

- Drive cautiously and allow extra distance for braking.
- Avoid sudden movements in braking or steering.
- When braking, pump the brake pedal with a light up-and-down motion until the vehicle is stopped.
- If stalled in snow, mud, or sand, use second gear. Accelerate slowly to avoid spinning the drive wheels.
- Use sand, rock salt, tire chains, or other non-slip material under the drive wheels to provide traction when stalled in ice, snow, or mud.

Rocking the vehicle

If it is necessary to rock the vehicle to free it from snow, sand, or mud, first turn the steering wheel right and left to clear the area around your front wheels. Then, shift back and forth between 1 (First) and R (Reverse). Do not race the engine, and spin the wheels as little as possible. If you are still stuck after a few tries, have the vehicle pulled out by a tow vehicle to avoid engine overheating and possible damage to the transmission.

* NOTICE

Prolonged rocking may cause engine over-heating, transmission damage or failure, and tire damage.

⚠ WARNING - Spinning tires
Do not spin the wheels, especially at speeds more than 56 km/h (35 mph). Spinning the wheels at high speeds when the vehicle is stationary could cause a tire to overheat, explode and injure bystanders.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

Driving at night

Because night driving presents more hazards than driving in the daylight, here are some important tips to remember:

- Slow down and keep more distance between you and other vehicles, as it may be more difficult to see at night, especially in areas where there may not be any street lights.
- Adjust your mirrors to reduce the glare from other driver's headlights.
- Keep your headlights clean and properly aimed on vehicles not equipped with the automatic headlight aiming feature. Dirty or improperly aimed headlights will make it much more difficult to see at night.
- Avoid staring directly at the headlights of oncoming vehicles. You could be temporarily blinded, and it will take several seconds for your eyes to readjust to the darkness.

Driving in the rain

Rain and wet roads can make driving dangerous, especially if you're not prepared for the slick pavement. Here are a few things to consider when driving in the rain:

- A heavy rainfall will make it harder to see and will increase the distance needed to stop your vehicle, so slow down.
- Keep your windshield wiping equipment in good shape. Replace your windshield wiper blades when they show signs of streaking or missing areas on the windshield.
- If your tires are not in good condition, making a quick stop on wet pavement can cause a skid and possibly lead to an accident. Be sure your tires are in good shape.
- Turn on your headlights to make it easier for others to see you.
- Driving too fast through large puddles can affect your brakes. If you must go through puddles, try to drive through them slowly.
- If you believe you may have gotten your brakes wet, apply them lightly while driving until normal braking operation returns.

Driving in flooded areas

Avoid driving through flooded areas unless you are sure the water is no higher than the bottom of the wheel hub. Drive through any water slowly. Allow adequate stopping distance because brake performance may be affected. After driving through water, dry the brakes by gently applying them several times while the vehicle is moving slowly.

Driving off-road

Drive carefully off-road because your vehicle may be damaged by rocks or roots or trees. Become familiar with the off-road conditions where you are going to drive before you begin driving.

Winter driving

- We recommend that you carry emergency equipment, including tire chains, a window scraper, windshield de-icer, a bag of sand or salt, flares, a small shovel and jumper cables.
- Make sure you have sufficient ethylene-glycol coolant in the radiator.
- Check the battery condition and cables. Cold temperatures reduce the capacity of any battery, so it must be in excellent condition to provide enough winter starting power.
- Make sure the engine oil viscosity is suitable for cold weather.
- Check the ignition system for loose connections and damage.
- Use antifreeze-formulated windshield washer fluid. (Do not use engine coolant antifreeze.)
- Do not use the parking brake if it might freeze. When parking, shift to 1 (First) or R (Reverse) and block the rear wheels.

Snow tires

If you mount snow tires on your Kia, make sure they are radial tires of the same size and load range as the original tires. Mount snow tires on all four wheels to balance your vehicle's handling in all weather conditions. Keep in mind that the traction provided by snow tires on dry roads may not be as high as your vehicle's original equipment tires. You should drive cautiously even when the roads are clear. Check with the tire dealer for maximum speed recommendations.



WARNING - Snow tire size

Snow tires should be equivalent in size and type to the vehicle's standard tires. Otherwise, the safety and handling of your vehicle may be adversely affected.

Do not install studded tires without first checking local, state and municipal regulations for possible restrictions against their use.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

Tire chains

Since the sidewalls of radial tires are thinner, they can be damaged by mounting some types of snow chains on them. Therefore, the use of snow tires is recommended instead of snow chains. Do not mount tire chains on vehicles equipped with aluminum wheels, snow chains may cause damage to the wheels. If snow chains must be used, use wire-type chains with a thickness of less than 15 mm (0.59 in). Damage to your vehicle caused by improper snow chain use is not covered by your vehicle manufacturers warranty.

Install them only on the rear tires.

*** NOTICE**

- **Make sure the snow chains are the correct size and type for your tires. Incorrect snow chains can cause damage to the vehicle body and suspension and may not be covered by your vehicle manufacturer warranty. Also, the snow chain connecting hooks may be damaged from contacting vehicle components causing the snow chains to come loose from the tire. Make sure the snow chains are SAE class “S” certified.**
- **Always check chain installation for proper mounting after driving approximately 0.5 to 1 km (0.3 to 0.6 miles) to ensure safe mounting. Retighten or remount the chains if they are loose.**

Chain installation

When installing chains, follow the manufacturer's instructions and mount them as tightly as you can. Drive slowly with chains installed. If you hear the chains contacting the body or chassis, stop and tighten them. If they still make contact, slow down until it stops. Remove the chains as soon as you begin driving on cleared roads.



WARNING

- Mounting chains

When mounting snow chains, park the vehicle on level ground away from traffic. Turn on the vehicle Hazard Warning flashers and place a triangular emergency warning device behind the vehicle if available. Always apply the parking brake and turn off the engine before installing snow chains.

TRAILER TOWING - FOR EUROPE ONLY (FOR 1 TON ONLY)**⚠ WARNING - Tire chains**

- The use of chains may adversely affect vehicle handling.
- Do not exceed 30 km/h (20 mph) or the chain manufacturer's recommended speed limit, whichever is lower.
- Drive carefully and avoid bumps, holes, sharp turns, and other road hazards, which may cause the vehicle to bounce.
- Avoid sharp turns or locked-wheel braking.
- Chains that are the wrong size or improperly installed can damage your vehicle's brake lines, suspension, body and wheels.
- Stop driving and retighten the chains any time you hear them hitting the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING - Towing a trailer

If you don't use the correct equipment and drive properly, you can lose control when you pull a trailer. For example, if the trailer is too heavy, the brakes may not work well - or even at all. You and your passengers could be seriously or fatally injured. Pull a trailer only if you have followed all the steps in this section.

*** NOTICE - For Europe**

- The technically permissible maximum load on the rear axle(s) may be exceeded by not more than 15 % and the technically permissible maximum laden mass of the vehicle may be exceeded by not more than 10 % or 100 kg (220.4 lbs), whichever value is lower. In this case, do not exceed 100 km/h (62.1 mph) for vehicle of category M1 or 80 km/h (49.7 mph) for vehicle of category N1.
- When towing a trailer, the additional load imposed at the trailer coupling device may cause the rear tire maximum load ratings to be exceeded, but not by more than 15%. In such a case, do not exceed 100km/h, and the rear tire pressure should be at least 20 kPa(0.2 bar) above the tire pressure(s) as recommended for normal use (i.e. without a trailer attached).

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

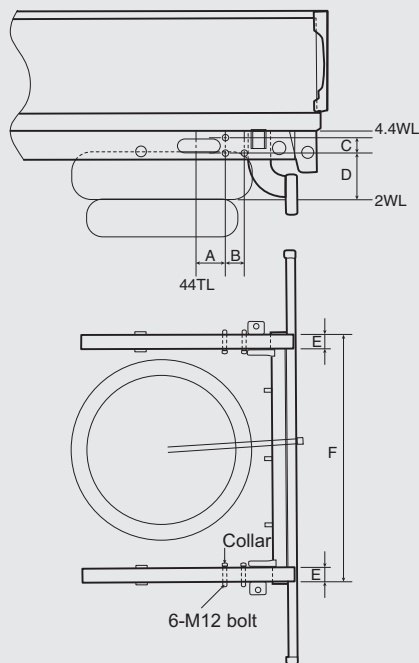
8

9

For Europe only

1 Item		Engine	2.5L Engine	2.7L Engine
2 Maximum trailer weight kg (lbs.)	Without brake System		700 (1,543)	700 (1,543)
	With brake System		1,400 (3,086)	1,400 (3,086)
4 Maximum permissible static vertical load on the coupling device kg (lbs.)			56 (124)	56 (124)

■ 2.5L/2.7L Engine



Dimensions : mm (in)

A : 165 (6.50)

B : 70 (2.76)

C : 55 (2.17)

D : 165 (6.50)

E : 50 (1.97)

F : 880 (34.65)

1PUC5001

Your vehicle can tow a trailer. To identify what the vehicle trailering capacity is for your vehicle, you should read the information in “Weight of the Trailer” that appears later in this section.

Remember that trailering is different than just driving your vehicle by itself. Trailering means changes in handling, durability, and fuel economy. Successful, safe trailering requires correct equipment, and it has to be used properly.

This section contains many time-tested, important trailering tips and safety rules. Many of these are important for your safety and that of your passengers. Please read this section carefully before you pull a trailer.

Load-pulling components such as the engine, transmission, wheel assemblies, and tires are forced to work harder against the load of the added weight. The engine is required to operate at relatively higher speeds and under greater loads. This additional burden generates extra heat. The trailer also adds considerably to wind resistance, increasing the pulling requirements.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

If you do decide to pull a trailer

Here are some important points if you decide to pull a trailer:

- Consider using a sway control. You can ask a hitch dealer about sway control.
- After your odometer indicates 800 km (500 miles) or more, you can tow a trailer. For the first 800 km (500 miles) that you tow a trailer, don't drive over 80 km/h (50 mph) and don't make starts at full throttle. This helps your engine and other parts of your vehicle "wear" in at the heavier loads.
- Always drive your vehicle at a moderate speed (less than 100 km/h).
- The important considerations have to do with weight:

Weight of the trailer

How heavy can a trailer safely be? It should never weigh more than the maximum trailer weight with trailer brakes. But even that can be too heavy.

It depends on how you plan to use your trailer. For example, speed, altitude, road grades, outside temperature and how much your vehicle is used to pull a trailer are all important. The ideal trailer weight can also depend on any special equipment that you have on your vehicle.

Weight of the trailer tongue

The tongue load of any trailer is an important weight to measure because it affects the total gross vehicle weight (GVW) of your vehicle. This weight includes the curb weight of the vehicle, any cargo you may carry in it, and the people who will be riding in the vehicle. And if you will tow a trailer, you must add the tongue load to the GVW because your vehicle will also be carrying that weight.

After you've loaded your trailer, weigh the trailer and then the tongue, separately, to see if the weights are proper. If they aren't, you may be able to correct them simply by moving some items around in the trailer.

⚠ WARNING

- **Never load a trailer with more weight in the rear than in the front. The front should be loaded with approximately 60% of the total trailer load; the rear should be loaded with approximately 40% of the total trailer load.**
- **Never exceed the maximum weight limits of the trailer or trailer towing equipment. Improper loading can result in damage to your vehicle and/or personal injury. Check weights and loading at a commercial scale or highway patrol office equipped with scales.**
- **An improperly loaded trailer can cause loss of vehicle control.**

Hitches

It's important to have the correct hitch equipment. Crosswinds, large trucks going by, and rough roads are a few reasons why you'll need the right hitch. Here are some rules to follow:

- Will you have to make any holes in the body of your vehicle when you install a trailer hitch? If you do, then be sure to seal the holes later when you remove the hitch.

If you don't seal them, deadly carbon monoxide (CO) from your exhaust can get into your vehicle, as well as dirt and water.

- The bumpers on your vehicle are not intended for hitches. Do not attach rental hitches or other bumper-type hitches to them. Use only a frame-mounted hitch that does not attach to the bumper.

Safety chains

You should always attach chains between your vehicle and your trailer. Cross the safety chains under the tongue of the trailer so that the tongue will not drop to the road if it becomes separated from the hitch.

Instructions about safety chains may be provided by the hitch manufacturer or by the trailer manufacturer. Follow the manufacturer's recommendation for attaching safety chains. Always leave just enough slack so you can turn with your trailer. And, never allow safety chains to drag on the ground.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

Trailer brakes

If your trailer weighs more than 700 kg (1,543 lbs.) loaded, then it needs its own brakes and they must be adequate. Be sure to read and follow the instructions for the trailer brakes so you'll be able to install, adjust and maintain them properly.

- Don't tap into your vehicle's brake system.

⚠ WARNING

Do not use a trailer with its own brakes unless you are absolutely certain that you have properly set up the brake system. This is not a task for amateurs. Use an experienced, competent trailer shop for this work.

Driving with a trailer

Towing a trailer requires a certain amount of experience. Before setting out for the open road, you must get to know your trailer. Acquaint yourself with the feel of handling and braking with the added weight of the trailer. And always keep in mind that the vehicle you are driving is now a good deal longer and not nearly so responsive as your vehicle is by itself.

Before you start, check the trailer hitch and platform, safety chains, electrical connector(s), lights, tires and mirror adjustment. If the trailer has electric brakes, start your vehicle and trailer moving and then apply the trailer brake controller by hand to be sure the brakes are working. This lets you check your electrical connection at the same time.

During your trip, check occasionally to be sure that the load is secure, and that the lights and any trailer brakes are still working.

Following distance

Stay at least twice as far behind the vehicle ahead as you would when driving your vehicle without a trailer. This can help you avoid situations that require heavy braking and sudden turns.

Passing

You'll need more passing distance up ahead when you're towing a trailer. And, because you're a good deal longer, you'll need to go much farther beyond the passed vehicle before you can return to your lane.

Backing up

Hold the bottom of the steering wheel with one hand. Then, to move the trailer to the left, just move your hand to the left. To move the trailer to the right, move your hand to the right. Always back up slowly and, if possible, have someone guide you.

Making turns

When you're turning with a trailer, make wider turns than normal. Do this so your trailer won't strike soft shoulders, curbs, road signs, trees, or other objects. Avoid jerky or sudden maneuvers. Signal well in advance.

Turn signals when towing a trailer

When you tow a trailer, your vehicle has to have a different turn signal flasher and extra wiring. The green arrows on your instrument panel will flash whenever you signal a turn or lane change. Properly connected, the trailer lights will also flash to alert other drivers you're about to turn, change lanes, or stop.

When towing a trailer, the green arrows on your instrument panel will flash for turns even if the bulbs on the trailer are burned out. Thus, you may think drivers behind you are seeing your signals when, in fact, they are not. It's important to check occasionally to be sure the trailer bulbs are still working. You must also check the lights every time you disconnect and then reconnect the wires.

Do not connect a trailer lighting system directly to your vehicle's lighting system. Use only an approved trailer wiring harness.

An authorized Kia dealer can assist you in installing the wiring harness.

CAUTION

Failure to use an approved trailer wiring harness could result in damage to the vehicle electrical system and/or personal injury.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

Driving on grades

Reduce speed and shift to a lower gear before you start down a long or steep downgrade. If you don't shift down, you might have to use your brakes so much that they would get hot and no longer operate efficiently.

On a long uphill grade, shift down and reduce your speed to around 70 km/h (45 mph) to reduce the possibility of engine and transmission overheating.

*** NOTICE**

- When towing a trailer on steep grades (in excess of 6%) pay close attention to the engine coolant temperature gauge to ensure the engine does not overheat. If the needle of the coolant temperature gauge moves across the dial towards "H" (HOT), pull over and stop as soon as it is safe to do so, and allow the engine to idle until it cools down. You may proceed once the engine has cooled sufficiently.
- You must decide driving speed depending on trailer weight and uphill grade to reduce the possibility of engine and transmission overheating.

Parking on hills

Generally, you should not park your vehicle, with a trailer attached, on a hill. People can be seriously or fatally injured, and both your vehicle and the trailer can be damaged if they begin a downhill trajectory.

WARNING - Parking on a hill

Parking your vehicle on a hill with a trailer attached could cause serious injury or death, should the trailer break loose.

However, if you ever have to park your trailer on a hill, here's how to do it:

1. Apply your brakes, but don't shift into gear.
2. Have someone place chocks under the trailer wheels.
3. When the wheel chocks are in place, release the brakes until the chocks absorb the load.
4. Reapply the brakes. Apply your parking brake, and then shift to R (Reverse).
5. Release the brakes.

⚠ WARNING - Parking brake
It can be dangerous to get out of your vehicle if the parking brake is not firmly set.

If you have left the engine running, the vehicle can move suddenly. You or others could be seriously or fatally injured.

When you are ready to leave after parking on a hill

1. With the manual transmission in Neutral, apply your brakes and hold the brake pedal down while you:
 - Start your engine;
 - Shift into gear; and
 - Release the parking brake.
2. Slowly remove your foot from the brake pedal.
3. Drive slowly until the trailer is clear of the chocks.
4. Stop and have someone pick up and store the chocks.

Maintenance when trailer towing

Your vehicle will need service more often when you regularly pull a trailer. Important items to pay particular attention to include engine oil, automatic transmission fluid, axle lubricant and cooling system fluid. Brake condition is another important item to frequently check. Each item is covered in this manual, and the Index will help you find them quickly. If you're trailering, it's a good idea to review these sections before you start your trip.

Don't forget to also maintain your trailer and hitch. Follow the maintenance schedule that accompanied your trailer and check it periodically. Preferably, conduct the check at the start of each day's driving. Most importantly, all hitch nuts and bolts should be tight.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

OVERLOADING

* NOTICE

- Due to higher load during trailer usage, overheating might occur in hot days or during uphill driving. If the coolant gauge indicates over-heating, switch off the A/C and stop the vehicle in a safe area to cool down the engine.
- When towing check transmission fluid more frequently.

Z CAUTION

The gross axle weight rating (GAWR) and the gross vehicle weight rating (GVWR) for your vehicle are on the manufacturer's label attached to the passenger's door. Exceeding these ratings can cause an accident or vehicle damage. You can calculate the weight of your load by weighing the items (or people) before putting them in the vehicle. Be careful not to overload your vehicle.

1

2

3

4

5

6

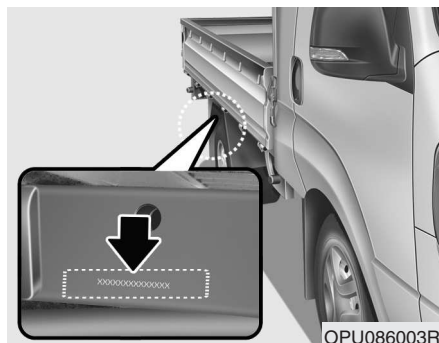
7

8

9

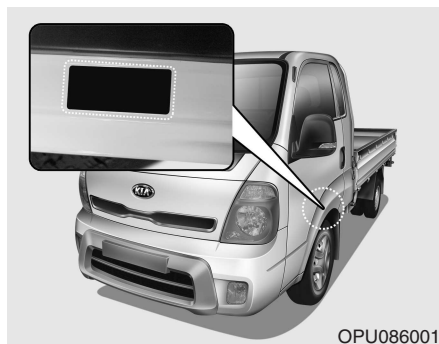
LABEL INFORMATION

There are several important labels and identification numbers located on your vehicle. The label locations are identified in the illustrations shown.



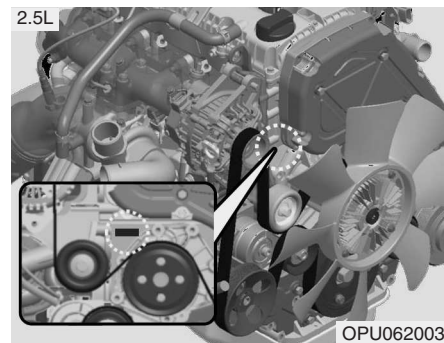
OPU086003R

Vehicle identification number (VIN)

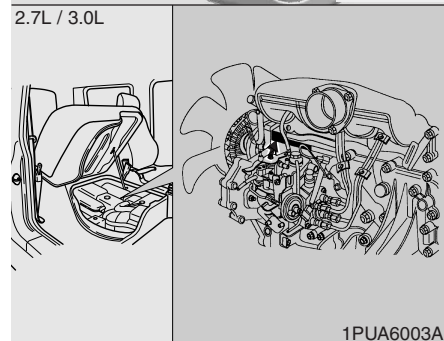


OPU086001

Identification label (if equipped)



OPU062003



1PUA6003A

Engine number

1

2

3

4

5

6

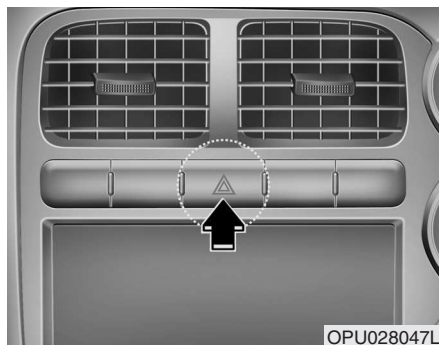
7

8

9

	Road warning / 6-2	1
	In case of an emergency while driving / 6-3	
	Overheating / 6-4	2
	Emergency starting / 6-5	
	Electrical circuit protection / 6-7	
	Towing / 6-20	3
	If you have a flat tire / 6-24	
	Emergency commodity / 6-33	4
		5
	In case of an emergency	6
		7
		8
		9

ROAD WARNING



Hazard warning flasher

The hazard warning flasher serves as a warning to other drivers to exercise extreme caution when approaching, overtaking, or passing your vehicle. It should be used whenever emergency repairs are being made or when the vehicle is stopped near the edge of a roadway.

Depress the flasher switch with the ignition switch in any position. The flasher switch is located in the center console switch panel. All turn signal lights will flash simultaneously.

- The hazard warning flasher operates whether your vehicle is running or not.
- The turn signals do not work when the hazard flasher is on.
- Care must be taken when using the hazard warning flasher while the vehicle is being towed.

IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY WHILE DRIVING

If the engine stalls at a cross-road or crossing

- If the engine stalls at a crossroad or crossing, set the shift lever in the N (Neutral) position and then push the vehicle to a safe place.
- If your vehicle has a manual transaxle not equipped with a ignition lock switch, the vehicle can move forward by shifting to the 2 (second) or 3 (third) gear and then turning the starter without depressing the clutch pedal.

If you have a flat tire while driving

If a tire goes flat while you are driving:

1. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal and let the car slow down while driving straight ahead. Do not apply the brakes immediately or attempt to pull off the road as this may cause a loss of control. When the car has slowed to such a speed that it is safe to do so, brake carefully and pull off the road.

Drive off the road as far as possible and park on firm, level ground. If you are on a divided highway, do not park in the median area between the two traffic lanes.

2. When the car is stopped, turn on your emergency hazard flashers, set the parking brake and put the transaxle in P (automatic transaxle) or reverse (manual transaxle).
3. Have all passengers get out of the car. Be sure they all get out on the side of the car that is away from traffic.
4. When changing a flat tire, follow the instruction provided later in this section.

If engine stalls while driving

1. Reduce your speed gradually, keeping a straight line. Move cautiously off the road to a safe place.
2. Turn on your emergency flashers.
3. Try to start the engine again. If your vehicle will not start, we recommend that you consult an authorized Kia dealer.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

OVERHEATING

1 If your temperature gauge indicates overheating, if you experience a loss of power, or if you hear a loud knocking or pinging noise, the engine has probably overheated. Should any of these symptoms occur, use the following procedure:

- 2 1. Turn on the hazard warning flasher, then drive to the nearest safe location and stop your vehicle; shift the manual transmission to N (Neutral) and apply the parking brake.
- 3 2. Make sure the air conditioner is off.
- 4 3. If coolant or steam is boiling out of the radiator, we recommend that you contact an authorized Kia dealer.

5 If coolant is not boiling out, allow the engine to idle and lift the seat cushions to permit the engine to cool gradually.

6 If the temperature does not go down with the engine idling, stop the engine and allow sufficient time for it to cool.

- 7 4. The coolant level should then be checked. If the level in the reservoir is low, look for leaks at the radiator hoses and connections, heater hoses and connections, radiator, and water pump. If you find a major leak or another problem that may have caused the engine to overheat, do not operate the engine until it has been corrected. Call an Authorized Kia Dealer for assistance. If you do not find a leak or other problem, carefully add coolant to the reservoir.

WARNING - Removing radiator cap

Do not remove the radiator cap when the engine and radiator are hot. Scalding hot coolant and steam may blow out under pressure. This could cause serious injury.

If overheating happens again, we recommend that you call an authorized Kia dealer.

EMERGENCY STARTING

Jump starting

Jump starting can be dangerous if done incorrectly. Therefore, to avoid harm to yourself or damage to your vehicle or battery. If in doubt, we strongly recommend that you have a competent technician or towing service jump start your vehicle.

* NOTICE

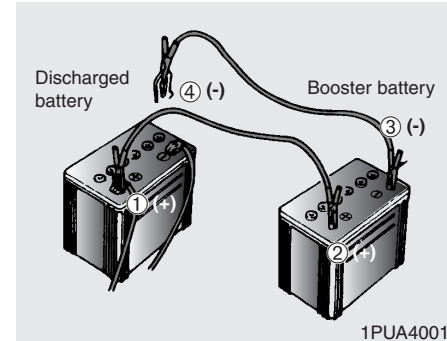
Use only a 12-volt jumper system. You can damage a 12-volt starting motor, ignition system, and other electrical parts beyond repair by use of a 24-volt power supply (either two 12-volt batteries in series or a 24-volt motor generator set).

⚠ WARNING - Battery

Never attempt to check the electrolyte level of the battery as this may cause the battery to rupture or explode causing serious injury.

⚠ WARNING - Battery

- **Keep all flames or sparks away from the battery. The battery produces hydrogen gas which may explode if exposed to flame or sparks.**
- **Do not attempt to jump start the vehicle if the discharged battery is frozen or if the electrolyte level is low; the battery may rupture or explode.**
- **Do not allow the (+) and (-) jumper cables to touch. It may cause sparks.**
- **The battery may rupture or explode when you jump start with a low or frozen battery.**



Connecting jumper cables

Connect cables in numerical order and disconnect in reverse order.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

1

Jump starting procedure

1. Make sure the booster battery is 12-volt and that its negative terminal is grounded.
2. If the booster battery is in another vehicle, do not allow the vehicles to touch.
3. Turn off all unnecessary electrical loads.
4. Connect the jumper cables in the exact sequence shown in the previous illustration. First connect one end of a jumper cable to the positive terminal of the discharged battery (①), then connect the other end to the positive terminal on the booster battery (②). Proceed to connect one end of the other jumper cable to the negative terminal of the booster battery (③), then the other end to a solid, stationary, metallic point (for example, the engine lifting bracket) away from the battery (④). Do not connect it to or near any part that moves when the engine is cranked. Do not connect the jumper cable from the negative terminal of the booster battery to the negative terminal of the discharged battery.

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

Do not allow the jumper cables to contact anything except the correct battery terminals or the correct ground. Do not lean over the battery when making connections.

5. Start the engine of the vehicle with the booster battery and let it run at 2,000 rpm, then start the engine of the vehicle with the discharged battery.

If the cause of your battery discharging is not apparent, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

Push-starting

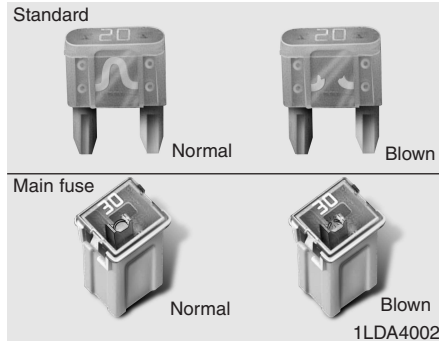
Your manual transmission-equipped vehicle should not be push-started because it might damage the emission control system.

Follow the directions in this section for jump-starting.

CAUTION

Never tow a vehicle to start it because the sudden surge forward when the engine starts could cause a collision with the tow vehicle.

ELECTRICAL CIRCUIT PROTECTION



Fuses

A vehicle's electrical system is protected from electrical overload damage by fuses.

This vehicle has two fuse panels, one located in the driver's side knee bolster, the other at frame of the driver side.

If any of your vehicle's lights, accessories, or controls do not work, check the appropriate circuit fuse. If a fuse has blown, the element inside the fuse will be melted.

If the electrical system does not work, first check the driver's side fuse panel.

Before replacing a blown fuse, disconnect the negative battery cable.

Always replace a blown fuse with one of the same rating.

If the replacement fuse blows, this indicates an electrical problem. Avoid using the system involved and we recommend that you consult an authorized Kia dealer.

Two kinds of fuses are used: standard for lower amperage rating and main for higher amperage ratings.

* NOTICE

The actual fuse/relay panel label may differ from equipped items.

Fuse replacement

⚠ WARNING - Fuse replacement

- **Never replace a fuse with anything but another fuse of the same rating.**
- **A higher capacity fuse could cause damage through overheating and possibly a fire.**
- **Never install a wire instead of the proper fuse - even as a temporary repair. It may cause extensive wiring damage and possibly a fire.**
- **Do not use a screwdriver or any other metal object to remove fuses because it may cause a short circuit and damage the system.**
- **Do not arbitrarily modify or add-on electric wiring of the vehicle.**

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

CAUTION

- When replacing a blown fuse or relay with a new one, make sure the new fuse or relay fits tightly into the clips. The incomplete fastening fuse or relay may cause the vehicle wiring and electric systems damage and a possible fire.
- Do not remove fuses, relays and terminals fastened with bolts or nuts. The fuses, relays and terminals may be fastened incompletely, and it may cause a possible fire. If fuses, relays and terminals fastened with bolts or nuts are blown, consult with an authorized Kia dealer.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- Do not plug in screwdrivers or aftermarket wiring into the terminal originally designed for fuse and relays only. The electrical system and wiring of the vehicle may be damaged or burned due to contact failure.
- When changing the fuse / relay, first turn off the engine and take out the negative (-) battery terminal.



Driver-side knee bolster

1. Turn the ignition switch and all other switches off.
2. Pull the suspected fuse straight out. Use the removal tool provided on the fuse panel.

3. Check the removed fuse; replace it if it is blown.

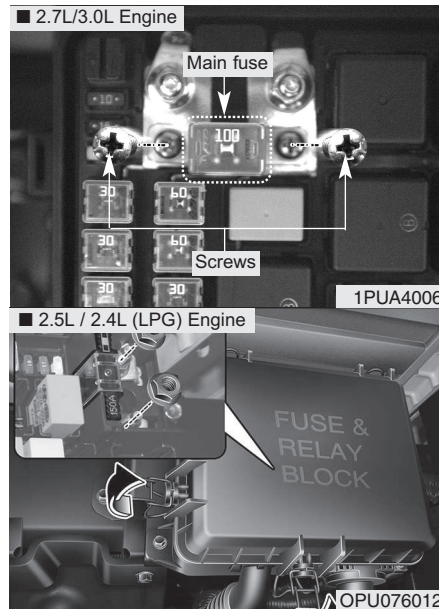
Spare fuses are provided in the fuse panel.

4. Push in a new fuse of the same rating, and make sure it fits tightly in the clips.

If it fits loosely, we recommend that you consult an authorized Kia dealer.

If you do not have a spare, use a fuse of the same rating from a circuit you may not need for operating the vehicle, such as the cigar lighter fuse.

If the headlight or other electrical components do not work and the fuses are OK, check the fuse block in the MAIN FUSE BOX. If a fuse is blown, it must be replaced.



Main fuse

If the MAIN (100A) fuse is blown, it must be removed as follows:

1. Disconnect the negative battery cable.
2. Remove the main fuse box cover.

3. Remove the screws shown in the picture above.
4. Replace the fuse with a new one of the same rating.
5. Reinstall in the reverse order of removal.

CAUTION

Visually inspect the battery cap for secure closing. If the battery cap is not securely latched, the electrical system may be damaged to due influx of moisture into the system.

* NOTICE

The main fuse box is located between front tire and rear tire on driver side.

1

2

3

4

5

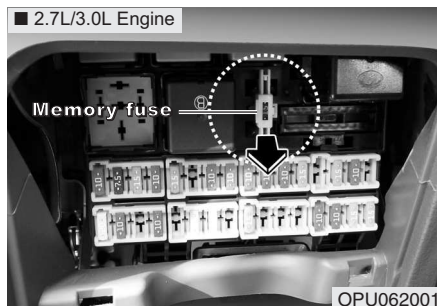
6

7

8

9

1



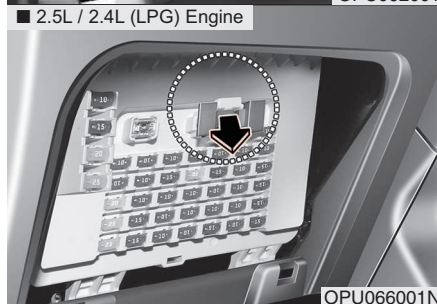
2

3

4

5

6



Memory fuse

Your vehicle is equipped with a memory fuse to prevent battery discharge if your vehicle is parked without being operated for prolonged periods. Use the following procedures before parking the vehicle for prolonged period.

1. Turn off the engine.
2. Turn off the headlights and tail lights.
3. Open the driver-side knee bolster cover and pull up the “MEMORY 15A”.

* NOTICE

- If the memory fuse is pulled up from the fuse panel, the warning chime, audio, clock and interior lamps, etc., will not operate. Some items must be reset after replacement.
- Even though the memory fuse is pulled up, the battery can still be discharged by operation of the headlights or other electrical devices.



Fuse panel description

Driver-side knee bolster

Inside the fuse box covers, you can find the fuse label describing fuse name and capacity.

Not all fuse panel descriptions in this manual may be applicable to your vehicle. It is accurate at the time of printing. When you inspect the fuse panel in your vehicle, refer to the fuse panel label.

The actual fuse panel label may differ from equipped items.

■ 2.7L/3.0L Engine

 LOW
  HIGH
  FLASHER
 * : OPTION.
 9 1 9 4 1 - 4 E 5 1 0

USE THE DESIGNATED FUSE AND RELAY ONLY.

USE SOLO LOS FUSIBLES ESPECIFICADOS.

استخدم الفيوز و المرحل المناسبين

	AUDIO	B/UP LAMP	IG1	MODULE	CLUSTER		2 MODULE	3 MODULE				ACC	HILL
10A	15A	10A	15A	10A	10A	10A	10A	10A	20A	10A	15A	10A	10A
	STOP LAMP		RR 0 1/2	FRT 0 1/2	LUMBAR SUPPORT			KEY ILLUMI		LH 	RH 	LH 	RH 
20A	10A	10A	10A	15A	10A	10A	15A	10A		10A	10A	15A	15A

OPU076015L

■ 2.5L Engine

Diagram of the fuse box layout. The top row contains fuses 1 to 15A. The bottom row contains fuses 1 to 15A. The fuses are arranged in a grid with labels for various components: SPARE, FRT, ACC, LUMBAR SUPPORT, AUDIO, STOP LAMP, MODULE, MODULE, and CLUSTER. The diagram also includes a legend for the fuse types: 15A, 10A, 5A, and 25A.

OPU076014L

■ 2.4L Engine (LPG)

[illegible]

OPU076013L

Driver-side knee bolster (2.5L / 2.4L (LPG) Engine)

Fuse Name	Symbol	Fuse rating	Protected Component
POWER CONNECTOR (MEMORY)	-	15A	Instrument Cluster, Heater Control Module, ETACS, Front Room Lamp, Center Room Lamp (4Door), Door Warning Switch, AUDIO FUSE
START		10A	ECM, START Relay
A/BAG IND		10A	Instrument Cluster
A/BAG		15A	SRS Control Module
B/UP LP	B/UP LAMP	10A	Back up Lamp Switch, Back up Lamp, Rear Parking Assist Buzzer, Rear Parking Assist UNIT
MODULE1	MODULE1	15A	TACHO Graph, Power Train OFF SW, W_SEP Sensor, Vehicle Speed Sensor, Alternator, Auto Light Sensor, TPMS
CLUSTER	CLUSTER	10A	ETACS, Instrument Cluster, Alternator Resister
T/SIG		10A	Hazard Switch (TURN LAMP)
A/CON1		10A	Blower Relay, Heater Control Module
A/CON2		10A	Blower Switch, Heater Control Module
FUEL HTR		10A	FUEL HTR Relay
WIPER		20A	Wiper Motor, Multifunction Switch (Wiper)
MODULE3	MODULE3	10A	Head Lamp Leveling Switch, Cluster IND(Head lamp HI), Head Lamp HI Relay
CIGAR LIGHT		15A	Cigarette Lighter
ACC	ACC	10A	Audio, ELECTRIC O/S MIRR
ABS		10A	ABS Control Module, SAS, ESC SW

Fuse Name	Symbol	Fuse rating	Protected Component
ECU1	^{E1} 	10A	ECU, PN RELAY COIL, STOP SW, AT SHIFT LEVER
DR LOCK		20A	ETACS, DOOR LATCH
STOP LAMP	STOP LAMP	10A	Stop Signal Relay, Data Link Connector
RR HTD		30A	RR HTD GLASS
RR FOG LP	^{RR} 	10A	RR FOG LP/Relay
FRT FOG LP	^{FRT} 	15A	FRT FOG LP/Relay
LUMBAR SUPPORT	LUMBAR SUPPORT	15A	Driver lumbar Support Switch
P/WDW (FR)		25A	Driver/Passenger Power Window Switch
ECU2	^{E2} 	20A	ECU (LPI)
HAZARD		15A	Hazard Switch/Relay, S/REPEATER LH/RH, TURN LP LH/RH, CLUSTER HAZARD IND
MODULE2	MODULE2	10A	Head Lamp LOW Relay
AUDIO	AUDIO	10A	Audio
TAIL LAMP(LH)	^{LH} 	10A	Heater Control Module, Audio, Instrument Cluster, Multifunction Switch, Hazard Switch, Main /Passenger Window Switch, Rear Combination Lamp LH, Head Lamp leveling Switch, AUX & USB Jack, position Lamp LH, Rear Defogger Switch, License Lamp
TAIL LAMP(RH)	^{RH} 	10A	Rear Combination Lamp RH, Position Lamp RH
H/LAMP(LH)	^{LH} 	15A	Head Lamp LH
H/LAMP(RH)	^{RH} 	15A	Head Lamp RH, Head Lamp Hi IND
O/S Mirror HTD		10A	O/S Mirror HTD

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

Driver-side knee bolster (2.7L/3.0L Engine)

Fuse Name	Symbol	Fuse rating	Protected Component
POWER CONNECTOR (MEMORY)	-	15A	Instrument Cluster, Heater Control Module, ETACS, Front Room Lamp, Center Room Lamp (4Door), Door Warning Switch
START		10A	START Relay
B/UP LP	B/UP LAMP	10A	Back up Lamp Switch, Rear Parking Assist Buzzer
IG1	IG1	15A	Vehicle Speed Sensor, ABS Control Module, Air Flow Sensor, Fuel Filter, Alternator, Glow ECU, EGR SOL, Compressor
CLUSTER	CLUSTER	10A	ETACS, Instrument Cluster, Alternator Resister
T/SIG		10A	Hazard Switch
A/CON1		10A	Blower Relay, Heater Control Module
A/CON2		10A	Blower Switch, Heater Control Module
WIPER		20A	Wiper Motor, Multifunction Switch (Wiper)
HLLD	HLLD	10A	Head Lamp Leveling Switch, Head Lamp Actuator LH/RH
CIGAR LIGHT		15A	Cigarette Lighter
ACC	ACC	10A	Audio, Electric O/S Mirror
MODULE1	MODULE1	10A	Auto light Sensor
MODULE2	MODULE2	10A	Head Lamp HI Relay, FRT FOG Relay
MODULE3	MODULE3	10A	Head Lamp LOW Relay, RR FOG LP Relay

Fuse Name	Symbol	Fuse rating	Protected Component
DR LOCK		20A	ICM Relay Box(Door Lock/Unlock Relay)
STOP LAMP	STOP LAMP	10A	Stop Signal Relay, Data Link Connector
FOG LP RR	^{RR} 	10A	FOG LP RR Relay
FOG LP FRT	^{FRT} 	15A	FOG LP FRT Relay
LUMBAR SUPPORT	LUMBAR SUPPORT	15A	Driver lumbar Support Switch
HAZARD		15A	Hazard Switch, ICM Relay Box (Hazard Relay)
KEY ILLUMI	KEY ILLUMI	10A	Door Warning Switch
AUDIO	AUDIO	10A	Audio
TAIL LAMP(LH)	^{LH} 	10A	Heater Control Module, Audio, Instrument Cluster, Multifunction Switch, Hazard Switch, Main /Passenger Window Switch, Rear Combination Lamp LH, Head Lamp leveling Switch, AUX & USB Jack, position Lamp LH, Rear Defogger Switch
TAIL LAMP(RH)	^{RH} 	10A	License Lamp, Rear Combination Lamp RH, Position Lamp RH
H/LAMP(LH)	^{LH} 	15A	Head Lamp LH
H/LAMP(RH)	^{RH} 	15A	Head Lamp RH, Instrument Cluster
O/S Mirror HTD		10A	O/S Mirror HTD

1

2

3

4

5

6

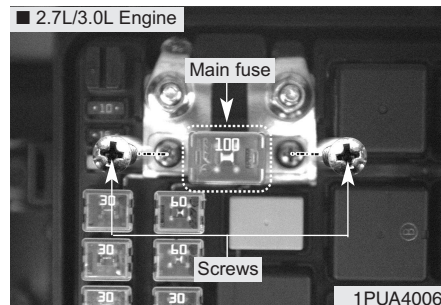
7

8

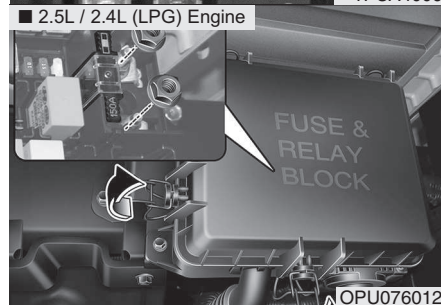
9

In case of an emergency

■ 2.7L/3.0L Engine



■ 2.5L / 2.4L (LPG) Engine

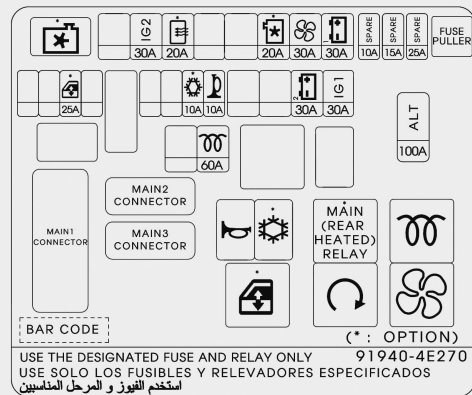


Main fuse

* NOTICE

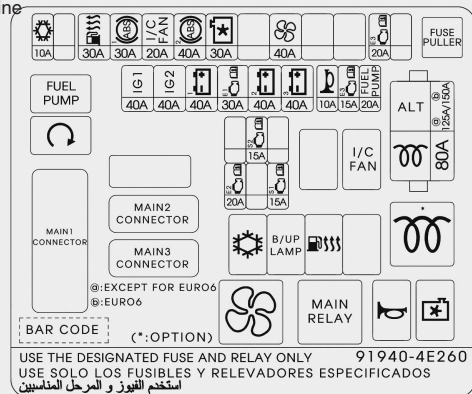
The actual fuse panel label may differ from equipped items.

■ 2.7L/3.0L Engine



OPU076017L

■ 2.5L / 2.4L (LPG) Engine



OPU076016L

Main fuse box (2.5L / 2.4L (LPG) Engine)

Description	Symbol	Fuse Name	Fuse rating	Protected Component
FUSE		A/CON	10A	A/CON RELAY, MODULE1 RLY
		FUEL HTR	30A	Fuel Filter RLY
	¹ 	ABS 1	30A	ABS CONTROL MODULE
	² 	ABS 2	40A	ABS CONTROL MODULE
		C/FAN	30A	C/FAN RELAY
		BLOWER	40A	BLOWER RLY
	^{E4} 	ECU4	20A	A2 ECU
	IG1	IG1	40A	IGNITION SW, START RELAY
	IG2	IG2	40A	IGNITION SW
	¹ 	B+1	40A	I/P JUNCTION BLOCK (RELAY - MIRROR HTD RLY, DOOR LOCK RLY, DOOR UNLOCK RLY) (FUSE - MEMORY, MIRROR HTD, STOP, LUMBAR SUPPORT, DOOR LOCK)
	^{E1} 	ECU1	30A	MAIN RELAY
	² 	B+2	40A	I/P JUNCTION BLOCK (RELAY - P/WDW RLY, TAIL LAMP RLY, FRT FOG LAMP RLY) (FUSE - P/WDW FRT, R/WDW RR, TAIL RH, TAIL LH, TCU2/ECU_LPI, FRT FOG LP)
	³ 	B+3	40A	I/P JUNCTION BLOCK(RELAY - HAZARD RLY) (FUSE - HAZARD, HEAD LP LH, HEAD LP RH)

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

Description	Symbol	Fuse Name	Fuse rating	Protected Component
FUSE		HORN	10A	HORN RELAY
		ECU3	20A	A2 ECU
		SENSOR2	15A	LAMBDA SNSR, ECB COOLING BYPASS, I/M VALVE, IMMOBILIZER, WGT_SOL, STOP RELAY COIL,CKPS, INJECTOR_FUEL
		ECU2	20A	A2 ECU,CONDENSOR, IG COIL
		SENSOR1	15A	I/C FAN RLY COIL, FUEL PUMP RLY COIL, GLOW RLY COIL, C/FAN RLY COIL, A/CON RLY COIL,A/CON RLY COIL, C/FAN RLY COIL
	ALT	MAIN	125A/150A	ALTERNATOR
		GLOW	80A	GLOW RELAY

Main fuse box (2.7L/3.0L Engine)

Description	Symbol	Fuse Name	Fuse rating	Protected Component
FUSE		A/CON	10A	A/CON RELAY
		REAR HEATED	20A	REAR HEATED RELAY
		P/WDW(FR)	25A	DRIVER/PASSENGER POWER WINDOW SWITCH
		COND	20A	C/FAN RELAY
		BLOWER	30A	BLOWER RELAY
	IG1	IG1	30A	IGNITION SWITCH, START RELAY
	IG2	IG2	30A	IGNITION SWITCH, START RELAY
	¹ 	B+1	30A	P/WIN RELAY, IP JUNCTION BOX(FUSE - KEY ILLUMI, HAZARD)
	² 	B+2	30A	IP JUNCTION BOX (RELAY - TAIL LP RELAY) (FUSE - TAIL LAMP (LH/RH), LUMBAR SUPPORT, HORN, FOG L FRT/RR, DR LOCK, STOP LAMP)
		HORN	10A	HORN RELAY
	MAIN	MAIN	100A	ALTERNATOR
		GLOW	60A	GLOW RELAY

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

TOWING

1

2

3

4

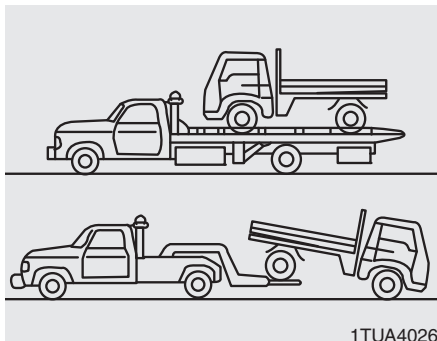
5

6

7

8

9

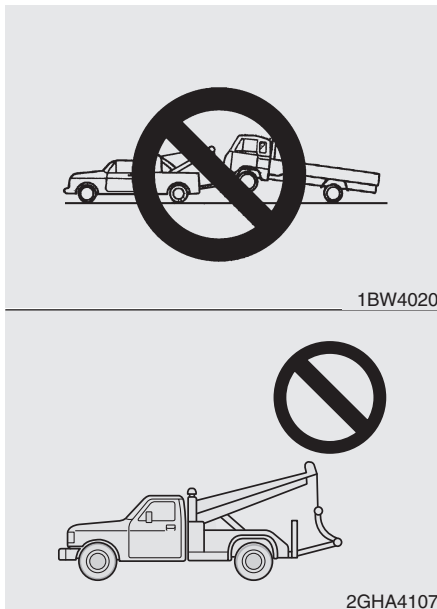


1TUA4026

If emergency towing is necessary, we recommend having it done by an authorized Kia dealer or a commercial tow-truck service. Proper lifting and towing procedures are necessary to prevent damage to the vehicle. The use of wheel dollies or flatbed is recommended.

It is acceptable to tow the vehicle with the front wheels on the ground (without dollies) and the rear wheels off the ground.

When being towed by a commercial tow truck and wheel dollies are not used, the rear of the vehicle should always be lifted, not the front.



1BW4020

2GHA4107

* NOTICE

- Do not tow the vehicle forward with the rear wheels on the ground as this may cause damage to the vehicle.
- Do not tow with sling-type equipment. Use wheel lift or flatbed equipment.

When towing your vehicle in an emergency without wheel dollies :

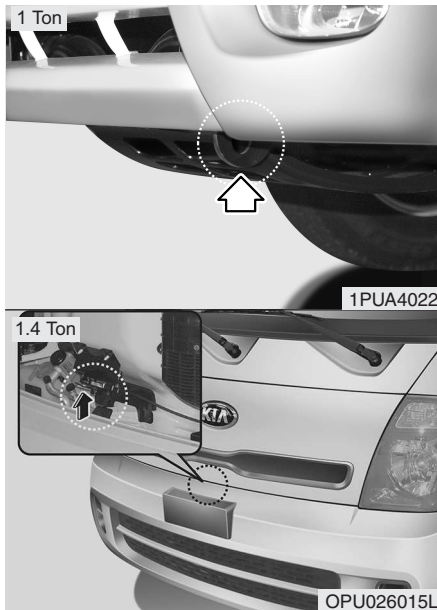
1. Set the ignition switch in the ACC position.
2. Place the transmission shift lever in N (Neutral).
3. Release the parking brake.

* NOTICE

Failure to place the transmission shift lever in N (Neutral) may cause internal damage to the transmission.

CAUTION

In case of 4WD vehicle, be sure to tow the vehicle after place transfer lever in "2H" position.



Towing with a vehicle other than a tow truck

If towing is necessary, we recommend you to have it done by an Authorized Kia dealer or a commercial tow truck service.

If towing service is not available in an emergency, your vehicle may be temporarily towed using a cable or chain secured to the emergency towing hook under the front of the vehicle. Use extreme caution when towing the vehicle. A driver must be in the vehicle to steer it and operate the brakes.

Towing in this manner may be done only on hard-surfaced roads for a short distance and at low speeds. Also, the wheels, axles, power train, steering and brakes must all be in good condition.

- Do not use the tow hooks to pull a vehicle out of mud, sand or other conditions from which the vehicle cannot be driven out under its own power.
- Avoid towing a vehicle heavier than the vehicle doing the towing.
- The drivers of both vehicles should communicate with each other frequently.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

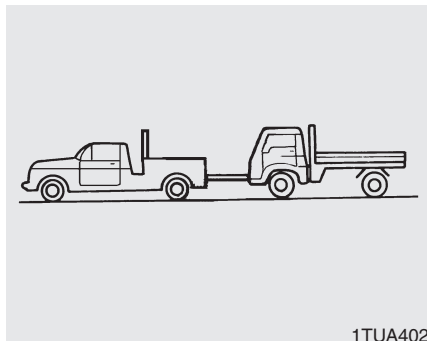
* NOTICE

- Attach a towing strap to the tow hook.
- Using a portion of the vehicle other than the tow hooks for towing may damage the body of your vehicle.
- Use only a cable or chain specifically intended for use in towing vehicles. Securely fasten the cable or chain to the towing hook provided.
- Before emergency towing, check that the hook is not broken or damaged.
- Fasten the towing cable or chain securely to the hook.
- Do not jerk the hook. Apply steady and even force.
- To avoid damaging the hook, do not pull from the side or at a vertical angle. Always pull straight ahead.

⚠ CAUTION

Use extreme caution when towing the vehicle.

- *Avoid sudden starts or erratic driving maneuvers which would place excessive stress on the emergency towing hook and towing cable or chain. The hook and towing cable or chain may break and cause serious injury or damage.*
- *If the towing vehicle can hardly move, do not forcibly continue the towing. We recommend that you contact an authorized Kia dealer.*
- *Tow the vehicle as straight ahead as possible.*
- *Keep away from the vehicle during towing.*



1TUA4029

- Use a towing strap less than 5 m (16 feet) long. Attach a white or red cloth (about 30 cm (12 inches) wide) in the middle of the strap for easy visibility.
- Drive carefully so that the towing strap is not loosened during towing.

When your vehicle is being towed by another vehicle other than a tow truck (in case of an emergency)

- Turn the ignition switch to ACC so the steering wheel isn't locked.
- Place the transmission shift lever in N (Neutral).
- Release the parking brake.

*** NOTICE**

Remove the propeller shaft if it is necessary to exceed 50km/h (31 mph) and/or 25km (16 miles). If the drive shaft cannot be removed, stop every 25km (16 miles) and start the engine. Allow the engine to idle for a few minutes. This will ensure that the transmission is sufficiently lubricated.

- Press the brake pedal with more force than normal since you will have reduced brake performance.
- More steering effort will be required because the power steering system will be disabled.
- If you are driving down a long hill, the brakes may overheat and brake performance will be reduced. Stop often and let the brakes cool off.

*** NOTICE**

To prevent internal damage to the transmission, never tow your vehicle from the rear (backwards) with all four tires in contact with the surface.

Tips for towing a stuck vehicle

The following methods are effective when your vehicle is stuck in mud, sand or similar substances that prevent the vehicle from being driven out under its own power.

- Remove the soil and sand, etc. from the front and the back of the tires.
- Place a stone or wood under the tires.

1

2

3

4

5

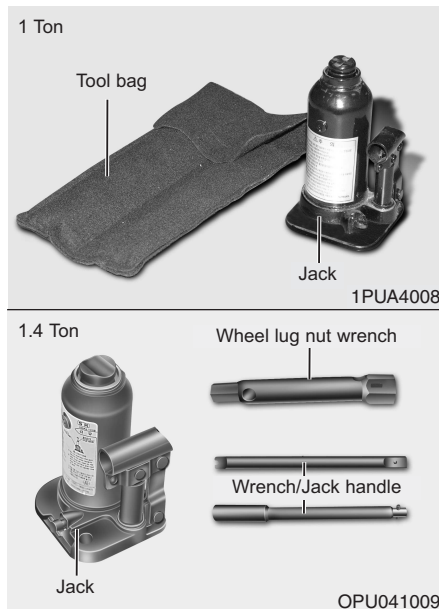
6

7

8

9

IF YOU HAVE A FLAT TIRE



Storing the jack and tools

■ For 1 Ton only

The jack is stored in the hood area and other tools are in the tool bag.

■ For 1.4 Ton only

The jack is stored in the exterior tool box area and other tools are in the tool bag.

The exterior tool box is located behind the rear tire on right side and crank lever and wrench lever is located behind front seat.



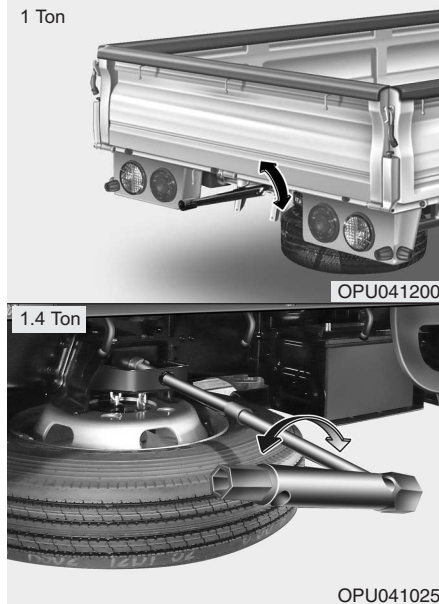
To remove the jack;

1. Pull down and unhook the rubber band.
2. Lift the jack carefully.

After using, replace the jack in the reverse order of removal.

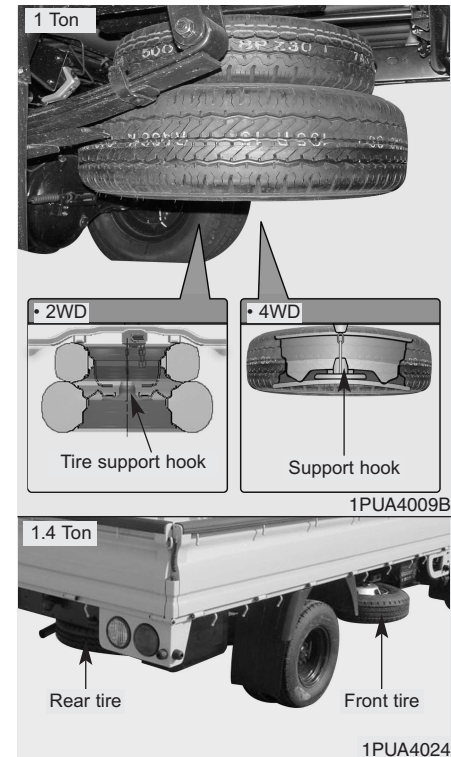
* NOTICE

Refer to exterior tool box (for 1.4 Ton only).



Removing the spare tire

1. Insert the wheel nut wrench to the spare tire carrier and insert the wrench lever to the wheel nut wrench (for 1 Ton only).
Insert the crank lever to the spare tire carrier (for 1.4 Ton only).
2. Turn the wheel nut wrench (or crank lever) counterclockwise, and the spare tire comes down.
3. Disconnect the steel wire from the tire support hook after the spare tire comes down completely.



1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

1

Reinstalling the spare tire

1. To reinstall the spare tire, build the spare tire as illustration and pull the tire support.
2. Connect the steel wire with the tire support hook.
3. Turn the wheel nut wrench (or crank lever) clockwise.

2

3

4

* NOTICE

To prevent the spare tire rattling while the vehicle is in motion, make sure it is snug and secure against the frame.

5

6

7

8

9

Changing tires

Jacking instructions

The jack is provided for emergency tire changing only.

Follow jacking instructions to reduce the possibility of personal injury.



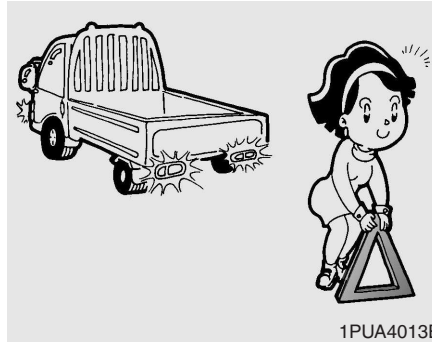
WARNING - Changing tires

- **Never attempt vehicle repairs in the traffic lanes of a public road or highway.**
- **Always move the vehicle completely off the road and onto the shoulder before trying to change a tire. The jack should be used on level firm ground. If you cannot find a firm, level place off the road, call a towing service company for assistance.**
- **Be sure to use the correct front and rear jacking positions on the vehicle; never use the bumpers or any other part of the vehicle for jacking support.**
- **The vehicle can easily roll off the jack causing serious injury or death.**
- **Do not get under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.**

(Continued)

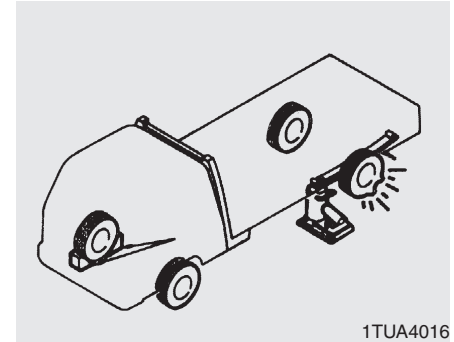
(Continued)

- Do not start or run the engine while the vehicle is on the jack.
- Do not allow anyone to remain in the vehicle while it is on the jack.
- Make sure any children present are in a secure place away from the road and from the vehicle to be raised with the jack.



Tire replacement

1. Park on a level surface and apply the parking brake firmly.
2. Shift the shift lever into R (Reverse).
3. Activate the hazard warning flasher.



4. Remove the wheel lug nut wrench, jack, jack handle, and spare tire from the vehicle.
5. Block both the front and rear of the wheel that is diagonally opposite the jack position.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

1

2

3

4

5

6

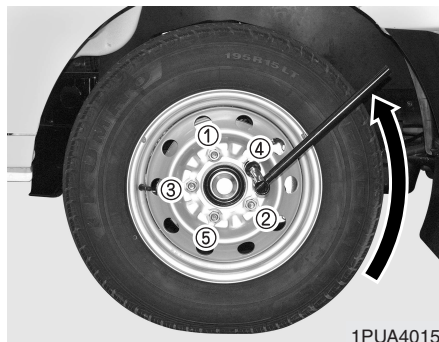
7

8

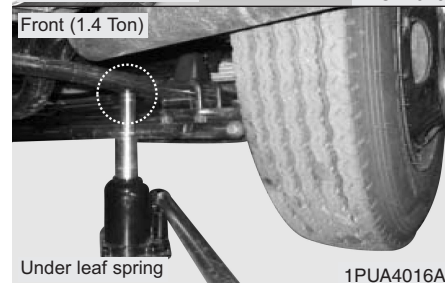
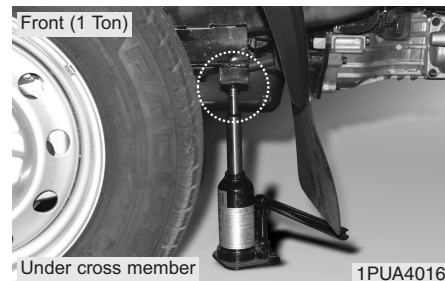
9

⚠ WARNING - Changing a tire

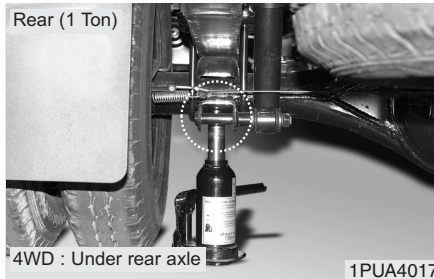
- To prevent vehicle movement while changing a tire, always set the parking brake fully, and always block the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel being changed.
- It is recommended that the wheels of the vehicle be chocked, and that no person should remain in a vehicle that is being jacked.



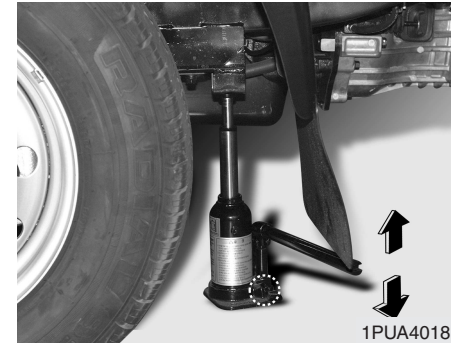
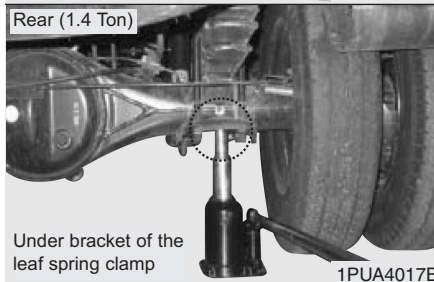
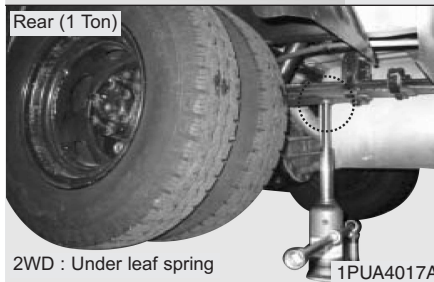
6. Insert the screwdriver into the groove of the wheel cover and pry gently to remove the wheel cover (if equipped).
7. Loosen the wheel lug nuts counterclockwise one turn each, but do not remove any nut until the tire has been raised off the ground.



8. Place the jack at the front or rear jacking position closest to the tire you are changing. Place the jack as shown in the illustration.



⚠ WARNING - Jack location
To reduce the possibility of injury, be sure to use only the jack provided with the vehicle and in the correct jack position; never use any other part of the vehicle for jack support.



9. Securely tighten the valve of the jack with the groove on the jack.
10. Move the jack handle up and down until the top of the jack contacts the proper point and takes on a slight load, raising the vehicle until the tire just clears the ground. This measurement is approximately 30 mm (1.2 in). Before removing the wheel lug nuts, make sure the vehicle is stable and that there is no chance for movement or slippage.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

CAUTION

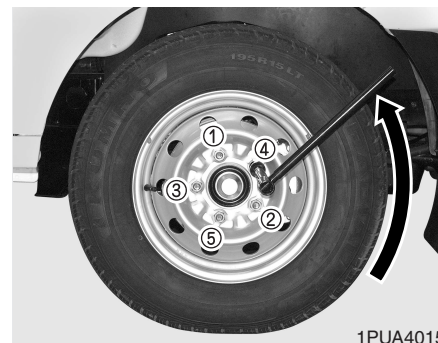
This jack is hydraulic, and the ram is a two-stage type. When both rams are raised and the “stop mark (yellow line)” of the upper ram becomes visible, stop jacking immediately.



11. Remove the wheel lug nuts by turning them counterclockwise, then remove the wheel.
12. Mount the spare tire into position and install the wheel lug nuts with the beveled edge inward.
13. Gradually loosen the valve of the jack with the groove on the jack handle to lower the vehicle.

*** NOTICE**

If the valve is loosened by turning it 2 or more times in the counterclockwise direction, the jack's oil will leak and the jack cannot be used.



14. Once the wheel lug nuts have been tightened, lower the vehicle fully to the ground and continue to tighten the lug nuts until they are fully secured. Tighten the wheel lug nuts firmly in a “*” pattern.

If you are unsure of the tightness of the wheel lug nuts, have them checked at the nearest service station. Improperly tightened wheel lug nuts could cause brake pedal vibration while braking.

Tightening torque

Engine		Body type		Front			Rear			Remark
Fuel	Displacement (Liter)			Hub nut Tightening Torque			Hub nut Tightening Torque			
				kgf.m	lbf.ft	N.m	kgf.m	lbf.ft	N.m	
Diesel	2.5	Low deck	Standard/ King Cab.	19~22	137~159	186~216	19~22	137~159	186~216	
			Double Cab.	19~22	137~159	186~216	19~22	137~159	186~216	
		High deck		19~22	137~159	186~216	19~22	137~159	186~216	
	2.7	Low deck	Standard/ King Cab.	9~12	65~87	88~118	19~22	137~159	186~216	
			Double Cab.	9~12	65~87	88~118	19~22	137~159	186~216	
		High deck		19~22	137~159	186~216	19~22	137~159	186~216	
		4WD	Standard/ King Cab.	19~22	137~159	186~216	19~22	137~159	186~216	
			Double Cab.	19~22	137~159	186~216	19~22	137~159	186~216	
	2.5 / 3.0	2WD	Standard Cab.	45~50	325~362	441~490	19~22	137~159	186~216	
				45~50	325~362	441~490	19~22	137~159	186~216	Syria
				45~50	325~362	441~490	19~22	137~159	186~216	GCC (Model:K4000G)
LPG	2.4	Low deck	King Cab.	19~22	137~159	186~216	19~22	137~159	186~216	Uzbekistan

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

⚡ CAUTION

Your vehicle has metric threads on the wheel studs and nuts. Make certain during wheel removal that the same nuts removed are reinstalled - or, if replaced, that nuts with metric threads and the same chamfer configuration are used. Installation of a non-metric thread nut on a metric stud or vice-versa will not secure the wheel to the hub properly and will damage the stud so that it must be replaced.

Note that most lug nuts do not have metric threads. Be sure to use extreme care in checking for thread style before installing aftermarket lug nuts or wheels.

If in doubt, we recommend that you consult an authorized Kia dealer.

⚠ WARNING - Wheel studs

If the studs are damaged, they may lose their ability to retain the wheel. This could lead to the loss of the wheel and a collision.

To prevent the jack, jack handle, wheel lug nut wrench and spare tire from rattling while the vehicle is in motion, store them properly.

⚠ WARNING

Check the inflation pressures as soon as possible after installing the spare tire. Adjust it to the specified pressure, if necessary. Refer to Section 8, Specifications.

EMERGENCY COMMODITY - FOR MIDDLE EAST (IF EQUIPPED)

There are some emergency commodities in the vehicle to help you respond to the emergency situation.

Fire extinguisher

The fire extinguisher is located behind the front seat (**Standard cab model**) or under the rear seat cushion (**Double cab model**).

If there is small fire and you know how to use the fire extinguisher, take the following steps carefully.

1. Pull the pin at the top of the extinguisher that keeps the handle from being accidentally pressed.
2. Aim the nozzle toward the base of the fire.
3. Stand approximately 2.5 m (8 ft) away from the fire and squeeze the handle to discharge the extinguisher. If you release the handle, the discharge will stop.
4. Sweep the nozzle back and forth at the base of the fire. After the fire appears to be out, watch it carefully since it may re-ignite.

First aid kit

There are some items such as scissors, bandage and adhesive tape and etc. in the kit to give first aid to an injured person.

Triangle reflector

Place the triangle reflector on the road to warn oncoming vehicles during emergencies, such as when the vehicle is parked by the roadside due to any problems.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

Tire pressure gauge (if equipped)

Tires normally lose some air in day-to-day use, and you may have to add a few pounds of air periodically and it is not usually a sign of a leaking tire, but of normal wear. Always check tire pressure when the tires are cold because tire pressure increases with temperature.

To check the tire pressure, take the following steps;

1. Unscrew the inflation valve cap that is located on the rim of the tire.
2. Press and hold the gauge against the tire valve. Some air will escape as you begin and more will escape if you don't press the gauge in firmly.
3. A firm non-leaking push will activate the gauge.
4. Read the tire pressure on the gauge to know whether the tire pressure is low or high.
5. Adjust the tire pressures to the specified pressure. Refer to "Recommended Inflation Pressure" on the page 8-3.
6. Reinstall the inflation valve cap.

	Maintenance services / 7-3	1
	Normal maintenance schedule / 7-5	
	Maintenance under severe usage conditions / 7-12	2
	Owner maintenance / 7-14	
	Engine compartment / 7-17	
	Engine oil and oil filter / 7-20	3
	Engine cooling system / 7-22	
	Manual transmission fluid / 7-24	
	Brakes and clutch / 7-25	4
	Parking brake / 7-26	
	Power steering / 7-27	
	Steering wheel / 7-28	5
	Lubricants and fluids / 7-29	
	Fuel filter / 7-30	6
	Air cleaner / 7-32	
	Maintenance	7
	Climate control air filter / 7-33	8
	Wiper blades / 7-34	
	Battery / 7-36	9

1	Tires and wheels / 7-39	
2	Bulb replacement / 7-46	
	Lubricant specifications / 7-52	
	Exterior care / 7-54	
	Interior care / 7-58	
3		
4		
5		
6		
7	Maintenance	
8		
9		

MAINTENANCE SERVICES

You should exercise the utmost care to prevent damage to your vehicle and injury to yourself whenever performing any maintenance or inspection procedures.

Inadequate, incomplete or insufficient servicing may result in operational problems with your vehicle that could lead to vehicle damage, an accident, or personal injury.

Owner's responsibility

* NOTICE

Maintenance Service and Record Retention are the owner's responsibility.

You should retain documents that show proper maintenance has been performed on your vehicle in accordance with the scheduled maintenance service charts shown on the following pages. You need this information to establish your compliance with the servicing and maintenance requirements of your Kia warranties.

Detailed warranty information is provided in your Warranty & Maintenance book.

Repairs and adjustments required as a result of improper maintenance or a lack of required maintenance are not covered.

We recommend you have your vehicle maintained and repaired by an authorized Kia dealer.

An authorized Kia dealer meets Kia's high service quality standards and receives technical support from Kia in order to provide you with a high level of service satisfaction.

CAUTION

- *Do not put heavy objects or apply excessive force on top of the engine cover (if equipped) or fuel related parts.*
- *When you inspect the fuel system (fuel lines and fuel injection devices), we recommend that you contact an authorized kia dealer.*
- *Do not drive long time with the engine cover (if equipped) removed.*

(Continued)

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

(Continued)

- ***When checking the engine room, do not go near fire.***

Fuel, washer fluid, etc. are flammable oils that may cause fire.

- ***Before touching the battery, ignition cables and electrical wiring, you should disconnect the battery "-" terminal. You may get an electric shock from the electric current.***

- ***When you remove the interior trim cover with a flat bed (-) driver, be careful not to damage the cover.***

- ***Be careful when you replace and clean bulbs to avoid burns or electrical shock.***

Scheduled maintenance service

Follow Normal Maintenance Schedule if the vehicle is usually operated where none of the following conditions apply. If any of the following conditions apply, follow Maintenance Under Severe Usage Conditions.

- Repeated driving short distance of less than 8 km (5 miles) in normal temperature or less than 16 km (10 miles) in freezing temperature
- Extensive engine idling or low speed driving for long distances
- Driving on rough, dusty, muddy, unpaved, graveled or salt-spread roads
- Driving in areas using salt or other corrosive materials or in very cold weather
- Driving in heavy dust condition
- Driving in heavy traffic area
- Driving on uphill, downhill, or mountain road repeatedly
- Towing a trailer or using a camper, or roof rack

- Driving as a patrol car, taxi, other commercial use of vehicle towing
- Driving over 170 km/h (106 mile/h)
- Frequently driving in stop-and-go condition

If your vehicle is operated under the above conditions, you should inspect, replace or refill more frequently than the following Normal Maintenance Schedule. After 54 month or 90,000 km (54,000 miles) continue to follow the prescribed maintenance intervals.

NORMAL MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE

MAINTENANCE ITEM		MAINTENANCE INTERVALS	Number of months or driving distance, whichever comes first										
			Months	-	6	12	18	24	30	36	42	48	54
			Miles×1,000	0.6	6	12	18	24	30	36	42	48	54
			Km×1,000	1	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80	90
Drive belts ¹	2.5L Engine					I			I			I	
	2.7L/3.0L Engine		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	
	2.4L Engine (LPG)		At first, Inspect 90,000 km (60,000 miles) or 72months after that, Inspect every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24months										
Engine oil and engine oil filter	2.5L Engine	For Europe	Replace every 15,000 km (10,000 miles) or 12 months										
		Except Europe	Replace every 10,000 km (6,200 miles) or 12 months										
	2.7L/3.0L Engine		Replace every 5,000 km (3,000 miles) or 6 months										
	2.4L Engine (LPG)		Replace every 15,000 km(10,000 miles) or 12months										
Air cleaner element		For Middle East	Replace every 5,000 km (3,000 miles) or 6 months										
		Except Middle East	Clean every 15,000 km (10,000 miles) or 12 months and replace every 45,000 km (30,000 miles) or 36 months										

I : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

R : Replace or change.

¹ : Adjust alternator and power steering (and water pump drive belt) and air conditioner drive belt (if equipped).
Inspect and if necessary correct or replace.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

NORMAL MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE (cont.)

MAINTENANCE INTERVALS MAINTENANCE ITEM		Number of months or driving distance, whichever comes first											
		Months	-	6	12	18	24	30	36	42	48	54	
		Miles×1,000	0.6	6	12	18	24	30	36	42	48	54	
		Km×1,000	1	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80	90	
Valve clearance	2.7L/3.0L				I		I		I		I		
	2.4L Engine (LPG)		Inspect every 90,000 km (60,000 miles) or 72 months										
Vapor hose and fuel filler cap	2.7L/3.0L					I			I			I	
Vacuum and crankcase ventilation hoses	2.7L/3.0L					I			I			I	
Fuel filter ^{*2}	Diesel	For Europe				I			R			I	
		Except Europe				R			R			R	
Fuel lines and hoses	Diesel		I		I		I		I		I		
Fuel injection system (with EMS parts)	Diesel				I		I		I		I		

I : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

R : Replace or change.

^{*2} : This interval depends on fuel quality. It is applicable only when using a qualified fuel, "EN 590 or equivalent".

If the diesel fuel specifications don't meet the European standards EN 590, replace it more frequently.

For details, we recommend that you consult an authorized Kia dealer.

In case of low engine power or fuel pressure decrease of the fuel filter, replace fuel filter immediately regardless of maintenance schedule.

NORMAL MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE (cont.)

MAINTENANCE INTERVALS MAINTENANCE ITEM		Number of months or driving distance, whichever comes first										
		Months	-	6	12	18	24	30	36	42	48	54
		Miles×1,000	0.6	6	12	18	24	30	36	42	48	54
		Km×1,000	1	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80	90
Spark plugs	2.4L Engine (LPG)	Replace every 100,000 km (65,000 miles)										
Cooling system		Inspect "Coolant level adjustment and leak" every day Inspect "Water pump" when replacing the drive belt or timing belt										
Engine coolant ^³	For Europe	At first, replace at 210,000 km (120,000 miles) or 10 years: after that, replace every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24 months										
	Except Europe	At first, replace at 200,000 km (120,000 miles) or 10 years: after that, replace every 40,000 km (25,000 miles) or 24 months										
Battery condition			I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
All electrical systems				I		I		I		I		
Brake lines, hoses and connections				I		I		I		I		
Brake pedal, clutch pedal			I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I

I : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

R : Replace or change.

^³ : When adding coolant, use only deionized water or soft water for your vehicle and never mix hard water in the coolant filled at the factory. An improper coolant mixture can result in serious malfunction or engine damage.

NORMAL MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE (cont.)

MAINTENANCE ITEM		MAINTENANCE INTERVALS	Number of months or driving distance, whichever comes first										
			Months	-	6	12	18	24	30	36	42	48	54
			Miles×1,000	0.6	6	12	18	24	30	36	42	48	54
			Km×1,000	1	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80	90
Parking brake				I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	
Brake/clutch fluid		For Europe			I	I	I	R	I	I	I	R	I
		Except Europe			I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Disc brakes and pads					I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Drum brakes and linings					I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Power steering fluid and hoses (if equipped)					I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Steering gear rack, linkage and boots					I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Drive shaft and boots					I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Tire (pressure & tread wear)					I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Front suspension ball joints					I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I

I : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

R : Replace or change.

NORMAL MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE (cont.)

MAINTENANCE ITEM	MAINTENANCE INTERVALS	Number of months or driving distance, whichever comes first										
		Months	-	6	12	18	24	30	36	42	48	54
		Miles×1,000	0.6	6	12	18	24	30	36	42	48	54
		Km×1,000	1	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80	90
Leaf spring U-bolt ^{*4} (if equipped)			I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	
Bolt and nuts on chassis and body			I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	
Front & rear wheel bearing play ^{*5}			I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	
Climate control air filter		Replace every 15,000 km (10,000 Miles) or 12months										
Air conditioner refrigerant (if equipped)		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I		
Air conditioner compressor (if equipped)		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I		
Manual transmission fluid								I				
Auto transmission fluid								I				
Transfer case fluid (if equipped)								I				
Front and rear differential fluid				I		R		I		R		

I : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

R : Replace or change.

^{*4} : Adjust and tighten the leaf spring U-bolt at first 1,000 km (600 miles) after replacing the leaf spring or U-bolt.

^{*5} : Add the wheel bearing grease depending on the condition.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

NORMAL MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE (LPG SYSTEM)

Every day

- ☐ Inspect LPG fuel system leak (check the gas smell)
 - 1) Vaporizer body and inlet/outlet connection
 - 2) Injector body and inlet/outlet connection
 - 3) LPG gas fuel filter body and inlet/outlet connection
 - 4) Fuel hose connection in the engine room
 - 5) Regulator unit body and feed/return connection
 - 6) Multi valve body and feed/return connection
 - 7) LPG filling inlet
 - 8) Emergency valve body and inlet/outlet connection
 - 9) Bombe assembly
 - 10) Fuel gauge
 - 11) Refuel valve body and connection
- ☐ Inspect LPG gas injector & vaporizer operation (sound check)

Every 15,000 km (10,000 miles) or 12 months

- ☐ Inspect LPG fuel system leak (check the gas smell)
 - 1) Vaporizer body and inlet/outlet connection
 - 2) Injector body and inlet/outlet connection
 - 3) LPG gas fuel filter body and inlet/outlet connection
 - 4) Fuel hose connection in the engine room
 - 5) Fuel feed and return line
 - 6) Regulator unit body and feed/return connection
 - 7) Multi valve body and feed/return connection
 - 8) LPG filling inlet
 - 9) Emergency valve body and inlet/outlet connection
 - 10) Bombe assembly
 - 11) Fuel gauge
 - 12) Refuel valve body and connection
- ☐ Inspect LPG fuel line and hose for damage, leakage
- ☐ Inspect LPG solenoid operation
- ☐ Inspect LPG gas fuel filter

※ Inspect : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

NORMAL MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE (LPG SYSTEM) (cont.)**Every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24 months**

- ☐ Replace LPG gas fuel filter
- ☐ Drain tar from the vaporizer (using drain plug)

Every 90,000 km (60,000 miles) or 72 months

- ☐ Inspect vaporizer
- ☐ Inspect LPG gas injector
- * Inspect : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

MAINTENANCE UNDER SEVERE USAGE CONDITIONS

The following items must be serviced more frequently on cars mainly used under severe driving conditions.

Refer to the chart below for the appropriate maintenance intervals.

R : Replace I : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace

Maintenance item			Maintenance operation	Maintenance intervals	Driving condition
Engine oil and engine oil filter	2.5L Engine	For Europe	R	Every 7,500 km (5,000 miles) or 6months	A, B, C, D, E F, G, H, I, J
		Execpt Europe	R	Every 5,000 km (3,000 miles) or 6 months	
	2.7L / 3.0L Engine		R	Every 3,000 km (2,000 miles) or 6 months	A, B, C, D, E F, G, H, I, J
	2.4L Engine (LPG)		R	Every 7,500 km (5,000 miles) or 6months	A, B, C, D, F, G, H, I, J
Air cleaner element			I or R	Clean every time engine oil replaces Replace every 10,000 km (6,000 miles)	C, E
Manual transmission fluid			R	Every 120,000 km (75,000 miles)	A, C, E, F, G, H, I, J
Auto transmission fluid			R	Every 90,000 km (60,000 miles)	A, C, E, F, G, H, I, J
Front and rear differential fluid			I or R	Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles)	C, F, G, H, I
Transfer case fluid (if equipped)			R	Every 120,000 km (75,000 miles)	A, C, E, F, G, H, I, J

Maintenance item	Maintenance operation	Maintenance intervals	Driving condition
Steering gear rack, linkage and boots	I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, E, F, G
Front suspension ball joints	I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, E, F, G
Disc brakes and pads, calipers and rotors	I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, E, G, H
Drum brakes and linings	I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, E, G, H
Parking brake	I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, G, H
Drive shaft and boots	I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, E, F
Dust filter	I	Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles)	C, E

Severe driving conditions

A : Repeated short distance driving

B : Extensive idling

C : Driving in dusty, rough roads

D : Driving in areas using salt or other corrosive materials or in very cold weather

E : Driving in heavy dust condition

F : Driving in heavy traffic area

G : Driving in mountainous areas

H : Towing a trailer

I : Driving for patrol car, taxi, commercial car or vehicle towing

J : Driving over 170 km/h (106 MPH)

K : Driving over 140 km/h (85 MPH)

OWNER MAINTENANCE

Owner maintenance schedule

The following lists are vehicle checks and inspections that should be performed at the frequencies indicated to help ensure safe, dependable operation of your vehicle.

Any adverse conditions should be brought to the attention of your dealer as soon as possible.

These Owner Maintenance Checks are generally not covered by warranties and you may be charged for labor, parts and lubricants used.

When you stop for fuel:

- Check the engine oil level.
- Check coolant level in coolant reservoir.

⚠ WARNING

Be careful when checking your engine coolant level when the engine is hot. Scalding hot coolant and steam may blow out under pressure. This could cause serious injury.

- Check the windshield washer fluid level.
- Look for low or under-inflated tires.

While operating your vehicle:

- Note any changes in the sound of the exhaust or any smell of exhaust fumes in the vehicle.
- Check for vibrations in the steering wheel. Notice any increased steering effort or looseness in the steering wheel, or change in its straight-ahead position.
- Notice if your vehicle constantly turns slightly or “pulls” to one side when traveling on smooth, level road.
- When stopping, listen and check for strange sounds, pulling to one side, increased brake pedal travel or “hard-to-push” brake pedal.
- If any slipping or changes in the operation of your transmission occurs, check the transmission fluid level.
- Check parking brake.
- Check for fluid leaks under your vehicle (water dripping from the air conditioning system after use is normal).

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

At least monthly:

- Check coolant level in the coolant recovery reservoir.
- Check the operation of all exterior lights, including the stoplights, turn signals and hazard warning flashers.
- Check the inflation pressures of all tires including the spare.

***At least twice a year
(i.e., every Spring and Fall) :***

- Check radiator, heater and air conditioning hoses for leaks or damage.
- Check windshield washer spray and wiper operation. Clean wiper blades with clean cloth dampened with washer fluid.
- Check headlight alignment.
- Check muffler, exhaust pipes, shields and clamps.
- Check the lap/shoulder belts for wear and function.
- Check for worn tires and loose wheel lug nuts.

At least once a year :

- Clean body and door drain holes.
- Lubricate door hinges and checks, and hood hinges.
- Lubricate door and hood locks and latches.
- Lubricate door rubber weatherstrips.
- Check the air conditioning system before the warm weather season.
- Check the power steering fluid level.
- Clean battery and terminals.
- Check the brake fluid level.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

Owner maintenance precautions

Improper or incomplete service may result in problems. This section gives instructions only for the maintenance items that are easy to perform.

* NOTICE

Improper owner maintenance during the warranty period may affect warranty coverage. For details, read the separate Kia Warranty & Maintenance book provided with the vehicle. If you're unsure about any servicing or maintenance procedure, we recommend that the system be serviced by an authorized Kia dealer.

WARNING - Maintenance work

- Performing maintenance work on a vehicle can be dangerous. You can be seriously injured while performing some maintenance procedures. If you lack sufficient knowledge and experience or the proper tools and equipment to do the work, we recommend that the system be serviced by an authorized Kia dealer.

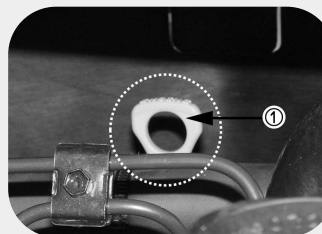
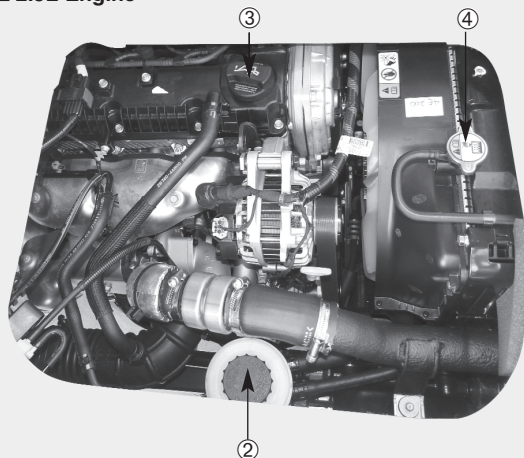
(Continued)

(Continued)

- Working in the engine room with the engine running is dangerous. It becomes even more dangerous when you wear jewelry or loose clothing. These can become entangled in moving parts and result in injury. Therefore, if you must run the engine while working in the engine room, make certain that you remove all jewelry (especially rings, bracelets, watches, and necklaces) and all neckties, scarves, and similar loose clothing before getting near the engine or cooling fans.

ENGINE COMPARTMENT

■ 2.5L Engine



Hood

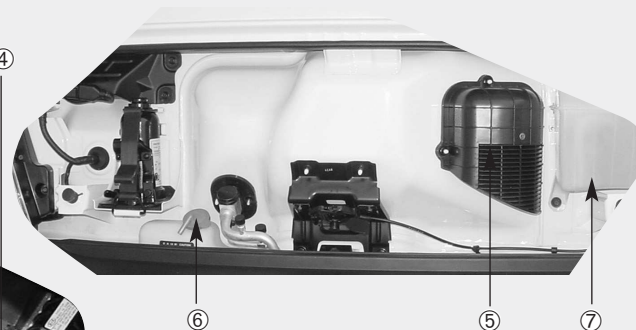
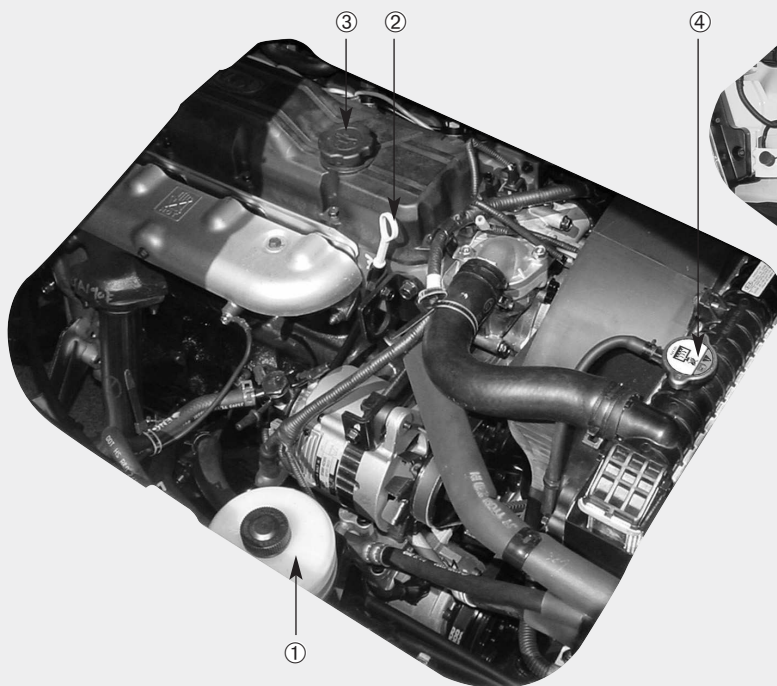


1. Engine oil dipstick
2. Power steering fluid reservoir
(if equipped)
3. Engine oil filler cap
4. Radiator cap
5. Dust filter
6. Engine coolant reservoir
7. Windshield washer fluid reservoir

* The actual engine room in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

OPU012002/1PUB7002/1PUB7003

■ 2.7L / 3.0L Engine

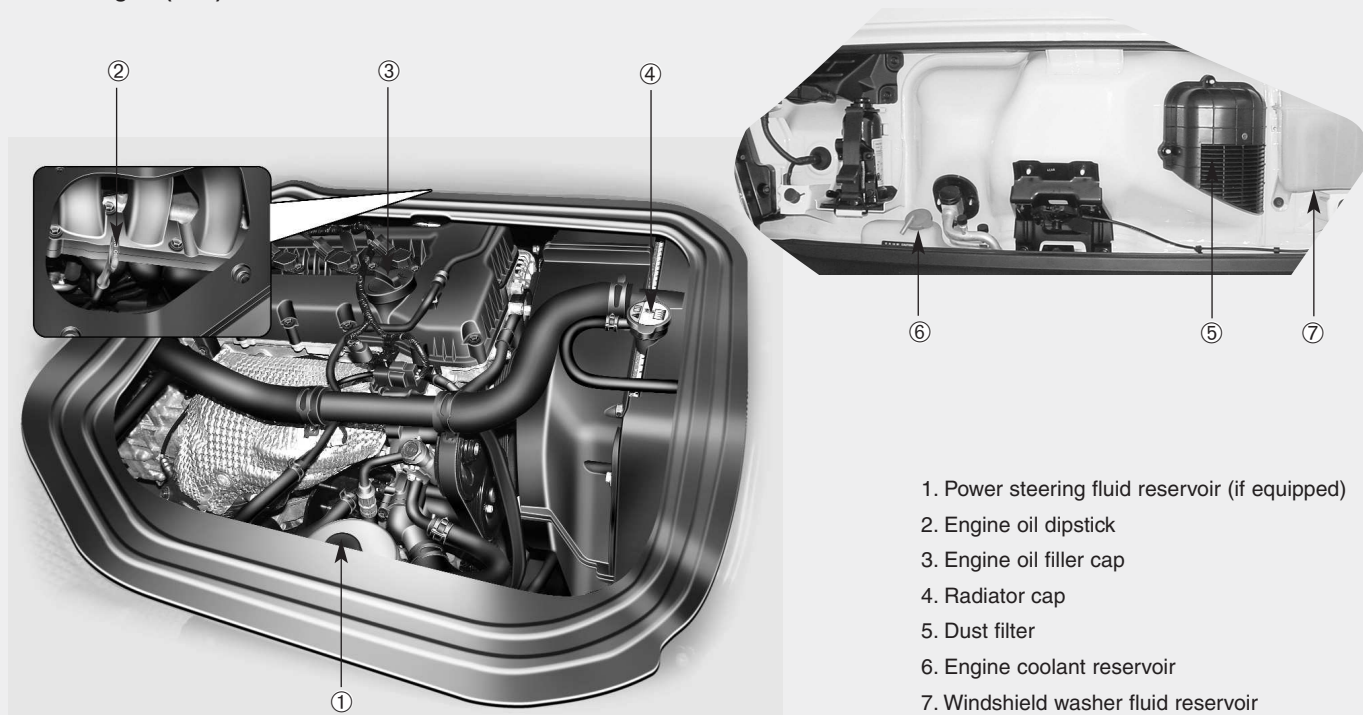


1. Power steering fluid reservoir
(if equipped)
2. Engine oil dipstick
3. Engine oil filler cap
4. Radiator cap
5. Dust filter
6. Engine coolant reservoir
7. Windshield washer fluid reservoir

* The actual engine room in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

OPUB072004/1PUB7003

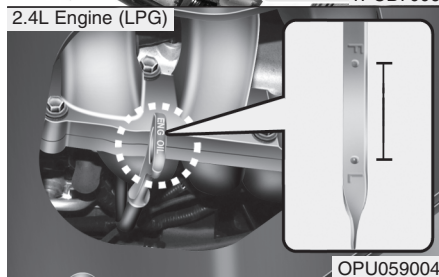
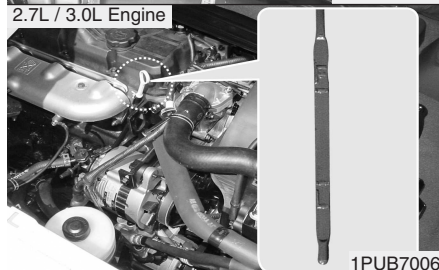
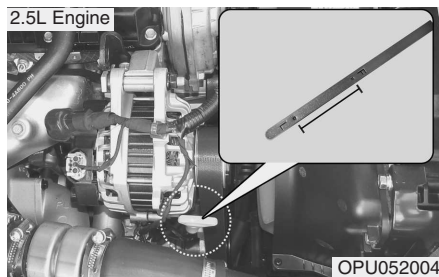
■ 2.4L Engine (LPG)



* The actual engine room in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

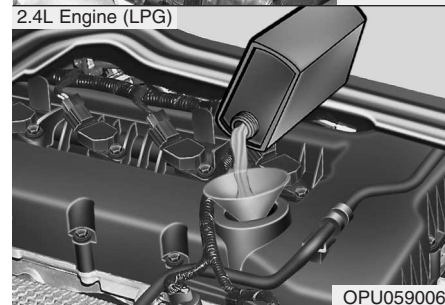
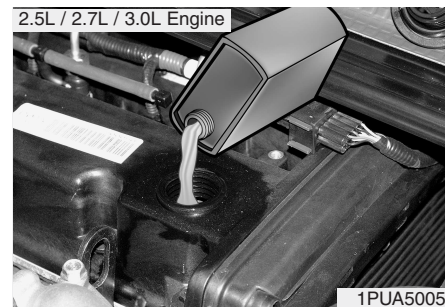
OPU012005/1PUB7003

ENGINE OIL AND OIL FILTER



Checking the engine oil level

1. Be sure the vehicle is on level ground.
2. Start the engine and allow it to reach normal operating temperature.
3. Turn the engine off and wait for a while (at least 10 minutes) for the oil to return to the oil pan.
4. Pull the dipstick out, wipe it clean, and re-insert it fully.
5. Pull the dipstick out again and check the level. The level should be between F and L.



If it is near or at L, add enough oil to bring the level to F. **Do not overfill.**

*Use only the specified engine oil.
(Refer to "Recommended Lubricants"
later in this section.)*

Changing the engine oil and filter

We recommend that the engine oil and filter be replaced by an authorized Kia dealer.

WARNING

Used engine oil may cause irritation or cancer of the skin if left in contact with the skin for prolonged periods of time. Used engine oil contains chemicals that have caused cancer in laboratory animals. Always protect your skin by washing your hands thoroughly with soap and warm water as soon as possible after handling used oil.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

ENGINE COOLING SYSTEM

The high-pressure cooling system has a reservoir filled with year-round antifreeze coolant. The reservoir is filled at the factory.

Check the antifreeze protection and coolant level at least once a year, at the beginning of the winter season, and before traveling to a colder climate.

CAUTION

- *When the engine overheats from low engine coolant, suddenly adding engine coolant may cause cracks in the engine. To prevent damage, add engine coolant slowly in small quantities.*
- *Do not drive with no engine coolant. It may cause water pump failure and engine seizure, etc.*

Checking the coolant level

WARNING



Removing radiator cap

- Never attempt to remove the radiator cap while the engine is operating or hot. Doing so might lead to cooling system and engine damage and could result in serious personal injury from escaping hot coolant or steam.
- Turn the engine off and wait until it cools down. Even then, use extreme care when removing the radiator cap. Wrap a thick towel around it, and turn it counterclockwise slowly to the first stop. Step back while the pressure is released from the cooling system. When you are sure all the pressure has been released, press down on the cap, using a thick towel, and continue turning counterclockwise to remove it.

(Continued)

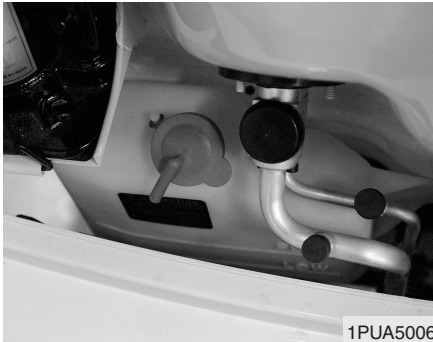
(Continued)

- Even if the engine is not operating, do not remove the radiator cap or the drain plug while the engine and radiator are hot. Hot coolant and steam may still blow out under pressure, causing serious injury.

WARNING



The electric motor (cooling fan) is controlled by engine coolant temperature, refrigerant pressure and vehicle speed. It may sometimes operate even when the engine is not running. Use extreme caution when working near the blades of the cooling fan so that you are not injured by a rotating fan blades. As the engine coolant temperature decreases, the electric motor will automatically shut off. This is a normal condition.



Check the condition and connections of all cooling system hoses and heater hoses. Replace any swollen or deteriorated hoses.

The coolant level should be filled between F and L marks on the side of the coolant reservoir when the engine is cool.

If the coolant level is low, add enough specified coolant to provide protection against freezing and corrosion. Bring the level to F, but do not overfill. If frequent additions are required, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.

Adding coolant

- When adding coolant, use only deionized water or soft water for your vehicle and never mix hard water in the coolant filled at the factory. An improper coolant mixture can result in serious malfunction or engine damage.
- The engine in your vehicle has aluminum engine parts and must be protected by an ethylene-glycol-based coolant to prevent corrosion and freezing.
- DO NOT USE alcohol or methanol coolant or mix them with the specified coolant.
- Do not use a solution that contains more than 60% antifreeze or less than 35% antifreeze, which would reduce the effectiveness of the solution.

Have coolant changed in accordance with the maintenance schedule.

1

2

3

4

5

6

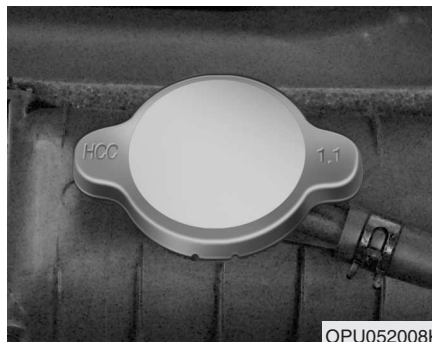
7

8

9

For mixture percentage, refer to the following table.

Ambient Temperature	Mixture Percentage (volume)	
	Coolant Solution	Water
-15°C (5°F)	35	65
-25°C (-13°F)	40	60
-35°C (-31°F)	50	50
-45°C (-49°F)	60	40



OPU052008K

MANUAL TRANSMISSION FLUID (IF EQUIPPED)

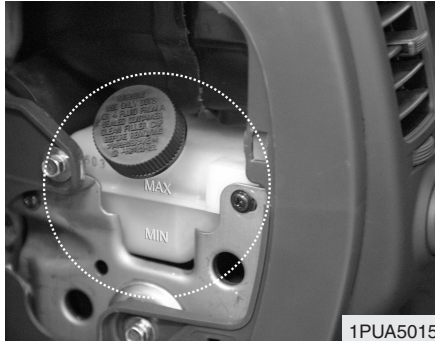
Inspect the manual transmission fluid according to the maintenance schedule.

WARNING



Do not remove the radiator cap when the engine and radiator are hot. Scalding hot coolant and steam may blow out under pressure. This could cause serious injury.

BRAKES AND CLUTCH



Checking brake/clutch fluid level

Check the fluid level in the reservoir periodically. The fluid level should be between MAX and MIN marks on the side of the reservoir. Use only hydraulic brake/clutch fluid conforming to DOT 3 or DOT 4 specification.

Before removing the reservoir cap and adding brake/clutch fluid, clean the area around the reservoir cap thoroughly to prevent brake/clutch fluid contamination.

If the level is low, add fluid to the MAX level. The level will fall with accumulated mileage. This is a normal condition associated with the wear of the brake linings. If the fluid level is excessively low, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

Use only the specified brake/clutch fluid. (Refer to "Recommended Lubricants" later in this section.)

Never mix different types of fluid.

⚠ WARNING

In the event the brake system requires frequent additions of fluid, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.

⚠ WARNING

When changing and adding brake/clutch fluid, handle it carefully. Do not let it come in contact with your eyes. If brake/clutch fluid should come in contact with your eyes, immediately flush them with a large quantity of fresh tap water. Have your eyes examined by a doctor as soon as possible.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

CAUTION

Do not allow brake/clutch fluid to contact the vehicle's body paint, as paint damage will result. Brake/clutch fluid, which has been exposed to open air for an extended time should never be used as its quality cannot be guaranteed. It should be thrown out. Don't put in the wrong kind of fluid. For example, just a few drops of mineral-based oil, such as engine oil, in your brake clutch system can damage brake clutch system parts.

PARKING BRAKE



Checking the parking brake

Check the stroke of the parking brake by counting the number of “clicks” heard while fully applying it from the released position. Also, the parking brake alone should securely hold the vehicle on a fairly steep grade. If the stroke is more or less than specified, we recommend that the system be serviced by an authorized Kia dealer.

Stroke : 5~7 “clicks” at a force of 20 kg (44 lbs, 196 N).

POWER STEERING (IF EQUIPPED)



OPU056032

Checking the power steering fluid level

With the vehicle on level ground, check the fluid level in the power steering reservoir periodically. The fluid should be between MAX and MIN marks on the side of the reservoir at the normal temperature.

Before adding power steering fluid, thoroughly clean the area around the reservoir cap to prevent power steering fluid contamination.

If the level is low, add fluid to the MAX level.

In the event the power steering system requires frequent addition of fluid, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.

* NOTICE

- To avoid damage to the power steering pump, do not operate the vehicle for prolonged periods with a low power steering fluid level.
- Never start the engine when the reservoir tank is empty.
- When adding fluid, be careful that dirt does not get into the tank.
- Too little fluid can make the steering wheel heavier or strange noise can be generated.
- The use of the non-specified fluid could reduce the effectiveness of the power steering wheel and cause damage to it.

Use only the specified power steering fluid. (Refer to "Recommended Lubricants" later in this section.)

Power steering hose

Check the connections for oil leaks, severe damage and the twists in the power steering hose before driving.

1

2

3

4

5

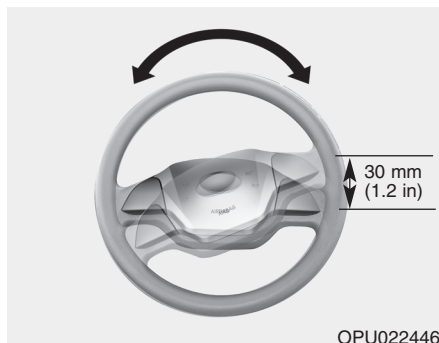
6

7

8

9

STEERING WHEEL



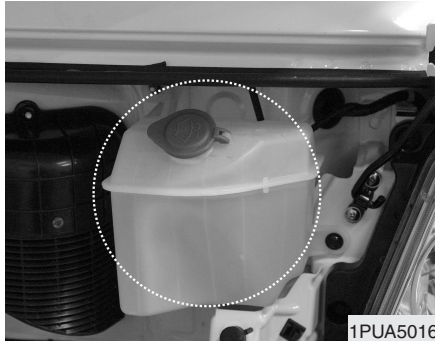
* NOTICE

If the measured value exceeds the standard value, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

Park the vehicle on level ground, start the car and place the tire wheels in the straight-ahead position. Turn the steering wheel to the left and right with a little force and check the free play until you get a feel for resistance against the tire wheels movement.

Standard value: 30 mm (1.2 in) or less

LUBRICANTS AND FLUIDS



Checking the washer fluid level

The reservoir is translucent so that you can check the level with a quick visual inspection.

Check the fluid level in the washer fluid reservoir and add fluid if necessary. Plain water may be used if washer fluid is not available. However, use washer solvent with antifreeze characteristics in cold climates to prevent freezing.

⚠ WARNING

- **Do not use radiator coolant or antifreeze in the washer fluid reservoir.**
- **Radiator coolant can severely obscure visibility when sprayed on the windshield and may cause loss of vehicle control or damage to paint and body trim.**
- **Windshield Washer fluid agents contain some amounts of alcohol and can be flammable under certain circumstances. Do not allow sparks or flame to contact the washer fluid or the washer fluid reservoir. Damage to the vehicle or it's occupants could occur.**
- **Windshield washer fluid is poisonous to humans and animals. Do not drink and avoid contacting windshield washer fluid. Serious injury or death could occur.**

Body lubrication

All moving points of the body, such as door hinges, hood hinges, and locks, should be lubricated each time the engine oil is changed. Use a non-freezing lubricant on locks during cold weather.

Make sure the engine hood secondary latch keeps the hood from opening when the primary latch is released.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

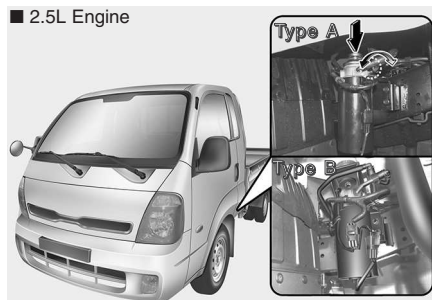
FUEL FILTER

If water accumulates in the fuel filter, the warning light comes on when the ignition key is in the "ON" position.

CAUTION

If the water accumulated in the fuel filter is not drained at proper times, damages to the major parts such as the fuel system can be caused by water permeation in the fuel filter.

■ 2.5L Engine



OPU076010N

■ 2.7L/3.0L Engine



1PUB7010

Extracting air in the fuel system

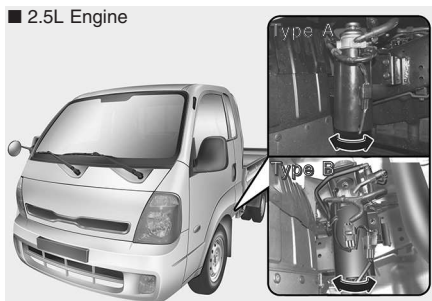
If you drove until you have no fuel left or if you replaced the fuel filter, be sure to extract air in the fuel system as it makes you difficult to start the engine.

- Remove the air extract plug on the top of the fuel filter.
- Pump up and down until the fuel flows out of the plug opening.
- Set the plug firmly into place if air has been extracted.
- The type B fuel filter of 2.5L Engine does not need extracting air from the fuel filter.

* NOTICE

- Use cloths when you extract air so that the fuel is not sprayed around.
- Clean the fuel around the fuel filter or the injection pump before starting the engine to prevent fire.
- Finally, check each part if the fuel is leaking.

■ 2.5L Engine



OPU076011N

■ 2.7L/3.0L Engine



1PUB7011

- After water is drained, securely tighten the drain plug.
- Pump the pump priming plunger and check to make sure that no fuel is leaking from the drain plug.
- After starting the engine, check to make certain the fuel filter warning light is off.

Draining water from fuel filter

- Place a water tray under the fuel filter.
- Loosen the drain plug and drain water.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

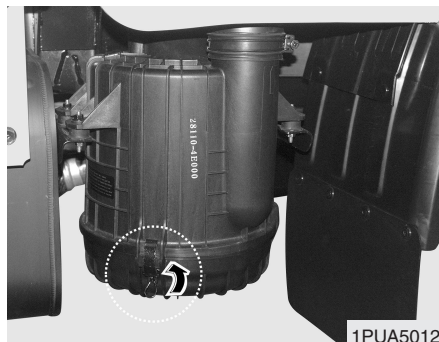
9

AIR CLEANER



Element cleaning

This element may be air cleaned or replaced, depending on its condition. Unless it is very dirty, merely shake it to remove foreign particles. Each time this filter is inspected, wipe the inside of the air cleaner housing and cover with a damp cloth. If the vehicle is operated in extremely dusty or sandy areas, clean or replace this element more often than at the usual recommended intervals.



Element replacement

A dry paper air cleaner filter is used. It must be replaced when necessary.

1. Loosen the air cleaner cover attaching clips and open the cover.
2. Wipe the inside of the air cleaner housing with a clean, damp cloth.
3. Replace the air cleaner element. We recommend that the air cleaner element be replaced with genuine Kia parts.
4. Lock the cover with the cover attaching clips.

Replace the element according to the Scheduled Maintenance Section.

If the vehicle is operated in extremely dusty or sandy areas, replace the element more often than the usual recommended intervals. (Refer to Maintenance Under Severe Usage Conditions in this section.)

CAUTION

- **Do not drive with the air cleaner removed; this will result in excessive engine wear.**
- **Driving without an air cleaner encourages backfiring, which could cause a fire in the engine compartment.**
- **When removing the air cleaner element, be careful that dust or dirt does not enter the air intake, or damage may result.**

CLIMATE CONTROL AIR FILTER



The climate control air filter installed in the entrance of the air duct filters the dust or other foreign substances that come into the vehicle from the outside through the heating and air conditioning system.

The climate control air filter should be cleaned every 15,000 km (10,000 Miles). If the vehicle is operated on dusty rough roads for a long period, it should be inspected more frequently and cleaned earlier.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

WIPER BLADES



Wiper blade maintenance

* NOTICE

Commercial hot waxes applied by automatic car washes have been known to make the windshield difficult to clean.

Contamination of either the windshield or the wiper blades with foreign matter can reduce the effectiveness of the windshield wipers. Common sources of contamination are insects, tree sap, and hot wax treatments used by some commercial car washes. If the blades are not wiping properly, clean both the window and the blades with a good cleaner or mild detergent, and rinse thoroughly with clean water.

* NOTICE

To prevent damage to the wiper blades, do not use gasoline, kerosene, paint thinner, or other solvents on or near them.

Windshield wiper blade replacement

When the wipers no longer clean adequately, the blades may be worn or cracked, and require replacement.

* NOTICE

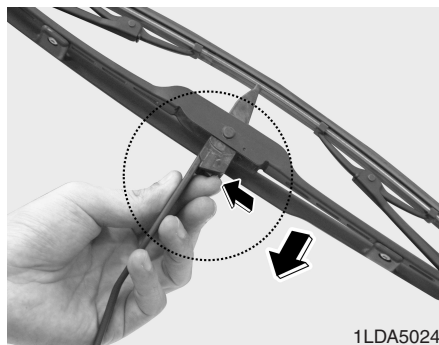
To prevent damage to the wiper arms or other components, do not attempt to move the wipers manually.

* NOTICE

The use of a non-specified wiper blade could result in wiper malfunction and failure.



1. Raise the wiper arm and turn the wiper blade assembly to expose the plastic locking clip.



2. Compress the clip and slide the blade assembly downward.



3. Lift it off the arm.
4. Install the blade assembly in the reverse order of removal.

* NOTICE

Do not allow the wiper arm to fall against the windshield.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

BATTERY

* NOTICE

Basically equipped battery is maintenance free type. If your vehicle is equipped with the battery marked with LOWER and UPPER on the side, you can check the electrolyte level. The electrolyte level should be between LOWER and UPPER. If the electrolyte level is low, it needs to add distilled (demineralized) water (Never add sulfuric acid or other electrolyte). When refill, be careful not to splash the battery and adjacent components. And do not overfill the battery cells. It can cause corrosion on other parts. After then ensure that tighten the cell caps. We recommend that you contact an authorized Kia dealer.

WARNING - Battery dangers



Always read the following instructions carefully when handling a battery.



Keep lighted cigarettes and all other flames or sparks away from the battery.

(Continued)

(Continued)



Hydrogen, which is a highly combustible gas, is always present in battery cells and may explode if ignited.



Keep batteries out of the reach of children because batteries contain highly corrosive SULFURIC ACID. Do not allow battery acid to contact your skin, eyes, clothing or paint finish.



If any electrolyte gets into your eyes, flush your eyes with clean water for at least 15 minutes and get immediate medical attention. If possible, continue to apply water with a sponge or cloth until medical attention is received. If electrolyte gets on your skin, thoroughly wash the contacted area.

(Continued)

(Continued)

If you feel a pain or a burning sensation, get medical attention immediately.



Wear eye protection when charging or working near a battery. Always provide ventilation when working in an enclosed space.



An inappropriately disposed battery can be harmful to the environment and human health. Dispose the battery according to your local law(s) or regulation.

- When lifting a plastic-cased battery, excessive pressure on the case may cause battery acid to leak, resulting in personal injury. Lift with a battery carrier or with your hands on opposite corners.

(Continued)

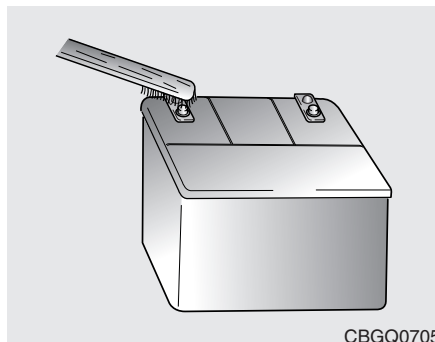
(Continued)

- Never attempt to charge the battery when the battery cables are connected.
- The electrical ignition system works with high voltage. Never touch these components with the engine running or the ignition switched on.

Failure to follow the above warnings can result in serious bodily injury or death.

CAUTION

- *When you don't use the vehicle for a long time in the low temperature area, separate the battery and keep it indoors.*
- *Always charge the battery fully to prevent battery case damage in low temperature area.*
- *If you connect unauthorized electronic devices to the battery, the battery may be discharged. Never use unauthorized devices.*



CBGQ0705

For best battery service :

- Keep the battery securely mounted.
- Keep the battery top clean and dry.
- Keep the terminals and connections clean, tight, and coated with petroleum jelly or terminal grease.
- Rinse any spilled electrolyte from the battery immediately with a solution of water and baking soda.
- If the vehicle is not going to be used for an extended time, disconnect the battery cables.

Example



OJD072039

* The actual battery label in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

Battery capacity label (see the example)

1. CMF65L-BCI : The Kia model name of battery
2. 12V : The nominal voltage
3. 60Ah(20HR) : The nominal capacity (in Ampere hours)
4. 92RC : The nominal reserve capacity (in min.)
5. 550CCA : The cold-test current in amperes by SAE
6. 440A : The cold-test current in amperes by EN

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

Battery recharging

Your vehicle has a maintenance-free, calcium-based battery.

- If the battery becomes discharged in a short time (because, for example, the headlights or interior lights were left on while the vehicle was not in use), recharge it by slow charging (trickle) for 10 hours.
- If the battery gradually discharges because of high electric load while the vehicle is being used, recharge it at 20-30A for two hours.

Items to be reset after the battery has been discharged or the battery has been disconnected.

- Clock (See section 3)
- Climate control system (See section 4)
- Audio (See section 3)

⚠ WARNING - Recharging battery

When recharging the battery, observe the following precautions:

- The battery must be removed from the vehicle and placed in an area with good ventilation.
- Do not allow cigarettes, sparks, or flame near the battery.
- Watch the battery during charging, and stop or reduce the charging rate if the battery cells begin gassing (boiling) violently or if the temperature of the electrolyte of any cell exceeds 49°C (120°F).

(Continued)

(Continued)

- Wear eye protection when checking the battery during charging.
- Disconnect the battery charger in the following order.
 1. Turn off the battery charger main switch.
 2. Unhook the negative clamp from the negative battery terminal.
 3. Unhook the positive clamp from the positive battery terminal.

*** NOTICE**

- Before performing maintenance or recharging the battery, turn off all accessories and stop the engine.
- The negative battery cable must be removed first and installed last when the battery is disconnected.

TIRES AND WHEELS

Tires care

For proper maintenance, safety, and maximum fuel economy, you must always maintain recommended tire inflation pressures and stay within the load limits and weight distribution recommended for your vehicle.

Inflation pressures

All tire pressures (including the spare) should be checked every day when the tires are cold. "Cold Tires" means the vehicle has not been driven for at least three hours or driven less than 1.6 km (1 mile).

Recommended pressures must be maintained for the best ride, top vehicle handling, and minimum tire wear.

WARNING

Severe underinflation (70 kPa (10 psi) or more) can lead to severe heat build-up, especially on hot days and when driving at high speed. This can potentially cause tread separation and other tire irregularities to appear that can result in the loss of vehicle control leading to severe injury or death.

* NOTICE

- Warm tires normally exceed recommended cold tire pressures by 28 to 41 kPa (4 to 6 psi). Do not release air from warm tires to adjust the pressure or the tires will be underinflated.
- Underinflation results in excessive wear, poor handling, reduced fuel economy, and the possibility of blowouts from overheated tires. Also, low tire pressure can cause poor sealing of the tire bead. If the tire pressure is excessively low, wheel deformation and/or tire separation is possible. So, keep your tire pressures at the proper levels. If a tire frequently needs refilling, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

(Continued)

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

(Continued)

- **Overinflation produces a harsh ride, handling problems, excessive wear at the center of the tire tread, and a greater possibility of damage from road hazards.**
- **Be sure to reinstall the tire inflation valve caps. Without the valve cap, dirt or moisture could get into the valve core and cause air leakage. If the cap have been lost, install new one as soon as possible.**

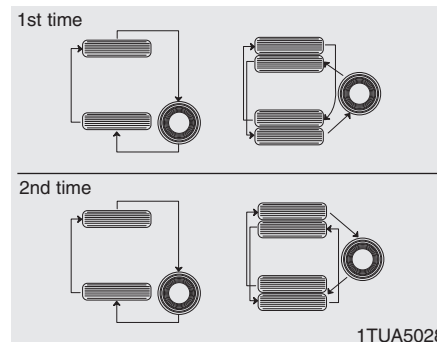
⚠ WARNING - Tire Inflation
Overinflation or underinflation can reduce tire life, adversely affect vehicle handling, and lead to sudden tire failure. This could result in loss of vehicle control.

Tire rotation

To equalize tread wear, it is recommended that the tires be rotated every 12,000 km (7,500 miles) or sooner if irregular wear develops.

During rotation, check the tires for correct balance.

When rotating tires, check for uneven wear and damage. Abnormal wear is usually caused by incorrect tire pressure, improper wheel alignment, out-of-balance wheels, severe braking or severe cornering. Look for bumps or bulges in the tread or side of tire. Replace the tire if you find either of these conditions. Replace the tire also if you can see fabric or cord. After rotation, be sure to bring the front and rear tire pressures to specification and check lug nut tightness. Refer to Section 8, Specifications.



Disc brake pads and rear brake shoes should be inspected for wear whenever tires are rotated.

* NOTICE

Rotate radial tires that have an asymmetric tread pattern only from front to rear and not from right to left.



Tire replacement

If the tire is worn evenly, a tread wear indicator will appear as a solid band across the tread. This shows there is less than 1.6 mm (1/16 inch) of tread left on the tire. Replace the tire when this happens.

Do not wait for the band to appear across the entire tread before replacing the tire.

CAUTION

When replacing the tires, recheck and tighten the wheel nuts after driving about 1,000 km(620miles). If the steering wheel shakes or the vehicle vibrates while driving, the tire is out of balance. Align the tire balance. If the problem is not solved, we recommend that you contact an authorized kia dealer.

* NOTICE

We recommend that when replacing tires, use the same originally supplied with the vehicles.

If not, that affects driving performance.

Wheel alignment and tire balance

The wheels on your vehicle were aligned and balanced carefully at the factory to give you the longest tire life and best overall performance.

In most cases, you will not need to have your wheels aligned again. However, if you notice unusual tire wear or your vehicle pulling one way or the other, the alignment may need to be reset.

If you notice your vehicle vibrating when driving on a smooth road, your wheels may need to be rebalanced.

* NOTICE

Improper wheel weights can damage your vehicle's aluminum wheels. Use only approved wheel weights.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

WARNING

- When replacing tires, never mix radial, bias-belted, and bias-type tires. All four tires should be of the same size, design and construction. Use only the tire sizes listed on the Tire Label found below the door striker on the driver's side. Make sure that all tires and wheels are the same size and have the same load-carrying capacity. Use only tire and wheel combinations recommended on the Tire Label or by an Authorized Kia Dealer. Failure to follow these precautions can adversely affect the safety and handling of your vehicle.
- The use of any other tire size or type may seriously affect ride, handling, ground clearance, tire clearance, and speedometer calibration.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- Driving on worn-out tires is very hazardous and will reduce braking effectiveness, steering accuracy, and traction.
- It is best to replace all four tires at the same time. If that is not possible, or necessary, then replace the two front or two rear tires as a pair. Replacing just one tire can seriously affect your vehicle's handling.
- The ABS works by comparing the speed of the wheels. Tire size can affect wheel speed. When replacing tires, all 4 tires must use the same size originally supplied with the vehicle. Using tires of a different size can cause the ABS (Anti-lock Brake System) and ESC (Electronic Stability Control) to work irregularly.

Wheel replacement

When replacing the metal wheels for any reason, make sure the new wheels are equivalent to the original factory units in diameter, rim width and offset.

WARNING

A wheel that is not the correct size may adversely affect wheel and bearing life, braking and stopping abilities, handling characteristics, ground clearance, body-to-tire clearance, snow chain clearance, speedometer calibration, headlight aim and bumper height.

Tire size designation

A tire's sidewall is marked with a tire size designation. You will need this information when selecting replacement tires for your car. The following explains what the letters and numbers in the tire size designation mean.

Example tire size designation:

195 R14C 106/104R

(These numbers are provided as an example only; your tire size designator could vary depending on your vehicle.)

195 - Tire width in millimeters.

R - Tire construction code (Radial).

14 - Rim diameter in inches.

C - Commercial tire.

106/104 - Load Index, a numerical code associated with the maximum load the tire can carry.

R - Speed Rating Symbol. See the speed rating chart in this section for additional information.

5.00 R12LT 83/81P

(These numbers are provided as an example only; your tire size designator could vary depending on your vehicle.)

5.00 - Tire width in inches.

R - Tire construction code (Radial).

12 - Rim diameter in inches.

LT - Light truck tire.

83/81 - Load Index, a numerical code associated with the maximum load the tire can carry.

P - Speed Rating Symbol. See the speed rating chart in this section for additional information.

Wheel size designation

Wheels are also marked with important information that you need if you ever have to replace one. The following explains what the letters and numbers in the wheel size designation mean.

Example wheel size designation:

6.0 J x 14

6.0 - Rim width in inches.

J - Rim contour designation.

14 - Rim diameter in inches.

Tire speed ratings

The chart below shows many of the different speed ratings currently being used for passenger car. The speed rating symbol is part of the tire size designation on the sidewall of the tire. This symbol corresponds to that tire's designed maximum safe operating speed.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

Speed Rating Symbol	Maximum Speed
P	150 km/h (93 mph)
Q	160 km/h (99 mph)
R	170 km/h (106 mph)
S	180 km/h (112 mph)
T	190 km/h (118 mph)
H	210 km/h (130 mph)
V	240 km/h (149 mph)
Z	Above 240 km/h (149 mph)

⚠ WARNING - Tire temperature

Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat build-up and possible sudden tires failure. This can cause loss of vehicle control and serious injury or death.



Checking a tire life

Tire strength and performance decline with age. Any tires that are over 6 year old, including the spare (determined by the tire manufacture date), should be replaced regardless of mileage. You can find the tire manufacture date on the tire sidewall (either on the inside or outside of the wheel). The date is a Department Of Transportation (DOT) number consisting of letters and numbers. You can determine the tire manufacture date by the last four numbers of the DOT code.

DOT : XXXX XXXX 0000

The first letters/numbers of the DOT indicate the manufacturing plant, tire size and tread pattern, last four numbers indicate week and year manufactured.

For example:

DOT XXXX XXXX 0816 represents that the tire was produced in the 8th week of 2016.

⚠ WARNING

Tires degrade over time, even when they are not being used. Regardless of the remaining tread, it is recommended that tires generally be replaced after six (6) years of normal service. Heat caused by hot climates or frequent high loading conditions can accelerate the aging process. Failure to follow this warning can result in sudden tire failure, which could lead to a loss of control and an accident involving serious injury or death.

Low aspect ratio tire (if equipped)

Low aspect ratio tires, whose aspect ratio is lower than 50, are provided for sporty looks.

Because the low aspect ratio tires are optimized for handling and braking, it may be more uncomfortable to ride in and there is more noise compare with normal tires.

CAUTION

Because the sidewall of the low aspect ratio tire is shorter than the normal, the wheel and tire of the low aspect ratio tire is easier to be damaged. So, follow the instructions below.

- *When driving on a rough road or off road, drive cautiously because tires and wheels may be damaged. And after driving, inspect tires and wheels.*
- *When passing over a pothole, speed bump, manhole, or curb stone, drive slowly so that the tires and wheels are not damaged.*
- *If the tire is impacted, we recommend that you inspect the tire condition or contact an authorized Kia dealer.*
- *To prevent damage to the tire, inspect the tire condition and pressure every 3,000km.*

CAUTION

- *It is not easy to recognize the tire damage with your own eyes. But if there is the slightest hint of tire damage, even though you cannot see the tire damage with your own eyes, have the tire checked or replaced because the tire damage may cause air leakage from the tire.*
- *If the tire is damaged by driving on a rough road, off road, pothole, manhole, or curb stone, it will not be covered by the warranty.*
- *You can find out the tire information on the tire sidewall.*

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

BULB REPLACEMENT

When changing bulbs and sorts, first turn off the engine at a safe place, firmly apply the side brake and take out the battery's negative (-) terminal.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

⚠ WARNING - Working on the lights

Prior to working on the light, firmly apply the parking brake, ensure that the ignition switch is turned to the "LOCK" position and turn off the lights to avoid sudden movement of the vehicle and burning your fingers or receiving an electric shock.

Use only the bulbs of the specified wattage.

⚠ WARNING

Be sure to replace the burned out bulb with one of the same wattage rating. Otherwise, it may cause extensive wiring damage and possible fire.

⚡ CAUTION

Do not install extra lamps or LED to the vehicle. If supplementary lights are installed, it may lead to lamp malfunction and flickering of the lights. In addition, the fuse box and other wiring may be damaged.



- ① Headlight (High/Low)
- ② Position light
- ③ Front turn signal light
- ④ Front fog light - Except Europe (if equipped)

1PUA5025

Headlight bulb replacement

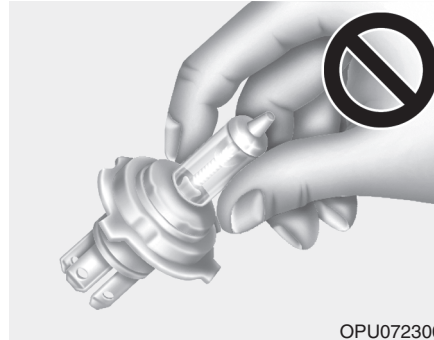
*** NOTICE**

After heavy, driving rain or washing, headlight and taillight lenses could appear frosty. This condition is caused by the temperature difference between the lamp inside and outside.

(Continued)

(Continued)

This is similar to the condensation on your windows inside your vehicle during the rain and doesn't indicate a problem with your vehicle. If the water leaks into the lamp bulb circuitry, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized Kia dealer.



OPU072300

⚠ WARNING - Halogen bulbs

- Halogen bulbs contain pressurized gas that will produce flying pieces of glass if broken.
- Always handle them carefully, and avoid scratches and abrasions. If the bulbs are lit, avoid contact with liquids. Never touch the glass with bare hands. Residual oil may cause the bulb to overheat and burst when lit. A bulb should be operated only when installed in a headlight.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- If a bulb becomes damaged or cracked, replace it immediately and carefully dispose of it.
- Wear eye protection when changing a bulb. Allow the bulb to cool down before handling it.

*** NOTICE**

If the vehicle has had front body repair or the headlight assembly has been replaced, we recommend that the headlight aiming be checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

1



1. Open the hood.
2. Loosen the retaining bolts and remove the light assembly from the body of the vehicle.

2

3

4

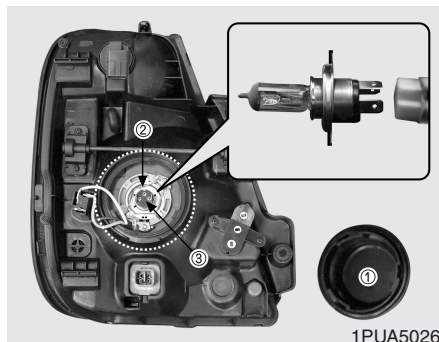
5

6

7

8

9



3. Disconnect the headlight main electrical connector. Disconnect the front turn signal light electrical connector.
4. Remove the headlight bulb cover by turning it counterclockwise.
5. Disconnect the headlight bulb socket-connector.
6. Unsnap the headlight bulb retaining wire by depressing the end and pushing it upward.

7. Remove the bulb from the headlight assembly.

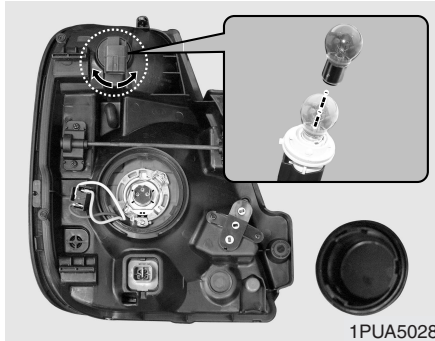
8. Install a new headlight bulb and snap the headlight bulb retaining wire into position by aligning the wire with the groove on the bulb.

9. Connect the headlight bulb socket-connector.

10. Install the headlight bulb cover by turning it clockwise.

11. Connect the headlight main connector. Connect the front turn signal light electrical connector.

12. Reinstall the light assembly to the body of the vehicle.



Position / turn signal light bulb replacement

1. Remove the headlight assembly. Refer to "Headlight bulb replacement" on the preceding pages.
2. Remove the socket from the assembly by turning the socket counterclockwise until the tabs on the socket align with the slots on the assembly.

3. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.
4. Install a new bulb in the socket.
5. Install the socket in the assembly by aligning the tabs on the socket with the slots in the assembly. Insert the socket into the assembly and turn the socket clockwise.
6. Connect the headlight main connector. Connect the front turn signal light electrical connector.
7. Reinstall the light assembly to the body of the vehicle.



Front fog light bulb replacement (if equipped)

1. Reach your hand into the front bumper below the fog light housing.
2. Remove the socket from the housing by turning the socket counterclockwise until the tabs on the socket align with the slots on the housing.
3. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.
4. Install a new bulb in the socket.
5. Install the socket in the housing by aligning the tabs on the socket with the slots in the housing. Insert the socket into the housing and turn the socket clockwise.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

1



Side repeater lamp bulb Replacement (if equipped)

If the Side repeater lamp does not operate, we recommend that you checked an authorized Kia dealer.

2

3

4

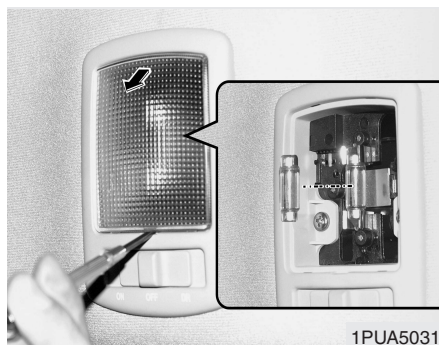
5

6

7

8

9



Interior light bulb replacement

1. Using a flat-blade screwdriver, gently pry the lens from the interior light housing.

CAUTION

Prior to working on the Interior Lights, ensure that the "OFF" button is depressed to avoid burning your fingers or receiving an electric shock.

2. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.
3. Install a new bulb in the socket.
4. Align the lens tabs with the interior light housing notches and snap the lens into place.



License plate light bulb replacement

1. Loosen the lens retaining screws with a cross-tip screwdriver.
2. Remove the bulb from the socket by pressing it in and rotating it until the tabs on the bulb align with the slots in the socket. Pull the bulb out of the socket.
3. Insert a new bulb by inserting it into the socket and rotating it until it locks into place.
4. Install a new bulb.
5. Reinstall the lens securely with the lens retaining screws.



- ① Rear turn signal light
- ② Stop and tail light
- ③ Rear fog light or Back-up light (For europe)
 - LH side : Fog light
 - RH side : Back-up light
- ③ Back-up light (Except europe)

Rear combination light bulb replacement

1. Press the lock tabs on the cover with your fingers and remove the cover.

2. Remove the socket from the assembly by turning the socket counterclockwise until the tabs on the socket align with the slots on the assembly.
3. Remove the bulb from the socket by pressing it in and rotating it until the tabs on the bulb align with the slots in the socket. Pull the bulb out of the socket.
4. Insert a new bulb by inserting it into the socket and rotating it until it locks into place.
5. Install the socket in the assembly by aligning the tabs on the socket with the slots in the assembly. Push the socket into the assembly and turn the socket clockwise.
6. Install the cover.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

LUBRICANT SPECIFICATIONS

Recommended lubricants

To help achieve proper engine and powertrain performance and durability, use only lubricants of the proper quality. The correct lubricants also help promote engine efficiency that results in improved fuel economy.

Engine oils labeled Energy Conserving Oil are now available. Along with other additional benefits, they contribute to fuel economy by reducing the amount of fuel necessary to overcome engine friction. Often, these improvements are difficult to measure in everyday driving, but in a year's time, they can offer significant cost and energy savings.

These lubricants and fluids are recommended for use in your vehicle.

Lubricant			Classification
Engine oil *1	2.5L Diesel Engine	with DPF	ACEA C2**2
		without DPF	ACEA A3/B4**2
	2.7L/3.0L Diesel Engine		API CF-4 or ACEA A3/B3
	2.4L LPG Engine		API SM & ILSAC GF-4 & ACEA A5
Manual transmission fluid			API Service GL-4 (SAE 75W-85, fill-for-life)
Differential fluid	2.7L/3.0L Diesel Engine, 2.4L LPG Engine	With LSD	LSD OIL API Service GL-5 (SAE 85W-90)
		Without LSD	API Service GL-5 (SAE 90)
	2.5 Diesel Engine (A-II 2.5)	All (with LD, without LD, 4WD front)	
Transfer case fluid			API Service GL-4 (SAE 75W-85, fill-for-life)
Power steering fluid			PSF-4
Brake/clutch fluid			FMVSS116 DOT-3 or DOT-4

*1 Refer to the recommended SAE viscosity numbers on the next page.

*2 ACEA certificated engine oil must be used as service engine oil.
Only in case that ACEA engine oil is not available, engine oil above API CJ-1 is allowed restrictively.

Recommended SAE viscosity number

* NOTICE

Always be sure to clean the area around any filler plug, drain plug, or dipstick before checking or draining any lubricant. This is especially important in dusty or sandy areas and when the vehicle is used on unpaved roads. Cleaning the plug and dipstick areas will prevent dirt and grit from entering the engine and other mechanisms that could be damaged.

Engine oil viscosity (thickness) has an effect on fuel economy and cold weather operating (starting and oil flow). Lower viscosity engine oils can provide better fuel economy and cold weather performance, however, higher viscosity engine oils are required for satisfactory lubrication in hot weather. Using oils of any viscosity other than those recommended could result in engine damage.

When choosing an oil, consider the range of temperature your vehicle will be operated in before the next oil change. Proceed to select the recommended oil viscosity from the chart.

Temperature Range for SAE Viscosity Numbers											
Temperature		°C	-30	-20	-10	0	10	20	30	40	50
		(°F)	-10	0	20	40	60	80	100	120	
Diesel engine oil	2.5L/ 2.7L/ 3.0L										
LPG engine oil	2.4L										

*1 : It is only for extreme cold area and to be restricted by driving condition and area.
(Especially, not recommended for sustained high loaded and high speed operation.)

- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9

EXTERIOR CARE

Exterior general caution

It is very important to follow the label directions when using any chemical cleaner or polish. Read all warning and caution statements that appear on the label.

Finish maintenance

Washing

To help protect your vehicle's finish from rust and deterioration, wash it thoroughly and frequently at least once a month with lukewarm or cold water.

If you use your vehicle for off-road driving, you should wash it after each off-road trip. Pay special attention to the removal of any accumulation of salt, dirt, mud, and other foreign materials. Make sure the drain holes in the lower edges of the doors and rocker panels are kept clear and clean.

Insects, tar, tree sap, bird droppings, industrial pollution and similar deposits can damage your vehicle's finish if not removed immediately.

Even prompt washing with plain water may not completely remove all these deposits. A mild soap, safe for use on painted surfaces, may be used.

After washing, rinse the vehicle thoroughly with lukewarm or cold water. Do not allow soap to dry on the finish.

CAUTION

- *Do not use strong soap, chemical detergents or hot water, and do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight or when the body of the vehicle is warm.*
- *Do not wash the side windows too close with high pressure water. Water may leak through the windows and wet the interior.*
- *To prevent damage to the plastic parts and lamps, do not clean with chemical solvents or strong detergents.*

WARNING

After washing the vehicle, test the brakes while driving slowly to see if they have been affected by water. If braking performance is impaired, dry the brakes by applying them lightly while maintaining a slow forward speed.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

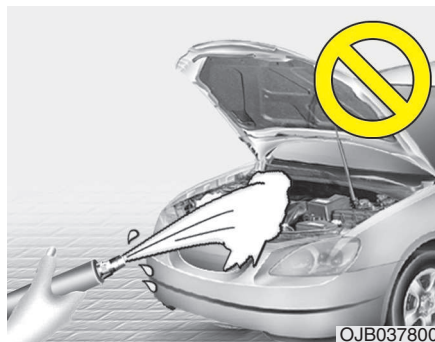
9

High-pressure washing

- When using high-pressure washers, make sure to maintain sufficient distance from the vehicle.

Insufficient clearance or excessive pressure can lead to component damage or water penetration.

- Do not spray the camera, sensors or its surrounding area directly with a high pressure washer. Shock applied from high pressure water may cause the device to not operate normally.
- Do not bring the nozzle tip close to boots (rubber or plastic covers) or connectors as they may be damaged if they come into contact with high pressure water.



CAUTION

- ***Water washing in the engine compartment including high pressure water washing may cause the failure of electrical circuits located in the engine compartment.***
- ***Pay extreme attention to wash the engine compartment by using water.***

Waxing

Wax the vehicle when water will no longer bead on the paint.

Always wash and dry the vehicle before waxing. Use a good quality liquid or paste wax, and follow the manufacturer's instructions. Wax all metal trim to protect it and to maintain its luster.

Removing oil, tar, and similar materials with a spot remover will usually strip the wax from the finish. Be sure to re-wax these areas even if the rest of the vehicle does not yet need waxing.

* NOTICE

- Wiping dust or dirt off the body with a dry cloth will scratch the finish.
- Do not use steel wool, abrasive cleaners, or strong detergents containing highly alkaline or caustic agents on chrome-plated or anodized aluminum parts. This may result in damage to the protective coating and cause discoloration or paint deterioration.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

Finish damage repair

Deep scratches or stone chips in the painted surface must be repaired promptly. Exposed metal will quickly rust and may develop into a major repair expense.

* NOTICE

If your vehicle is damaged and requires any metal repair or replacement, be sure the body shop applies anti-corrosion materials to the parts repaired or replaced.

Bright-metal maintenance

- To remove road tar and insects, use a tar remover, not a scraper or other sharp object.
- To protect the surfaces of bright-metal parts from corrosion, apply a coating of wax or chrome preservative and rub to a high luster.
- During winter weather or in coastal areas, cover the bright metal parts with a heavier coating of wax or preservative. If necessary, coat the parts with non-corrosive petroleum jelly or other protective compound.

Underbody maintenance

Corrosive materials used for ice and snow removal and dust control may collect on the underbody. If these materials are not removed, accelerated rusting can occur on underbody parts such as the fuel lines, frame, floor pan and exhaust system, even though they have been treated with rust protection.

Thoroughly flush the vehicle underbody and wheel openings with lukewarm or cold water once a month, after off-road driving and at the end of each winter. Pay special attention to these areas because it is difficult to see all the mud and dirt. It will do more harm than good to wet down the road grime without removing it. The lower edges of doors, rocker panels, and frame members have drain holes that should not be allowed to clog with dirt; trapped water in these areas can cause rusting.

⚠ WARNING

After washing the vehicle, test the brakes while driving slowly to see if they have been affected by water. If braking performance is impaired, dry the brakes by applying them lightly while maintaining a slow forward speed.

Aluminum wheel maintenance

The aluminum wheels are coated with a clear protective finish.

- Do not use any abrasive cleaner, polishing compound, solvent, or wire brushes on aluminum wheels. They may scratch or damage the finish.
- Clean the wheel when it has cooled.
- Use only a mild soap or neutral detergent, and rinse thoroughly with water. Also, be sure to clean the wheels after driving on salted roads. This helps prevent corrosion.
- Avoid washing the wheels with high-speed car wash brushes.
- Do not use any alkaline or acid detergent. It may damage and corrode the aluminum wheels coated with a clear protective finish.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

INTERIOR CARE

Interior general precautions

Prevent chemicals such as perfume, cosmetic oil, sun cream, hand cleaner, and air freshener from contacting the interior parts because they may cause damage or discoloration. If they do contact the interior parts, wipe them off immediately. See the instructions that follow for the proper way to clean vinyl.

CAUTION

When cleaning leather products (steering wheel, seats etc.), use neutral detergents or low alcohol content solutions. If you use high alcohol content solutions or acid/alkaline detergents, the color of the leather may fade or the surface may get stripped off.

Cleaning the upholstery and interior trim

Vinyl

Remove dust and loose dirt from vinyl with a whisk broom or vacuum cleaner. Clean vinyl surfaces with a vinyl cleaner.

Fabric

Remove dust and loose dirt from fabric with a whisk broom or vacuum cleaner. Clean with a mild soap solution recommended for upholstery or carpets. Remove fresh spots immediately with a fabric spot cleaner. If fresh spots do not receive immediate attention, the fabric can be stained and its color can be affected. Also, its fire-resistant properties can be reduced if the material is not properly maintained.

CAUTION

Using anything but recommended cleaners and procedures may affect the fabric's appearance and fire-resistant properties.

Cleaning the lap/shoulder belt webbing

Clean the belt webbing with any mild soap solution recommended for cleaning upholstery or carpet. Follow the instructions provided with the soap. Do not bleach or re-dye the webbing because this may weaken it.

Cleaning the interior window glass

If the interior glass surfaces of the vehicle become fogged (that is, covered with an oily, greasy or waxy film), they should be cleaned with glass cleaner. Follow the directions on the glass cleaner container.

*** NOTICE**

Do not scrape or scratch the inside of the rear window. This may result in damage to the rear window defroster grid.

		Specifications / 8-2	1
		Declaration of conformity / 8-9	2
			3
			4
			5
			6
			7
	Specifications		8
			9

SPECIFICATIONS

The specifications given here are for general information only. For more precise and more up-to-date information, we recommend that you check an authorized Kia dealer.

Dimensions

mm

Item		1 Ton							1.4 Ton/ K4000G		
		Long Body		Extra Long Body			Long Body (High deck)				
							2WD	4WD			
		Standard cab	Double cab	Standard cab	King cab	Double cab	Standard cab	Standard cab	Double cab	Standard cab	King cab
Overall length		4,825	4,810	5,125	5,115	5,125	4,825	4,825	4,810	5,455	5,430
Overall width		1,740	1,740	1,740	1,740	1,740	1,740	1,740	1,740	1,750	1,750
Overall height	Diesel 2.5L / LPG 2.4L	1,995	1,995	1,995	1,995	1,995	1,995	2,105	2,105	-	-
	Diesel 2.7L	1,975	1,975	1,970	1,970	1,970	-	2,090	2,090	-	-
	Diesel 3.0L	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	2,095	2,095
Front tread		1,490	1,490	1,490	1,490	1,490	1,490	1,505	1,505	1,470	1,470
Rear tread		1,340	1,340	1,340	1,340	1,340	1,460	1,460	1,460	1,270	1,270
Wheel base		2,415	2,415	2,615	2,615	2,615	2,415	2,415	2,415	2,810	2,810
Cargo deck	Length	2,810	1,870	3,110	2,860	2,185	2,810	2,810	1,870	3,400	3,135
	Width	1,630	1,630	1,630	1,630	1,630	1,630	1,630	1,630	1,650	1,650
	Height	355	355	355	355	355	355	355	355	355	355

Tires

Engine		Body type		Front			Rear			Remark
Fuel	Displace ment (Liter)			Tire	Inflation Pressure		Tire	Inflation Pressure		
					kPa	psi		kPa	psi	
Diesel	2.5	Low deck	Standard/ King Cab.	195R15-8PR	310	45	5.00R12-8PR	390	57	
			Double Cab.	195R15-8PR	310	45	145R13C-8PR	390	57	
		High deck		195R15-8PR	345	50	195R15-8PR	390	57	
	2.7	Low deck	Standard/ King Cab.	195R14-6PR	310	45	5.00R12-8PR	390	57	
			Double Cab.	195R14-6PR	310	45	145R13C-8PR	390	57	
		High deck		195R14-8PR	310	45	195R14-8PR	390	57	
		4WD	Standard/ King Cab.	6.70R14-8PR	415	60	6.70R14-8PR	440	64	
			Double Cab.	6.70R14-10PR	415	60	6.70R14-10PR	475	69	
	2.5 / 3.0	2WD	Standard Cab.	6.50R16-10PR	460	67	5.50R13-8PR	360	52	
				6.50R16-10PR	460	67	5.50R13-10PR	530	77	Syria
				6.50R16-10PR	460	67	5.50R13-12PR	600	87	GCC (Model:K4000G)
LPG	2.4	Low deck	King Cab.	195R15-8PR	310	45	145R13C-8PR	390	57	Uzbekistan

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

1

⚡ CAUTION

When replacing tires, use the same size originally supplied with the vehicle.

Using tires of a different size can damage the related parts or make it work irregularly.

2

*** NOTICE**

- We recommend that when replacing tires, use the same originally supplied with the vehicles. If not, that affects driving performance.
- When driving in high altitude grades, it is natural for the atmospheric pressure to decrease. Therefore, please check the tire pressure and add more air when necessary. Additionally required tire air pressure per km above sea level: 1.5psi/km

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

Load capacity and speed rating for each tires

Item			Front					Rear					OEM Tire Maker
			Tire	Load Capacity		Speed rating		Tire	Load Capacity		Speed rating		
			Front	LI*1	Kg	SS*2	Km/h	Rear	LI*1	Kg	SS*2	Km/h	
2.5L	Lowdeck	Standard cab. King cab.	195R15-8PR	106 (Single)	950	R	170	5.00R12-8PR	82 (Dual)	475	P	150	Hankook/Kumho
		Double cab.	195R15-8PR	106 (Single)	950	R	170	145R13C-8PR	86 (Dual)	530	R	170	Hankook/Kumho
	Highdeck		195R15-8PR	106 (Single)	950	R	170	195R15-8PR	106 (Single)	950	R	170	Hankook/Kumho
2.7L	Lowdeck	Standard cab. King cab.	195R14-6PR	102 (Single)	850	R	170	5.00R12-8PR	82 (Dual)	475	P	150	Hankook/Kumho
		Double cab.	195R14-6PR	102 (Single)	850	R	170	145R13C-8PR	86 (Dual)	530	R	170	Hankook/Kumho
	High Deck		195R14-8PR	106 (Single)	950	R	170	195R14-8PR	106 (Single)	950	R	170	Hankook/Kumho
	4WD	Standard cab. King cab.	6.70R14-8PR	101 (Single)	825	P	150	6.70R14-8PR	101 (Single)	825	P	150	Hankook
			6.70R14-8PR	101 (Single)	825	R	170	6.70R14-8PR	101 (Single)	825	R	170	Kumho
		Double cab.	6.70R14-10PR	103 (Single)	875	P	150	6.70R14-10PR	103 (Single)	875	P	150	Hankook/Kumho
3.0L	2WD	Standard cab.	6.50R16-10PR	108 (Single)	980	M	130	5.50R13-8PR	89 (Dual)	580	P	150	Hankook
			6.50R16-10PR	108 (Single)	1000	M	130	5.50R13-8PR	89 (Dual)	585	M	130	Kumho
			6.50R16-10PR	108 (Single)	1000	M	130	5.50R13-10PR	93 (Dual)	640	P	150	Hankook
			6.50R16-10PR	108 (Single)	1000	M	130	5.50R13-10PR	92 (Dual)	640	M	130	Kumho
			6.50R16-10PR	108 (Single)	1000	N	140	5.50R13-12PR	95 (Maxxis)	690	P	150	Maxxis

*1: Load Index

*2: Speed Symbol

Wheel

	Item			Front	Rear	Wheel lug nut torque kgf·m (lbf·ft, N·m)
	Engine	Material		Steel	Steel	
Wheel	Diesel 2.5L or LPG 2.4L	Low deck: Standard cab Kingcab	Size	5.5JX15	3.5JX12	Front&Rear 19.0-22.0(137~159,186~216)
			Offset(mm)	42	87.5	
			PCD(mm)	139.7	145	
		Low deck: Double cab	Size	5.5JX15	4JX13	
			Offset(mm)	42	94	
			PCD(mm)	139.7	145	
		Highdeck	Size	5.5JX15	5.5JX15	
			Offset(mm)	53	53	
			PCD(mm)	160	160	
	Diesel 2.7L	Low deck: Standard cab Kingcab	Size	5JX14	3.5JX12	Front 9.0-12.0(65~87,88~118) Rear 19.0~22.0(137~159,186~216)
			Offset(mm)	35	87.5	
			PCD(mm)	139.7	145	
		Low deck: Double cab	Size	5JX14	4JX13	
			Offset(mm)	35	94	
			PCD(mm)	139.7	145	
		Highdeck	Size	5JX14	5JX14	Front&Rear 19.0-22.0(137~159,186~216)
			Offset(mm)	42	42	
			PCD(mm)	160	160	
	Diesel 2.5L or 3.0L	1.4 ton	Size	5.5JX16 WDC	4JX13 WDC	Front 45.0-50.0(326~362,441~491) Rear 19.0~22.0(137~159,186~216)
		K4000G	Offset(mm)	107	95	
			PCD(mm)	203.2	170	

Capacities

Lubricant			Volume	Classification
Engine oil *1 *2 (drain and refill) recommended 	2.5L Diesel Engine	with DPF	7.4 l (7.8 US qt.)	ACEA C2
		without DPF		ACEA C2 or C3 or A3/B4
	2.7L Diesel Engine	2WD	6.4 l (6.8 US qt.)	API Service CF-4 Above or ACEA A3/B3
		4WD	6.8 l (7.2 US qt.)	
	3.0L Diesel Engine (1.4 ton)		6.8 l (7.2 US qt.)	
	2.4L LPG Engine		5.1 l (5.4 US qt.)	API SM & ILSAC GF-4 & ACEA A5
Engine oil consumption	Normal driving condition		MAX. 1 l /1500 km	-
	Severe driving condition		MAX. 1 l /1000 km	-
Manual transmission fluid	2.5L Diesel Engine		2.2 ~ 2.3 l (2.3 ~ 2.4 US qt.)	HK MTF (SK), HD MTF (SHELL) Kia GENUINE PARTS MTF SAE75W/85 (API GL-4)
	2.7L / 3.0L Diesel Engine		2.2 ~ 2.3 l (2.3 ~ 2.4 US qt.)	
	2.4L LPG Engine		1.95 ~ 2.05 l (2.06 ~ 2.17 US qt.)	
Transfer case fluid (if equipped)			1.2 l (1.27 US qt.)	HK MTF(SK), HD MTF(SHELL), Kia GENUINE PARTS MTF SAE 75W/85 (fill for-life), API SERVICE GL-4

*1 : Refer to the recommended SAE viscosity numbers on the page 7-53.

*2 : Engine oils labeled Energy Conserving Oil are now available. Along with other additional benefits, they contribute to fuel economy by reducing the amount of fuel necessary to overcome engine friction. Often, these improvements are difficult to measure in everyday driving, but in a year's time, they can offer significant cost and energy savings.

Specifications

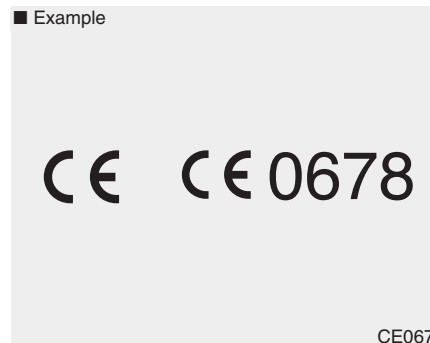
Lubricant			Volume	Classification
Differential fluid	2.7L Diesel Engine	With LSD	1.3 l (1.4 US qt.)	LSD OIL API Service GL-5 (SAE 85W-90)
		Without LSD	1.3 l (1.4 US qt.)	STD OIL API Service GL-5 (SAE 90)
	3.0L Diesel Engine	ALL	1.6 l (1.7 US qt.)	
	2.5L Diesel Engine, 2.4L LPG Engine	ALL (With LD, Without LD)	1.6 l (1.7 US qt.)	
	2.5L Diesel Engine	4WD Front	1.3 l ~ 1.4 l (1.4 ~1.5 US qt.)	
Power steering fluid			1.1 l ~1.2 l (1.2 ~ 1.3 US qt.)	PSF-4
Coolant	2.5L Diesel Engine		12.6 l (13.3 US qt.)	Ethylene glycol base for aluminum radiator
	2.7L Diesel Engine		11.2 l (11.8 US qt.)	
	3.0L Diesel Engine		11.4 l (12.0 US qt.)	
	2.4L LPG Engine		6.4 l ~ 6.9 l (6.76 ~ 7.29 US qt)	
Brake/clutch fluid			0.35 l (0.37 US qt.)	FMVSS116 DOT-3 or DOT-4
Fuel	2.7L/3.0L Diesel Engine		60 l (15.9 US gal)	-
	2.5L Diesel Engine	Double cab. 4WD	60 l (15.9 US gal)	
		Except Double cab. 4WD	65 l (17.2 US gal)	
	2.4L LPG Engine		71 l (75 US qt.)	

Light bulbs

Light Bulb	Wattage	
	1 Ton	1.4 Ton
Headlights (Low/High)	55/60	55/60
Front turn signal lights	21	21
Position lights	5	5
Side repeater lights (if equipped)	5	5
Front fog lights (if equipped)	27	27
Stop and tail lights	21/5	21/5
Rear turn signal lights	21	21
Back-up lights	21	21
Rear fog lights (if equipped)	21	-
License plate lights	10	10
Front room lamp	10	10
Dome lamp (if equipped)	10	10

DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY

■ Example



The radio frequency components of the vehicle comply with requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1995/5/EC.

Further information including the manufacturer's declaration of conformity is available on Kia web site as follows;

<http://www.kia-hotline.com>

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

			1
			2
			3
			4
			5
			6
			7
			8
	Index		9

A

Air bag - supplemental restraint system	3-33
Air cleaner	7-32
Antenna	3-56
Ashtray	3-52
Audio system	3-56
Antenna	3-56

B

Battery	7-36
Battery saver function	4-40
Before driving	5-6
Brake system	4-11
Anti-lock brake system (ABS)	4-15
Parking brake	4-13, 7-26
Power brakes	4-11
Electronic stability control (ESC)	4-17
Brakes and clutch	7-25
Bulb replacement	7-46
Front fog light bulb replacement	7-49
Headlight bulb replacement	7-46
Interior light bulb replacement	7-50
License plate light bulb replacement	7-51
Position/turn signal light bulb replacement	7-49
Rear combination light bulb replacement	7-51
Side repeater lamp bulb replacement	7-50

C

Capacities	8-7
Center seatback console tray	3-51
Central door lock switch	3-9
Changing tires	6-26
Chains	
Tire chains	5-12
Checking a tire life	7-44
Climate control air filter	7-33
Climate control system	4-49
Air conditioning	4-53
Cigarette lighter	3-52
Cup holder	3-53

D

Declaration of conformity	8-9
Defrosting logic	4-57
Defroster	4-48
Digital clock	3-54
Dimensions	8-2
Driver-side knee bolster	6-8
Door locks	3-8
Central door lock switch	3-9
Driving at night	5-10
Driving in flooded areas	5-10
Driving in the rain	5-10

E

Electrical circuit protection	6-7
Driver-side knee bolster	6-8
Fuses	6-7
Fuse panel description	6-10
Emergency starting	6-5
Jump starting procedure	6-5
Push-starting	6-6
Emergency while driving	6-3
Emergency commodity	6-33
Emission control system	5-2
Engine compartment	7-17
Engine cooling system	7-22
Engine number	5-23
Engine oil and oil filter	7-20
Engine temperature gauge	4-27
Exterior care	7-54
Exterior overview	2-2
Exterior tool box	3-54

F

Flat tire	6-24
Changing tires	6-26
Jack and tools	6-24
Reinstalling the spare tire	6-26
Removing the spare tire	6-25

Four wheel drive (4WD)	4-60
Front fog light bulb replacement	7-49
Front seat adjustment	3-13
Engine room access	3-17
Fuel filler	3-46
Fuel filter	7-30
Fuel gauge	4-27
Fuses	6-7
Fuse panel description	6-10
Main fuse	6-9
Memory fuse	6-10

G

Gauge	
Engine temperature gauge	4-27
Fuel gauge	4-27
Odometer	4-25
Speedometer	4-25
Tachometer	4-26
Tripmeter	4-26
Glove box	3-51

H

Hazard warning flasher	6-2
Hazardous driving conditions	5-9
Headlight leveling device	4-44

Index

Headrest adjustment.....	3-15
Hood	3-43
Horn	4-22
How to use this manual	1-2

I

Ignition switch	4-2
Identification label	5-23
Immobilizer system.....	3-3
Instrument cluster	4-23
Interior care	7-58
Interior features	3-52
Ashtray	3-52
AUX, USB and iPod	3-54
Cigarette lighter	3-52
Cup holder	3-53
Digital clock	3-54
Sunvisor	3-53
Interior light	3-50
Interior light bulb replacement	7-50
Interior overview	2-3

J

Jack and tools	6-24
Jump starting	6-5

K

Keys	3-2
------------	-----

L

Label information	5-23
Engine number	5-23
Identification label.....	5-23
Vehicle identification number (VIN)	5-23
License plate light bulb replacement	7-51
Light bulbs	8-9
Lighting	4-40
Battery saver function	4-40
Headlight leveling device	4-44
Limited slip differential	4-9
Locking differential	4-10
Lubricant specifications	7-52
Lubricants and fluids	7-29

M

Main fuse	6-9
Maintenance schedule.....	7-5
Maintenance under severe usage conditions.....	7-12
Maintenance services	7-3
Manual transmission	4-7

Memory fuse	6-10
Mirrors	3-47
Day/night rearview mirror	3-49
Manual remote control	3-47
Outside rearview mirror	3-47

O

Odometer	4-25
Oil (level)	7-20
Outside rearview mirror	3-47
Overheating	6-4
Overloading	5-22
Owner maintenance	7-14

P

Parking brake	4-13, 7-26
Position/turn signal light bulb replacement	7-49
Power brakes	4-11
Power steering	4-21, 7-27
Power window	3-11
Push starting	6-6

R

Rear combination light bulb replacement	7-51
Rear gate	3-44

Rear parking assist system	4-37
Remote keyless entry	3-5
Road warning	6-2
Rocking the vehicle	5-9

S

Safety belts	3-19
Lap belt	3-25
Lap/shoulder belt	3-22
Safety belt warning light	3-22
Seats	3-13
Center seat	3-16
Driver's seat	3-13
Front seat adjustment	3-13
Front passenger's seat	3-17
Headrest adjustment	3-15
Side gate	3-45
Snow tires	5-11
Special driving conditions	5-9
Driving at night	5-10
Driving in flooded areas	5-10
Driving in the rain	5-10
Hazardous driving conditions	5-9
Rocking the vehicle	5-9
Snow tires	5-11
Tire chains	5-12
Winter driving	5-11

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

Index

	Specifications	8-2
	Capacities	8-7
	Dimensions	8-2
	Light bulbs	8-9
1	Load and speed capacity tires	8-5
	Tires	8-3
2	Wheel	8-6
	Speedometer	4-25
	Starting the engine	4-4
3	Steering wheel	4-21
	Horn	4-22
4	Power steering	4-21, 7-27
	Tilt steering	4-21
5	Storage compartment	3-51
	Center seatback console tray	3-51
6	Glove box	3-51
	Suggestions for economical operation	5-8
7	Sunvisor	3-53
8	T	
9	Tachometer	4-26
	Tilt steering	4-21
	Tire	8-3
	Tire chains	5-12
	Tires and wheels	7-39
	Checking a tire life	7-44
	Tire care	7-39

	Tire replacement	7-41
	Tire rotation	7-40
	Tire size designation	7-43
	Tire speed ratings	7-43
	Wheel alignment and tire balance	7-41
	Wheel size designation	7-43
	Wheel replacement	7-42
	Towing	6-20
	Trailer towing	5-13

V

	Vehicle break-in process	1-3
	Vehicle identification number (VIN)	5-23

W

	Warnings and indicators	4-29
	Wheel alignment and tire balance	7-41
	Wheel size designation	7-43
	Wheel replacement	7-42
	Windows	3-11
	Manual window	3-11
	Power window	3-11
	Windshield defrosting and defogging	4-57
	Defogging logic	4-58
	Winter driving	5-11
	Snow tires	5-11

Tire chains5-12

Wiper blades7-34

Wipers and washers4-45

- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9

		Keys / 3-2	1
		Remote keyless entry / 3-5	
		Door locks / 3-8	2
		Window / 3-11	
	Knowing your vehicle		3
		Seat / 3-13	4
		Safety belts / 3-19	
		Air bag - supplemental restraint system / 3-33	5
		Hood / 3-43	
		Rear gate / 3-44	6
		Side gate / 3-45	
		Fuel filler / 3-46	7
		Mirrors / 3-47	
		Interior lights / 3-50	8
		Storage compartment / 3-51	
		Interior features / 3-52	9
		Exterior tool box (For 1.4 ton only) / 3-55	
		Audio system / 3-56	

KEYS

Record your key number



The key code number is stamped on the key code tag attached to the key set. Should you lose

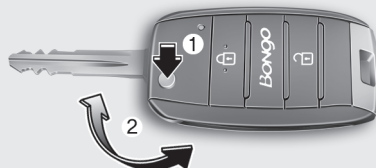
your keys, this number will enable an authorized Kia dealer to duplicate the keys easily. Remove the key code tag and store it in a safe place. Also, record the key code number and keep it in a safe place (not in the vehicle).

■ Type A



OUN026060

■ Type B



OPU026065

Key operations

Used to start the engine, lock and unlock the doors.

Type B

To unfold the key, press the release button (1) then the key will unfold automatically.

To fold the key, fold the key manually while pressing the release button (1).

CAUTION

Do not fold the key without pressing the release button. This may damage the key.

WARNING - Ignition key

Leaving children unattended in a vehicle with the ignition key is dangerous even if the key is not in the ignition switch. Children copy adults and they could place the key in the ignition switch. The ignition key would enable children to operate power windows or other controls, or even make the vehicle move, which could result in serious bodily injury or even death. Never leave the keys in your vehicle with unsupervised children, when the engine is running.

WARNING

Use only Kia original parts for the ignition key in your vehicle. If an aftermarket key is used, the ignition switch may not return to ON after START. If this happens, the starter will continue to operate causing damage to the starter motor and possible fire due to excessive current in the wiring.

Immobilizer system (if equipped)

Your vehicle may be equipped with an electronic engine immobilizer system to reduce the risk of unauthorized vehicle use.

Your immobilizer system is comprised of a small transponder in the ignition key and electronic devices inside the vehicle.

With the immobilizer system, whenever you insert your ignition key into the ignition switch and turn it to ON, it checks and determines and verifies if the ignition key is valid or not.

If the key is determined to be valid, the engine will start.

If the key is determined to be invalid, the engine will not start.

To deactivate the immobilizer system:

Insert the ignition key into the key cylinder and turn it to the ON position.

To activate the immobilizer system:

Turn the ignition key to the OFF position. The immobilizer system activates automatically. Without a valid ignition key for your vehicle, the engine will not start.

WARNING

In order to prevent theft of your vehicle, do not leave spare keys anywhere in your vehicle. Your Immobilizer password is a customer unique password and should be kept confidential. Do not leave this number anywhere in your vehicle.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

*** NOTICE**

When starting the engine, do not use the key with other immobilizer keys around. Otherwise the engine may not start or may stop soon after it starts. Keep each key separately in order to avoid a starting malfunction.

⚡ CAUTION

Do not put metal accessories near the ignition switch. Metal accessories may interrupt the transponder signal and may prevent the engine from being started.

*** NOTICE**

We recommend that you consult an authorized Kia dealer.

⚡ CAUTION

The transponder in your ignition key is an important part of the immobilizer system. It is designed to give years of trouble-free service, however you should avoid exposure to moisture, static electricity and rough handling. Immobilizer system malfunction could occur.

⚡ CAUTION

Do not change, alter or adjust the immobilizer system because it could cause the immobilizer system to malfunction. We recommend that the system be serviced by an authorized Kia dealer. Malfunctions caused by improper alterations, adjustments or modifications to the immobilizer system are not covered by your vehicle manufacturer warranty.

REMOTE KEYLESS ENTRY (IF EQUIPPED)



OPU026066L

Remote keyless entry system operations

Lock (1)

1. Close all doors.
2. Press the lock button.
3. The hazard warning light will blink once to indicate that all doors are locked.

Unlock (2)

1. Press the unlock button.
2. The hazard warning lights will blink twice to indicate that all doors are unlocked.

*** NOTICE**

After unlocking all doors, the doors will lock automatically unless a door is opened within 30 seconds.

Transmitter precautions

*** NOTICE**

The transmitter will not work if any of following occur:

- The ignition key is in ignition switch.
 - You exceed the operating distance limit (about 10 m [30 feet]).
 - The battery in the transmitter is weak.
 - Other vehicles or objects may be blocking the signal.
 - The weather is extremely cold.
 - The transmitter is close to a radio transmitter such as a radio station or an airport which can interfere with normal operation of the transmitter.
- When the transmitter does not work properly, open and close the door with the ignition key. If you have a problem with the transmitter, we recommend that you contact an authorized Kia dealer.

(Continued)

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

(Continued)

- If the transmitter is in close proximity to your cell phone or smart phone, the signal from the transmitter could be blocked by normal operation of your cell phone or smart phone. This is especially important when the phone is active such as making call, receiving calls, text messaging, and/or sending/receiving emails. Avoid placing the transmitter and your cell phone or smart phone in the same pants or jacket pocket and maintain adequate distance between the two devices.

CAUTION

- **Keep the transmitter away from water or any liquid. If the keyless entry system is inoperative due to exposure to water or liquids, it will not be covered by your manufacturer vehicle warranty.**
- **Keep the transmitter away from electromagnetic materials that blocks electromagnetic waves to the key surface.**

CAUTION

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. If the keyless entry system is inoperative due to changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance, it will not be covered by your manufacturer's vehicle warranty.



Battery replacement

The transmitter uses a 3 volt lithium battery which will normally last for several years. When replacement is necessary, use the following procedure.

1. Insert a slim tool into the slot and gently pry open the transmitter center cover (1).
2. Replace the battery with new one. When replacing the battery, make sure the battery position.
3. Install the battery in the reverse order of removal.

For replacement transmitters, we recommend that you contact an authorized Kia dealer.

⚡ CAUTION

- *The keyless entry system transmitter is designed to give you years of trouble-free use, however it can malfunction if exposed to moisture or static electricity. If you are unsure how to use your transmitter or replace the battery, we recommend that you contact an authorized Kia dealer.*
- *Using the wrong battery can cause the transmitter to malfunction. Be sure to use the correct battery.*
- *To avoid damaging the transmitter, don't drop it, get it wet, or expose it to heat or sunlight.*

⚡ CAUTION

An inappropriately disposed battery can be harmful to the environment and human health. Dispose the battery according to your local law(s) or regulation.

1

2

3

4

5

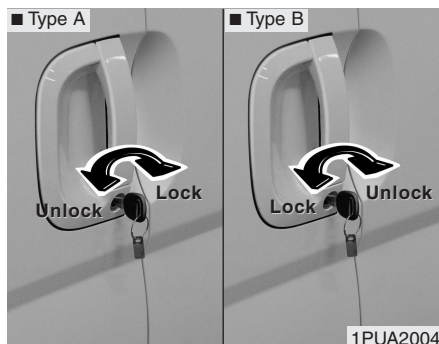
6

7

8

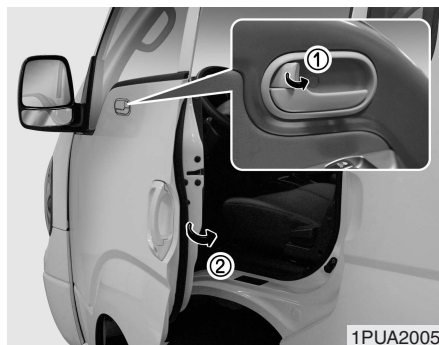
9

DOOR LOCKS



Operating door locks from outside the vehicle

- Turn the key toward rear of vehicle to lock and toward front of vehicle to unlock.
- Once the doors are unlocked, it may be opened by pulling the door handle.
- When closing the door, push the door by the hand. Make sure that doors are closed securely.



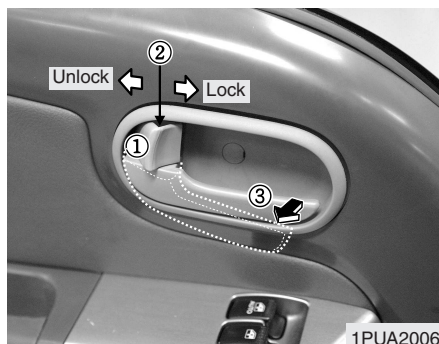
To lock a door without the key, push the inside door lock button (①) to the “Lock” position and close the door (②).

* NOTICE

Always remove the ignition key, engage the parking brake, close all windows and lock all doors when leaving your vehicle unattended.

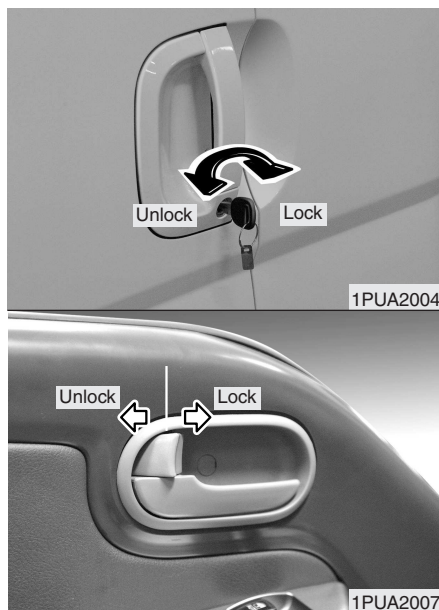
* NOTICE

If the door is locked/unlocked multiple times in rapid succession with either the vehicle key or door lock button, the system may stop operating temporarily in order to protect the circuit and prevent damage to system components.



Operating door locks from inside the vehicle

- To unlock a door, push the door lock button to the “Unlock” position.
- To lock a door, push the door lock button (①) to the “Lock” position. If the door is locked, red part (②) of the knob becomes invisible.
- To open a door, pull the door handle (③).



Central door lock system (if equipped)

If you lock/unlock the driver's door with a key or door lock button, front doors will lock/unlock automatically.

CAUTION

- *The doors should always be fully closed and locked while the vehicle is in motion to prevent accidental opening of the door. Locked doors will also discourage potential intruders when the vehicle stops or slows.*
- *Be careful when opening doors and watch for vehicles, motorcycles, bicycles or pedestrians approaching the vehicle in the path of the door. Opening a door when something is approaching can cause damage or injury.*

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

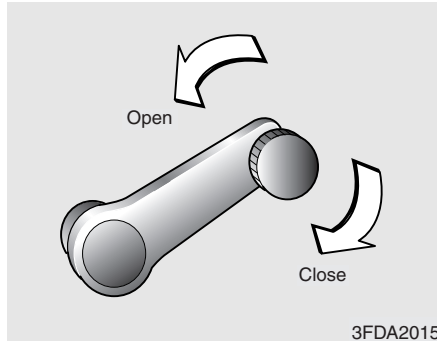
WARNING

Leaving your vehicle unlocked can invite theft or possible harm to you or others from someone hiding in your vehicle while you are gone. Always remove the ignition key, engage the parking brake, close all windows and lock all doors when leaving your vehicle unattended.

WARNING - Unattended children

An enclosed vehicle can become extremely hot, causing death or severe injury to unattended children or animals who cannot escape the vehicle. Furthermore, children might operate features of the vehicle that could injure them, or they could encounter other harm, possibly from someone gaining entry to the vehicle. Never leave children or animals unattended in your vehicle.

WINDOWS



Manual windows (if equipped)

Use the window crank to open and close each window.

* NOTICE

If you notice buffeting and pulsation (wind shock) with either side window open, you should open the opposite window slightly to reduce the condition.

Power windows (if equipped)

The ignition switch must be in the ON position for power windows to operate. Front doors have a power window switch that controls that door's window.

* NOTICE

To prevent the power window system from the possibility of damage, do not open or close two windows at the same time. This will also ensure the longevity of the fuse.

CAUTION

- ***Make sure heads and hands are safely out of the way before closing a window.***
- ***Do not allow children to play with the power windows. Serious injury can result from unintentional window operation by the child.***
- ***Do not extend face or arms outside through the window opening while driving.***
- ***Always double check to make sure all arms, hands and other obstructions are safely out of the way before closing a window.***

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9



Power window timer (if equipped)

The power windows can be operated for approximately 30 seconds after the ignition key is removed or turned to the ACC or LOCK position. However, if the front doors are opened, the power windows cannot be operated even within the 30 seconds after the ignition key removal.

Window opening and closing

The driver's door has a master power window switch that controls the front windows in the vehicle. To open or close a window, press down (1) or pull up (1) the front portion of the corresponding switch.

SEAT

⚠ WARNING

- Loose objects in the driver's foot area could interfere with the operation of the foot pedals, possibly causing an accident. Loose objects might interfere with the seat slide mechanism. Do not place anything under the front seats.
- Children should never be left unattended in the car.
- Use extreme caution when picking small objects trapped under the seats or between the seat and the center console. Your hands might be cut or injured by the sharp edges of the seat mechanism.

⚠ WARNING - Driver's seat

- Never attempt to adjust seat while the vehicle is moving. This could result in loss of control, and an accident causing death, serious injury, or property damage.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- Do not allow anything to interfere with the normal position of the seatback. Storing items against a seatback or in any other way interfering with proper locking of a seatback could result in serious or fatal injury in a sudden stop or collision.
- Always drive and ride with your seatback upright and the lap portion of the safety belt, or lap belt, snug and low across the hips. This position puts your safety belts in the best position to protect you in case of an accident.

Front seat adjustment

Adjust the seat before driving, and make sure the seat is locked securely by trying to move forward and backward without using the control lever. If the seat moves, it is not locked properly.

***Adjusting the seat forward and backward (driver's seat)***

To move the seat forward or backward:

1. Pull the seat slide adjustment lever under the front edge of the seat cushion up and hold it.
2. Slide the seat to the position you desire.
3. Release the lever and make sure the seat is locked in place.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

1

2

3

4

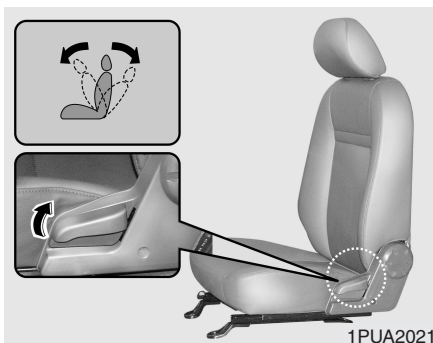
5

6

7

8

9



Adjusting the seatback recliner (if equipped)

To recline the seatback:

1. Lean forward slightly and lift up on the seatback recline lever located on the outside of the seat, at the rear.
2. Carefully lean back on the seat and adjust the seatback to the position you desire.
3. Release the lever and make sure the seatback is locked in place. (The lever **MUST** return to its original position for the seatback to lock.)

⚠ WARNING

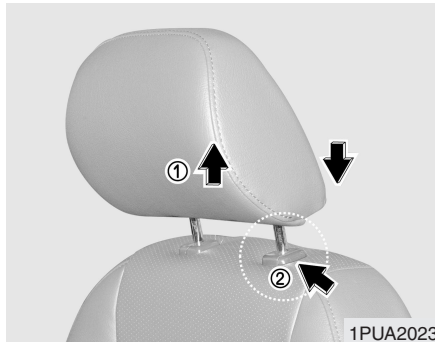
Driving or riding in a vehicle with a front seatback reclined could lead to serious or fatal injury in an accident. If a front seat is reclined during an accident, the occupant's hips may slide under the lap portion of the safety belt applying great force to the unprotected abdomen or neck. Serious or fatal internal injuries could result. Keep the seatbacks in a comfortably upright position whenever the vehicle is in motion.



Lumbar support (for driver's seat, if equipped)

The lumbar support can be adjusted by pressing the lumbar support switch on the side of the seat.

1. Press the front portion of the switch to increase support, or the rear portion of the switch, to decrease support.
2. Release the switch once it reaches the desired position.

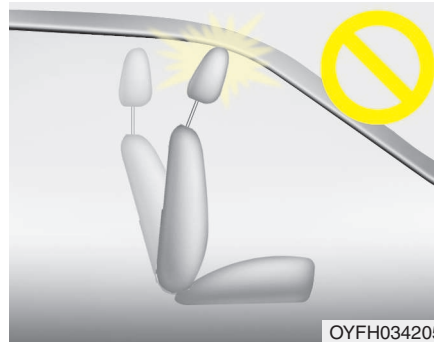


Headrest adjustment

Adjusting the height up and down

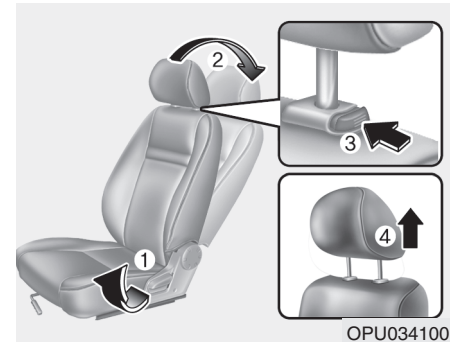
The headrest not only provides comfort for the driver and passengers, but also helps to protect the head and neck in the event of a collision.

To raise the headrest, pull it up to the desired position. To lower the headrest, push and hold the release button on the headrest support and lower the headrest to the desired position. For best protection, adjust the headrest so its center is as high as your ears.



CAUTION

If you recline the seatback towards the front with the headrest and seat cushion raised, the headrest may come in contact with the sunvisor or other parts of the vehicle.



Removal and installation

To remove the headrest:

1. Recline the seatback (2) with the recline lever (1).
2. Raise headrest as far as it can go.
3. Press the headrest release button (3) while pulling the headrest up (4).

WARNING

NEVER allow anyone to ride in a seat with the headrest removed.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

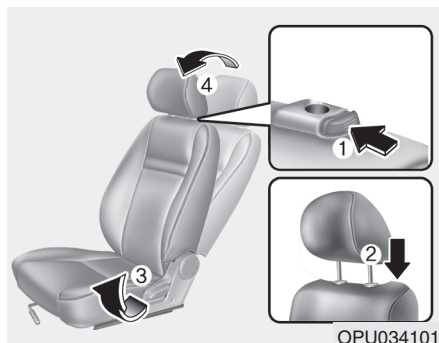
9

1

2

3

4



To reinstall the headrest :

1. Put the headrest poles (2) into the holes while pressing the release button (1).
2. Recline the seatback (4) with the recline lever (3).
3. Adjust the headrest to the appropriate height.

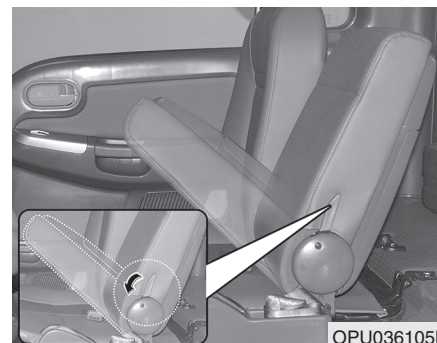
⚠ WARNING

Always make sure the headrest locks into position after reinstalling and adjusting it properly.

⚠ WARNING

To reduce the risk of head and neck injuries, do not drive the vehicle with the headrest removed or improperly positioned.

Do not adjust the driver's headrest while driving.



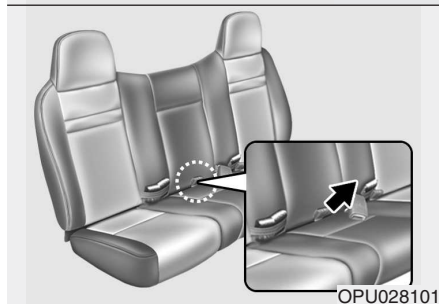
Center seat

To use it as a console box, push down the release lever beside the seat and fold the seatback forward.

To use it as a seat, push down the release lever beside the seat and stand the seatback upright.



OPU028100



OPU028101

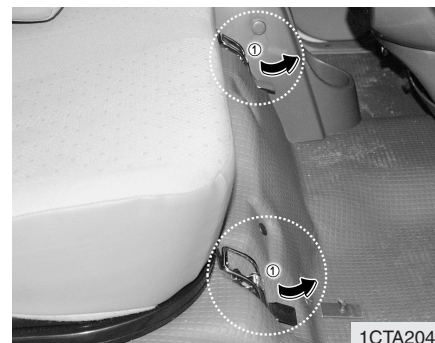
Rear seat cushion under box (if equipped)

There is multipurpose receipt space under the rear seat cushion.

1. Unsnap the clasps at the front of the seat cushion.
2. Raise up the seat cushion at the rear of the seat cushion.

⚠ WARNING

When you return the seat cushion to its original position, make sure the safety belts are in position to be accessible and to function properly.



1CTA2046

Engine room access

Front passenger's seat

To access the engine room under the front passenger's seat,

1. Fold the passenger's seatback and center seatback.
2. Unsnap the clasps (①) at the front of the seat cushion.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

1

2

3

4

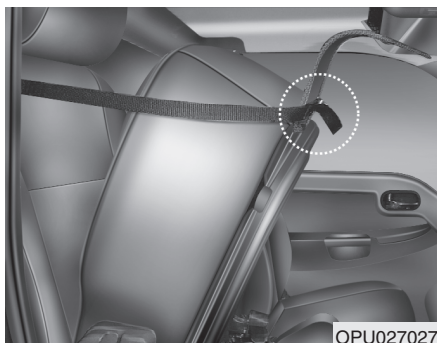
5

6

7

8

9



3. Raise the seat and lock the tie-down strap on the anchor below the passenger's seat to fasten the seat. Use each bezel on the strap to adjust the angle when raising the seat.

⚠ WARNING

Do not leave gloves, rags or any other combustible material in the engine compartment. Doing so may cause a heat-induced fire.

⚠ WARNING - 2.5L Engine

Never work on injection system with engine running or within 30 seconds after shutting off engine. High-pressure pump, rail, injectors and high-pressure pipes are subject to high pressure even after the engine stopped. The fuel jet produced by fuel leaks may cause serious injury, if it touches the body. People using pacemakers should not move than 30cm closer to the ECU or wiring harness within the engine room while engine is running, since the high currents in the electronic engine control system produce considerable magnetic fields.

SAFETY BELTS

Safety belt restraint system

WARNING - Safety belts

- **To minimize the risk of serious or fatal injury in an accident, the driver and all passengers should use the appropriate safety restraints for their age and size.**
- **Never wear a seat belt over fragile objects. If there is a sudden stop or impact, the seat belt can damage it.**

We strongly recommend that the driver and all passengers be properly restrained at all times by using the safety belts provided with the vehicle. Proper use of the safety belts decreases the risk of severe injury or death in accidents or sudden stops.

Front seats have lap/shoulder belts. Inertial locks in the safety belt retractors allow all of the lap/shoulder safety belts to remain unlocked during normal vehicle operation. This allows the occupants some freedom of movement and increased comfort while using the safety belts. If a force is applied to the vehicle, such as a strong stop, a sharp turn, or a collision, the safety belt retractors will automatically lock the safety belts.

Since the inertial locks do not require a collision in order to lock up, you may become aware of the safety belts locking while braking or going around sharp corners.

Safety belts provide the best restraint when:

- The seatback is upright.
- The occupant is sitting upright (not slouched).
- The lap belt is snug across the hips.
- The shoulder belt is snug across the chest.
- The knees are straight forward.

To help you remember to fasten your safety belt, a warning light will come on.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

⚠ WARNING - After a collision

- Lap/shoulder belt assemblies may be stretched or damaged when subjected to the stress and forces of a collision.
- The entire restraint system should be inspected following any collision. All belts, retractors, anchors and hardware damaged by a collision should be replaced before the vehicle is operated again.

⚠ WARNING - Cargo area

Passengers should never be allowed to ride in the cargo area of a vehicle. No safety belts are provided for the cargo area. Persons riding in the vehicle without a fastened safety belt are much more likely to suffer serious bodily injury or death during an accident.

⚠ WARNING - Twisted belts

A twisted or jammed safety belt cannot restrain you properly. If you cannot untwist or unjam the safety belt, we recommend that you contact an authorized Kia dealer. Never drive or ride with a twisted or jammed safety belt.

⚠ WARNING - Belt use

Safety belts must be used correctly to work properly in an accident. Each seating position in your vehicle has a specific safety belt assembly that includes a buckle and tongue designed to be used together.

For greatest effectiveness, follow these guidelines in using safety belts:

- Use the shoulder portion of the safety belt on the outside shoulder only. Never wear the shoulder portion under the arm.
- Never swing the safety belt around your neck to fit over the inside shoulder.
- Never wear the shoulder portion of the safety belt across the neck or face.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- Wear the lap portion as low as possible. Be sure that the lap belt fits snugly around the hips. Never wear a lap portion of a lap/shoulder belt over your waist; it should always go over the stronger area of your hips.
- Never use a single safety belt for more than one person.
- The front seatbacks should always remain in a comfortable, upright position when the vehicle is moving.

⚠ WARNING - Safety belt care

- A damaged belt may not give you the protection you need in an accident.
- Inspect your safety belts periodically for excessive wear or damage. Pull out each belt fully and look for fraying, cuts, burns or other damage. Pull the safety belt out and let it retract a number of times. Make sure that the lap/shoulder belts return smoothly and easily into the retractor.
- Check the latches to make sure they latch and release without interference or delay.
- Never close the doors on any part of the lap or shoulder belt.
- Any belt not in good condition or in good working order should be promptly replaced.

⚡ CAUTION

Never close the doors on any part of the lap or shoulder belt. It can damage the safety belt or buckle which could increase the risk of injury in case of an accident.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

1

2

3

4

5

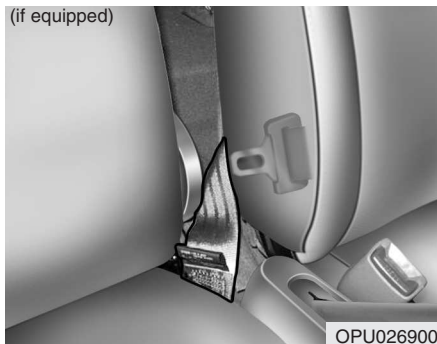
6

7

8

9

(if equipped)



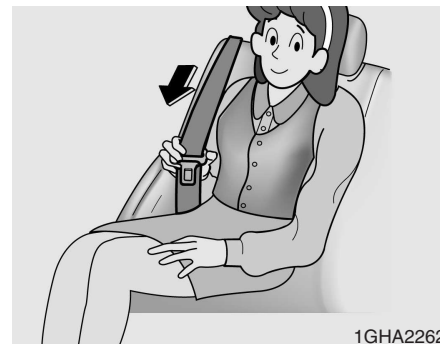
CAUTION

When you fold the center seatback, put the center safety belt into the rear seatback pocket of the driver's seat. Doing so can prevent the safety belt from being damaged by the center seatback.



Safety belt warning light

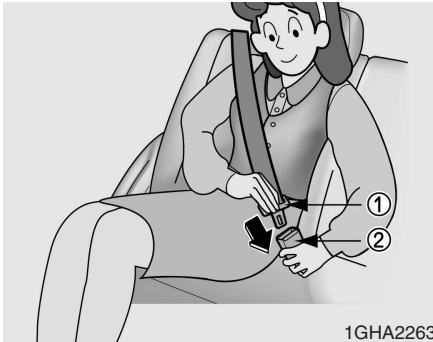
As a reminder to the driver and passenger (if equipped), safety belt warning light will blink and chime will sound (if equipped) for approximately 6 seconds each time you turn the ignition switch ON.



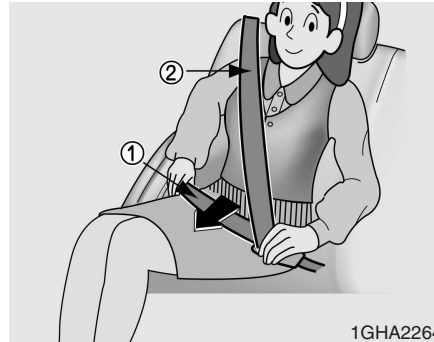
Lap/shoulder belt

To fasten the front lap/shoulder belt:

1. Grasp the buckle and tongue plate.
2. Slowly pull the lap/shoulder belt out from the retractor.



3. Insert the tongue plate (①) into the open end of the buckle (②) until an audible “click” is heard, indicating the belt is locked in the buckle.



4. Position the lap portion (①) of the belt across your lap as **LOW ON THE HIPS** as possible to reduce the risk of sliding under it during an accident. Adjust the belt to a **SNUG FIT** by pulling up on the shoulder portion (②) of the safety belt. The belt retractor is designed to take up excess webbing automatically and to maintain tension on the belt. For your safety, do not put any excess slack into the safety belt at any location.

* NOTICE

If you are not able to pull out the safety belt from the retractor, firmly pull the belt out and release it. Then you will be able to pull the belt out smoothly.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

1

2

3

4

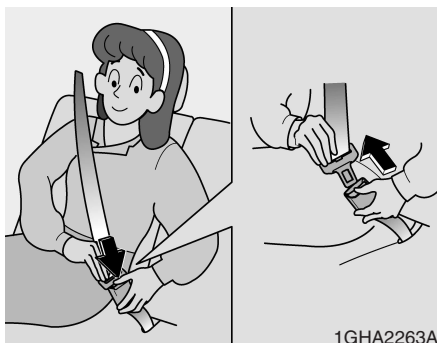
5

6

7

8

9



To unfasten the front lap/shoulder belt:

Press the release button on the buckle and allow the belt to slowly retract.

⚠ WARNING

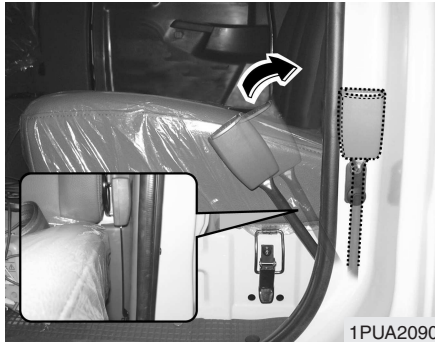
- The seatbacks should always remain in a comfortable, upright position while the vehicle is in motion. The safety belt system will provide the most protection with the seatbacks in an upright position.
- Never wear the shoulder portion of the safety belt under the outside arm or behind the back.
- Never wear the shoulder portion of the safety belt across the neck or face.
- Wear the lap portion of the safety belt as low on the hips as possible. Be sure the lap belt fits snugly around the hips. Never wear the lap belt over your waist.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- Never drive or ride with a twisted or jammed safety belt. If you cannot untwist or unjam the safety belt, we recommend that you contact an authorized Kia dealer.
- Never use a single belt to restrain more than one person at a time.

Failure to follow these warnings will increase the risk and severity of injury in an accident.

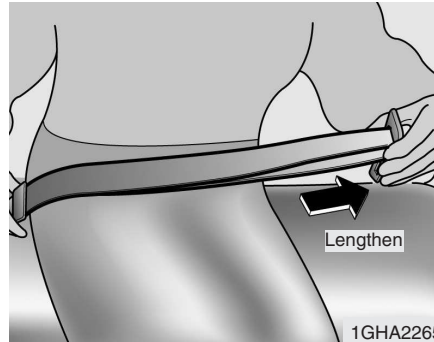


**Rear seat safety belt
(for DOUBLE CAB model)**

⚠ WARNING

When you do not fasten the safety belts on the outsides of the rear seats, keep the buckle in an upright position towards the back of the seat to maintain it safely.

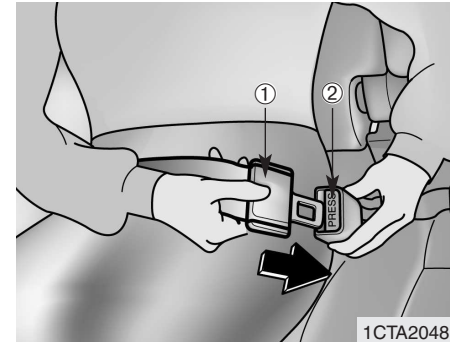
Doing so can prevent the buckle from being damaged causing serious or fatal injuries in an accident.



Lap belt (if equipped)

To fasten the lap belt:

1. Grasp the tongue plate end and pull it low over the abdomen.



2. Insert the tongue plate (①) into the open end of the buckle (②) until an audible “click” is heard, indicating the latch is locked. Make sure the belt is not twisted.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

1

2

3

4

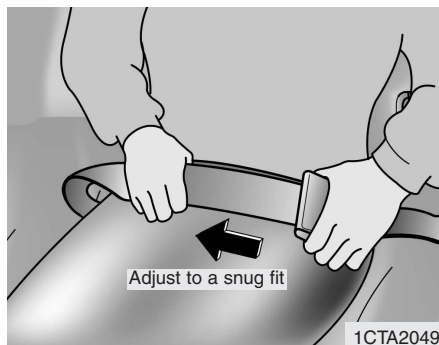
5

6

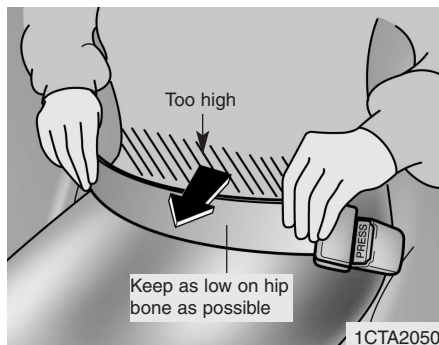
7

8

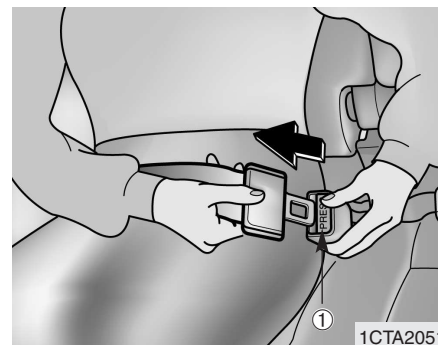
9



3. Grasp the free portion of the belt webbing and pull until the belt is snug over the hips and lower abdomen. If it becomes necessary to lengthen or shorten the belt, hold the latch plate tongue at right angles to the webbing and pull.



4. Make sure that the belt is placed as **LOW ON THE HIPS** as possible.



To unfasten the lap belt:

Press the release button (1) on buckle.

⚠ WARNING - Lap belt

Be sure the lap belt is positioned snugly around the hips, and not on the waist. Failure to position the lap belt snugly around the hips will increase the chance and severity of injury in the event of a collision.

Proper use and care of the safety belt system

To ensure that the safety belts provide the maximum protection, please follow these instructions:

- Use the belts at all times - even on short trips.
- If the safety belt is twisted, straighten it prior to use.
- Keep sharp edges and damaging objects away from the belts.
- Periodically inspect belt webbing, anchors, buckles and all other parts for signs of wear and damage. Replace damaged, excessively worn or questionable parts immediately.

- To clean the belt webbing, use a mild soap solution recommended for cleaning upholstery or carpets. Follow the instructions provided with the soap.
- Do not make modifications or additions to the safety belt.
- After wearing a safety belt, make sure it fully retracts to the stowed position. Do not allow the belt to get caught in the door when you close it.

WARNING

Do not bleach or dye the webbing because this may weaken the webbing fibers and allow them to fail when loaded in a collision.

Restraint of pregnant women

Pregnant women should wear lap/shoulder belt assemblies whenever possible according to specific recommendations by their doctors. The lap portion of the belt should be worn **AS SNUGLY AND LOW AS POSSIBLE**.

WARNING - Pregnant women

Pregnant women must never place the lap portion of the safety belt over the area of the abdomen where the fetus is located or above the abdomen where the belt could crush the fetus during an impact.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

Restraint of infants and small children

1

To increase their safety, infants and young children should always be restrained by a restraint system approved for their age and size.

2

Never allow a child to stand or kneel on the seat of a moving vehicle. Never allow a safety belt to be placed around both a child and an adult or around two children at the same time.

3

It is best for children to be seated in the rear seat.

4

5

6

7

8

9

WARNING - Children on laps

Never hold a child on your lap or in your arms in a moving vehicle.

Even a very strong person cannot hold onto a child in the event of even a minor collision.

CAUTION - Hot metal parts

Safety belts and seats can become hot in a vehicle that has been closed during warm/hot weather; they could burn a child. Check seat covers and buckles before you place a child anywhere near them.

Many companies manufacture child restraint systems (often called child seats) for infants and small children. An acceptable child restraint system must always satisfy the Safety Standards of your country. Make sure that any child-restraint system you use in your vehicle is labelled as complying with those safety standards.

The child-restraint system should be chosen to fit both the size of the child and the size of the vehicle seat. Be sure to follow any instructions provided by the child-restraint system manufacturer when installing the child-restraint system.

Restraint of larger children

As children grow, they may need to use new child-restraint systems, including larger child seats or booster seats, which are appropriate for their increased size.

A child who has outgrown available child-restraint systems should use the belts provided in the vehicle. When seated in the rear outboard seats, the child should be restrained by the lap/shoulder belt.

If the shoulder belt portion slightly touches the child's neck or face, try placing the child closer to the center of the vehicle. If the shoulder belt still touches their face or neck they may need to be returned to a child restraint system. In addition, after-market devices are available from independent manufacturers which help pull the shoulder belt down and away from the child's face or neck.

WARNING - Shoulder belts on small children

- **Never allow a shoulder belt to be in contact with a child's neck or face while the vehicle is in motion.**
- **If safety belts are not properly worn and adjusted, there is a risk of death or serious injury to such a child.**

Installation on the rear seats

WARNING

- **Before installing the child restraint system, read the instructions supplied by the child restraint system manufacturer.**
- **Failure to observe this manual instructions regarding child restraint system and the instructions provided with the child restraint system could increase the chance and/or severity of injury in an accident.**
- **If the child restraint seat is not anchored properly, the risk of a child being seriously injured or killed in a collision greatly increases.**

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

1

2

3

4

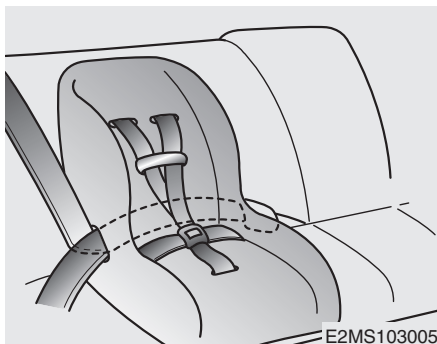
5

6

7

8

9



Installing a child restraint system by lap/shoulder belt (on the outboard rear seat)

To install a child restraint system on the outboard rear seat, do the following:

1. Place the child restraint system in the desired position.
2. Extend the shoulder/lap belt from its retractor.



3. Route the lap/shoulder belt through the restraint according to the seat manufacturer's instructions.



4. Buckle the seat belt and allow the seat belt to take up any slack. After installation of the child restraint system, try to move it in all directions to be sure the child restraint system is securely installed.

If you need to tighten the belt, pull more webbing toward the retractor. When you unbuckle the seat belt and allow it to retract, the retractor will automatically revert back to its normal seated passenger emergency locking usage condition.

Child seat restraint suitability for seat position using the seat belt - For Europe

Use child safety seats that have been officially approved and are appropriate for your children. When using the child safety seats, refer to the following table.

Age group	Seating Position			
	1st row passenger	1st row center	2nd row outboards	2nd row center
0 : Up to 10 kg (0 to 9 months)	X	X	UF	X
0+ : Up to 13 kg (0 to 2 years)	X	X	UF	X
I : 9 kg to 18 kg (9 months to 4 years)	X	X	UF	X
II&III : 15 kg to 36 kg (4 to 12 years)	X	X	UF	X

X : Seat position not suitable for children in this mass group

UF: Suitable for forward-facing "universal" category restraints approved for use in this mass group

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9



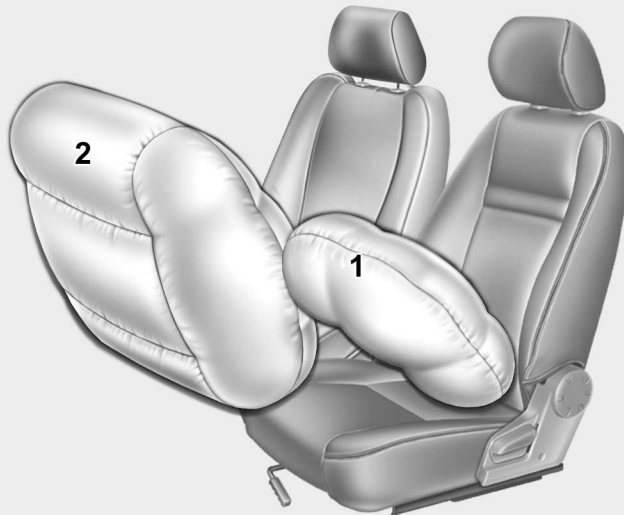
Installing a child restraint system by lap belt (on the center rear seat) (if equipped-Except Europe)

To install a child restraint system on the center rear seats, do the following:

1. Place the child restraint system on the center rear seat.
2. Extend the latch plate tongue of the lap belt.

3. Route the lap belt through the restraint according to the seat manufacturer's instructions.
4. Buckle the seat belt and adjust the lap belt for a snug hold on the child restraint by pulling on the loose end of the belt. After installation of the child restraint system, try to move it in all directions to be sure the child restraint system is securely installed.

AIR BAG - SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)



* The actual air bag in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

OJK034068

- (1) Driver's air bag*
- (2) Passenger's air bag*
- * : if equipped

⚠ WARNING

- Even in vehicles with air bag, you must always wear the safety belts provided in order to minimize the risk and severity of injury in the event of a collision or rollover.
- SRS and pretensioners contain explosive chemicals.
If scraping a vehicle without removing SRS and pretensioners from a vehicle, it may cause fire. Before scraping a vehicle, we recommend that you contact an authorized Kia dealer.
- Keep the SRS parts and wirings away from water or any liquid. If the SRS components are inoperative due to exposure to water or liquids, it may cause fire or severe injury.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

How does the air bag system operate

- Air bag is activated (able to inflate if necessary) only when the ignition switch is turned to the ON or START position.
- Air bag inflates instantly in the event of serious frontal in order to help protect the occupants from serious physical injury.

- There is no single speed at which the air bag will inflate.

Generally, air bag is designed to inflate based upon the severity of a collision and its direction. These two factors determine whether the sensors produce an electronic deployment/ inflation signal.

- Air bag deployment depends on a number of factors including vehicle speed, angles of impact and the density and stiffness of the vehicles or objects which your vehicle hits in the collision. The determining, factors are not limited to those mentioned above.

- The front air bag will completely inflate and deflate in an instant.

It is virtually impossible for you to see the air bag inflates during an accident. It is much more likely that you will simply see the deflated air bag hanging out of their storage compartments after the collision.

- In order to help provide protection in a severe collision, the air bag must inflate rapidly. The speed of air bag inflation is a consequence of extremely short time in which a collision occurs and the need to get the air bag between the occupant and the vehicle structures before the occupant impacts those structures. This speed of inflation reduces the risk of serious or life-threatening injuries in a severe collision and is thus a necessary part of air bag design.

However, air bag inflation can also cause injuries which can include facial abrasions, bruises and broken bones because the inflation speed also causes the air bag to expand with a great deal of force.

- There are even circumstances under which contact with the steering wheel air bag can cause fatal injuries, especially if the occupant is positioned excessively close to the steering wheel.

⚠ WARNING

- To avoid severe personal injury or death caused by deploying air bag in a collision, the driver should sit as far back from the steering wheel air bag as possible (at least 250 mm (10 inches) away).
- Air bag inflation may cause injuries including facial or bodily abrasions, injuries from broken glasses or burns.

Noise and smoke

When the air bag inflates, they make a loud noise and they leave smoke and powder in the air inside of the vehicle. This is normal and is a result of the ignition of the air bag inflator. After the air bag inflates, you may feel substantial discomfort in breathing due to the contact of your chest with both the seat belt and the air bag, as well as from breathing the smoke and powder. **Open your doors and/or windows as soon as possible after impact in order to reduce discomfort and prevent prolonged exposure to the smoke and powder.**

Though smoke and powder are non-toxic, it may cause irritation to the skin (eyes, nose and throat, etc.). If this is the case, wash and rinse with cold water immediately and consult the doctor if the symptom persists.



W7-147

Air bag warning light

The purpose of the air bag warning light in your instrument panel is to alert you of a potential problem with your air bag - Supplemental Restraint System (SRS).

When the ignition switch is turned ON, the warning light should illuminate for approximately 6 seconds, then go off.

Have the system checked if:

- The light does not turn on briefly when you turn the ignition ON.
- The light stays on after illuminating for approximately 6 seconds.
- The light comes on while the vehicle is in motion.

⚠ WARNING

When the air bag deploys, the air bag related parts in the steering wheel is very hot. To prevent injury, do not touch the air bag storage areas internal components immediately after an air bag has inflated.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

Driver's air bag



OPU022447

Driver's air bag (if equipped)

Your vehicle is equipped with a Supplemental Restraint (Air Bag) System and lap/shoulder belts at the driver seating positions.

The indications of the system's presence are the letters "AIR BAG" embossed on the air bag pad cover in the steering wheel.

The SRS consists of air bag installed under the pad covers in the center of the steering wheel.

The purpose of the SRS is to provide the vehicle's driver with additional protection than that offered by the seat belt system alone in case of a frontal impact of sufficient severity.

⚠ WARNING

- If an air bag deploys, there may be a loud noise followed by a fine dust released in the vehicle. These conditions are normal and are not hazardous - the air bag is packed in this fine powder. The dust generated during air bag deployment may cause skin or eye irritation as well as aggravate asthma for some persons. Always wash all exposed skin areas thoroughly with cold water and a mild soap after an accident in which the air bag was deployed.
- The SRS can function only when the ignition switch is in the ON position.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- Before you replace a fuse or disconnect a battery terminal, turn the ignition switch to the LOCK position and remove the ignition key. Never remove or replace the air bag related fuse(s) when the ignition switch is in the ON position. Failure to heed this warning will cause the SRS air bag warning light to illuminate.

Why didn't my air bag go off in a collision? (Inflation and non-inflation conditions of the air bag)

There are many types of accidents in which the air bag would not be expected to provide additional protection.

These include rear impacts, side impacts, rollover, second or third collisions in multiple impact accidents, as well as low speed impacts.



Air bag collision sensors

- (1) SRS control module
- (2) Front impact sensor

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

⚠ WARNING

- Do not hit or allow any objects to impact the locations where air bag or sensors are installed. This may cause unexpected air bag deployment, which could result in serious personal injury or death.

- If the installation location or angle of the sensors is altered in any way, the air bag may deploy when they should not or they may not deploy when they should, causing severe injury or death.

Therefore, do not try to perform maintenance on or around the air bag sensors. We recommend that the system be checked and repaired by an authorized Kia dealer.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- Problems may arise if the sensor installation angles are changed due to the deformation of the front bumper or body. We recommend that the system be checked and repaired by an authorized Kia dealer.
- Your vehicle has been designed to absorb impact and deploy the air bag in certain collisions. Installing aftermarket bumper guards or replacing a bumper with non-genuine parts may adversely affect your vehicles collision and air bag deployment performance.



OHR012031

Air bag inflation conditions

Front air bag is designed to inflate in a frontal collision depending on the intensity, speed or angles of impact of the front collision.



Air bag non-inflation conditions

- In certain low-speed collisions the air bag may not deploy. The air bag is designed not to deploy in such cases because they may not provide benefits beyond the protection of the seat belts in such collisions.



- Air bag is not designed to inflate in rear collisions, because occupants are moved backward by the force of the impact. In this case, inflated air bag would not be able to provide any additional benefit.



- Front air bag may not inflate in side impact collisions, because occupants move to the direction of the collision, and thus in side impacts, frontal air bag deployment would not provide additional occupant protection.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

1

2

3

4

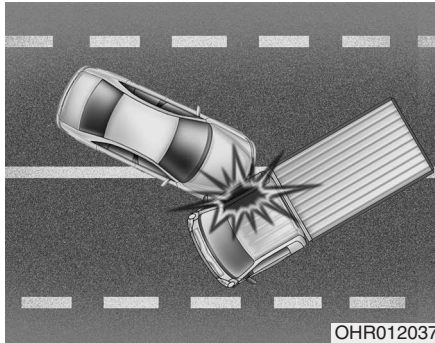
5

6

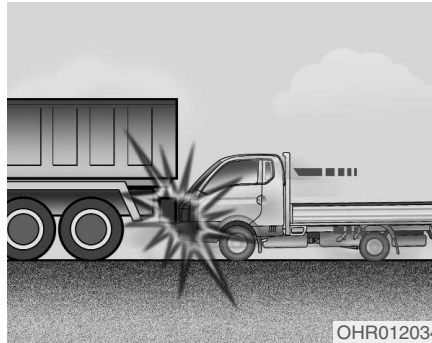
7

8

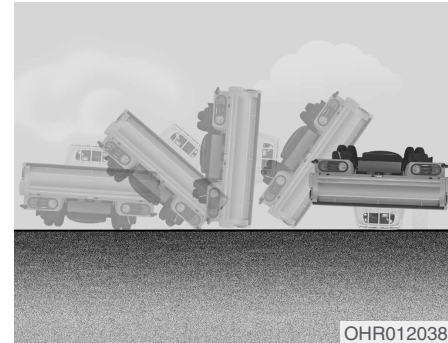
9



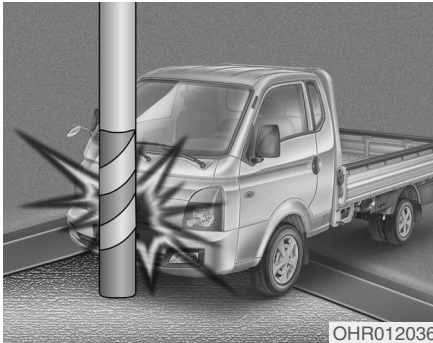
- In a slant or angled collision, the force of impact may direct the occupants in a direction where the air bag would not be able to provide any additional benefit, and thus the sensors may not deploy any air bag.



- Just before impact, drivers often brake heavily. Such heavy braking lowers the front portion of the vehicle causing it to "ride" under a vehicle with a higher ground clearance. Air bag may not inflate in this "under-ride" situation because deceleration forces that are detected by sensors may be significantly reduced by such "under-ride" collisions.



- Airbag do not inflate in most rollover accidents.



OHR012036

- Air bag may not inflate if the vehicle collides with objects such as utility poles or trees, where the point of impact is concentrated to one area and the full force of the impact is not delivered to the sensors.

SRS Care

The SRS is virtually maintenance-free and so there are no parts you can safely service by yourself. If the SRS air bag warning light does not illuminate when you turn the ignition ON, or if it continuously remains on, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.

Improper handling of the SRS system may result in serious personal injury.

⚠ WARNING

- **Modification to SRS components or wiring, including the addition of any kind of badges to the pad covers or modifications to the body structure, can adversely affect SRS performance and lead to possible injury.**
- **For cleaning the air bag pad covers, use only a soft, dry cloth or one which has been moistened with plain water. Solvents or cleaners could adversely affect the air bag covers and proper deployment of the system.**
- **No objects should be placed over or near the air bag modules on the steering wheel, instrument panel, and the front passenger's panel above the glove box, because any such object could cause harm if the vehicle is in a crash severe enough to cause the air bag to inflate.**

(Continued)

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

(Continued)

- If the air bags inflate, we recommend that the system be replaced by an authorized Kia dealer.
- Do not tamper with or disconnect SRS wiring, or other components of the SRS system. Doing so could result in injury, due to accidental inflation of the air bag or by rendering the SRS inoperative.
- If components of the air bag system must be discarded, or if the vehicle must be scrapped, certain safety precautions must be observed. An authorized Kia dealer knows these precautions and can give you the necessary information. Failure to follow these precautions and procedures could increase the risk of personal injury.
- If your car was flooded and has soaked carpeting or water on the flooring, you shouldn't try to start the engine; we recommend that you contact an authorized Kia dealer.

WARNING

- Sitting improperly or out of position can cause occupants to be shifted too close to a deploying air bag, strike the interior structure or be thrown from the vehicle resulting in serious injury or death.
- Always sit upright with the seatback in an upright position, centered on the seat cushion with your seat belt on, legs comfortably extended and your feet on the floor.

Adding equipment to or modifying your air bag-equipped vehicle

If you modify your vehicle by changing your vehicle's frame, bumper system, front end or side sheet metal or ride height, this may affect the operation of your vehicle's air bag system.

HOOD



Opening the hood:

1. Pull the release lever on the lower left side of the instrument panel to unlatch the hood. The hood should pop open slightly.



2. Go to the front of the vehicle, raise the hood slightly, pull the secondary latch inside of the hood center and lift the hood.
3. Lift the hood and hold it open with the support rod by inserting the free end of the rod into the slot.

Closing the hood

1. Before closing the hood, check the following:
 - All filler caps in the under hood area must be correctly installed.
 - Jack must be secured in its retainer to prevent it from rattling **(for 1Ton only)**.
2. Secure the support rod in its clip.
3. Lower the hood to about 30 cm (12 inches) height and then let it drop to properly lock in place.

Make sure the hood is properly locked before driving.
4. Check that the hood has engaged properly. If the hood can be raised slightly, it is not properly engaged. Open it again and close it with a little more force.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

REAR GATE

1

2

3

4



Opening the rear gate

1. Lift up the rear gate handle, push it inside and pull it toward you.
2. Lower the rear gate slowly with it received on both arms.

⚠ WARNING

When the rear combination lamps are hidden, other road users should be warned by means of warning triangle or other devices.



Closing the rear gate

Lift the rear gate up and lock the rear gate handle in place.

Make sure the rear gate is properly locked before driving.

⚠ WARNING

- Do not open the rear gate, while the vehicle is in motion.
- Fasten rope into the rope hook securely not to loosen the rope while the vehicle is in motion.

SIDE GATE



Opening the side gate

1. With the rear gate opened, pull up the knob to release the support bar down.



2. Remove the side gate handle from the hook after pulling it up.
3. Lower the side gate slowly with it received on both arms.

Closing the side gate

1. Lift the side gate up and lock the side gate handle in place.
2. Push the knob down to lock the side gates.

⚠ WARNING

When locking the side gate handle, be careful not to get your fingers into the chink in the handle.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

FUEL FILLER



1. Stop the engine.
2. Insert the key (1) and turn the key counterclockwise (if equipped).
3. To remove the cap, turn the fuel tank cap counterclockwise.
4. Refuel as needed.
5. To install the cap, turn it clockwise until it “clicks”. This indicates that the cap is securely tightened.

⚠ WARNING - Refueling

- If pressurized fuel sprays out, it can cause serious injuries. Always remove the fuel cap carefully and slowly. If the cap is venting fuel or if you hear a hissing sound, wait until the condition stops before completely removing the cap.
- Fuel vapor is very hazardous and can explode. When refueling, always stop the engine. Never allow sparks or open flames near the filler neck. Always put out cigarettes and other smoking materials before refueling.

*** NOTICE**

- Make sure to refuel with diesel fuel only for the diesel engine vehicles.
- Check to make sure the fuel filler cap is securely closed after refueling.
- If the fuel filler cap requires replacement, use only a genuine Kia cap or the equivalent specified for your vehicle. An incorrect fuel filler cap can result in a serious malfunction of the fuel system or emission control system. We recommend that caps be replaced by an authorized Kia dealer.
- Do not spill fuel on the exterior surfaces of the vehicle. Any type of fuel spilled on painted surfaces may damage the paint.

MIRRORS

Outside rearview mirror

Be sure to adjust mirror angles before driving.

Your vehicle is equipped with both left-hand and right-hand outside rearview mirrors. The mirror heads can be folded back to prevent damage during an automatic car wash or when passing in a narrow street.

CAUTION

- *The outside rearview mirror is convex. Objects seen in the mirror are closer than they appear.*
- *Use your interior rearview mirror or direct observation to determine the actual distance of following vehicles when changing lanes.*

*** NOTICE**

Do not scrape ice off the mirror face; this may damage the surface of the glass. If ice should restrict movement of the mirror, do not force the mirror for adjustment. To remove ice, use a deicer spray, or a sponge or soft cloth with very warm water.



1PUA2034

Manual type

To adjust an outside mirror, move the mirror.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

1

2

3

4

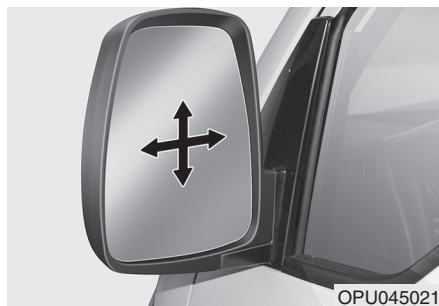
5

6

7

8

9



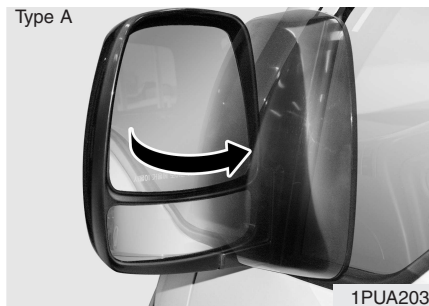
OPU045021



OPU026072

Electric type (if equipped)

The electric remote control mirror switch allows you to adjust the position of the left and right outside rearview mirrors. To adjust the position of either mirror, select the right side mirror or the left side mirror, then press a corresponding point (●) on the mirror adjustment control to position the selected mirror up, down, left or right.



1PUA2036



OPU026510L

Folding the outside rearview mirror

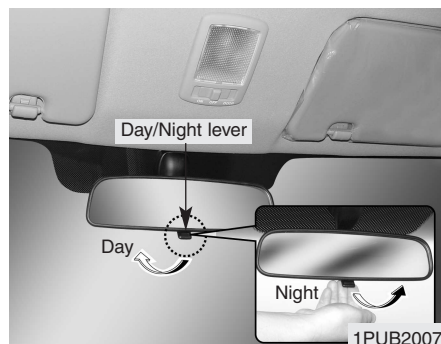
- For Type A

To fold outside rearview mirror, grasp the housing of mirror and then fold it toward the rear of the vehicle.

- For Type B

The outside rearview mirror can be folded or unfolded by pressing the switch as below.

- Folding : When you push the switch, switch indicator is illuminated.
- Unfolding : When you push the switch, switch indicator is not illuminated.

**Day/Night rearview mirror
(if equipped)**

Make this adjustment before you start driving and while the day/night lever is in the day position.

Pull the day/night lever toward you to reduce glare from the headlights of vehicles behind you during night driving.

Remember that you lose some rearview clarity in the night position.

1

2

3

4

5

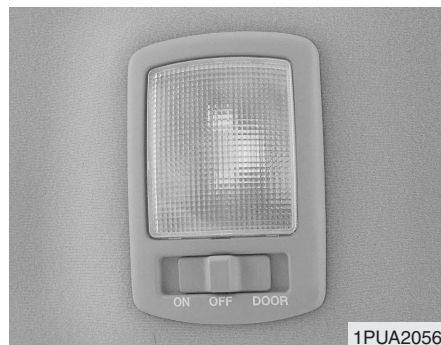
6

7

8

9

INTERIOR LIGHTS



- ① ON - The light turns on and stays on even when the doors are all closed.
- ② OFF - The light stays off even when a door is open.
- ③ DOOR - The light turns on or off when a door is opened or closed.

STORAGE COMPARTMENT

These compartments can be used to store small items required by the driver or passengers.

* NOTICE

- To avoid possible theft, do not leave valuables in the storage compartment.
- Since stored items may move while driving, be sure to position them in the storage compartment so that they do not make noise or cause a potential safety hazard when the vehicle is moving.

⚠ WARNING

Do not store cigarette lighters, propane cylinders, or other flammable/explosive materials in the vehicle. These items may catch fire and/or explode if the vehicle is exposed to hot temperatures for extended periods.



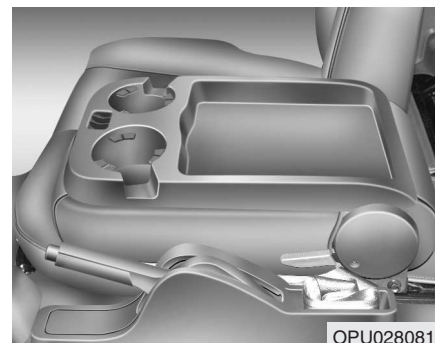
Glove box

To open the glove box, pull the handle (1) and the glove box will automatically open (2). Close the glove box after use.

For your convenience, a tissue holder is located in the glove box cover.

⚡ CAUTION

To reduce the risk of injury in case of an accident or sudden stop, always keep the glove box door closed while driving.



Center seatback console tray (if equipped)

The tray is used for storing cassette tapes or small articles.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

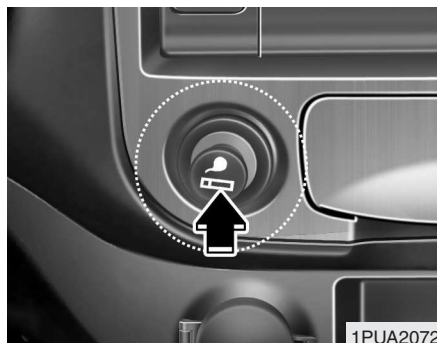
INTERIOR FEATURES

1

2

3

4



Cigarette lighter

To operate the cigarette lighter, press it in and release it. When it is heated, it automatically pops out ready for use.

If the engine is not running, the ignition switch must be in the ACC position for the lighter to operate.

* NOTICE

- Do not hold the lighter in after it is already heated because it will overheat.
- Only a genuine Kia lighter should be used in the cigarette lighter socket. The use of plug-in accessories (shavers, hand-held vacuums, and coffee pots, for example) may damage the socket or cause electrical failure.
- If the lighter does not pop out within 30 seconds, remove it to prevent overheating.

⚠ WARNING

- Never attempt to adjust the cigar lighter while the vehicle is moving. This could result in loss of control, and an accident causing death, serious injury, or property damage.
- Do not insert foreign objects into the socket of the cigarette lighter. It may damage the cigarette lighter.

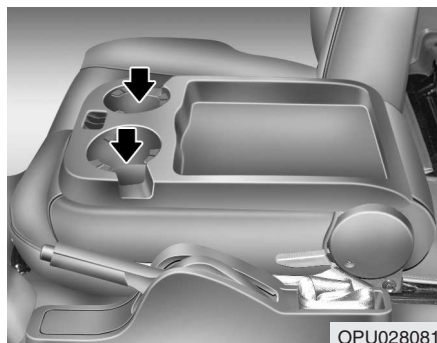


Ashtrays

To remove the ashtray to empty or clean, push the tab (①) and pull it all the way out.

⚠ WARNING - Ashtray use

- Do not use the vehicle's ashtrays as waste receptacles.
- Putting lit cigarettes or matches in an ashtray with other combustible materials may cause a fire.



OPU028081

Cup holder (if equipped)

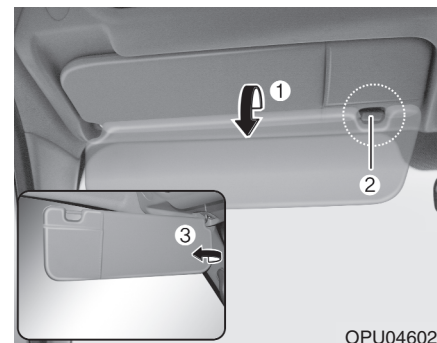
The cup holder is used for holding cups and cans.

⚠ WARNING - Hot liquids

- Do not place uncovered cups of hot liquid in the cup holder while the vehicle is in motion. If the hot liquid spills, you could be burned. Such a burn to the driver could cause a loss of control of the vehicle.
- To reduce the risk of personal injury in the event of sudden stop or collision, do not place uncovered or insecure bottles, glasses, cans, etc., in the cup holder while the vehicle is in motion.

*** NOTICE**

Do not place heavy cups or cans in cup holder. Cup holder could be damaged.



OPU046020

Sunvisor

Use the sunvisor to shield direct light through the front or side windows.

To use a sunvisor, pull it downward (1).

To use a sunvisor for a side window, pull it downward (1), unsnap it from the bracket (2) and swing it to the side (3).

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

1

2

3

4



Aux, USB and iPod (if equipped)

If your vehicle has an aux and/or USB(universal serial bus) port, you can use an aux port to connect audio devices and an USB port to plug in an USB and an iPod.

* NOTICE

When using a portable audio device connected to the power outlet, noise may occur during playback. If this happens, use the power source of the portable audio device.



Digital clock

Whenever the battery terminals, or memory fuse are disconnected, you must reset the time.

When the ignition switch is in the ON position, the clock buttons operate as follows:

⚠ WARNING

Never attempt to adjust the digital clock while the vehicle is moving. This could result in loss of control, and an accident causing death, serious injury, or property damage.

- **HOUR:**

Turn the knob to the left (H), will advance the time displayed by one hour.

- **MINUTE:**

Turn the knob to the right (M), will advance the time displayed by one minute.

- **RESET:**

To clear away minutes, press the knob with your finger. Then the clock will be set precisely on the hour.

For example, if the knob is pressed while the time is between 9:01 and 9:29, the display will be reset to 9:00.

9:01~9:29 ⇒ 9:00

9:30~9:59 ⇒ 10:00

* NOTICE

Do not turn the knob excessively to prevent knob damage.

EXTERIOR TOOL BOX (FOR 1.4 TON ONLY) (IF EQUIPPED)

The exterior tool box is located behind the rear tire on right side to store jack.

To open it pull up the clamp lever and unhook the clamp.

To fix the jack, use the rubber band.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

AUDIO SYSTEM

* NOTICE

- If you install an after market HID head lamp, your vehicle's audio and electronic device may malfunction.
- Prevent chemicals such as perfume, cosmetic oil, sun cream, hand cleaner, and air freshener from contacting the interior parts because they may cause damage or discoloration.



Antenna

Your car uses a manual stainless steel antenna to receive both AM and FM broadcast signals. Pull up the antenna using your fingers.

* NOTICE

- If the antenna is dirty, be sure to clean it in order to avoid an operation malfunction.
- Before entering an automatic car wash or a place with a low height clearance, be sure that the antenna is fully retracted.

WARNING

Never attempt to adjust the antenna while the vehicle is moving. This could result in loss of control, and an accident causing death, serious injury, or property damage.

1

2

3

4

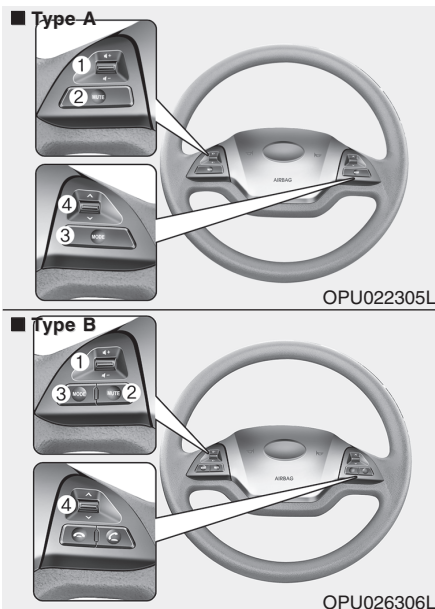
5

6

7

8

9



Audio remote control (if equipped)

The steering wheel audio remote control button is installed to promote safe driving.

CAUTION

Do not operate the audio remote control buttons simultaneously.

VOLUME (+ / -) (1)

- Push up the lever to increase volume.
- Push down the lever to decrease volume.

MUTE (2)

- Press the MUTE button to cancel the sound.
- Press the MUTE button again to activate the sound.

MODE (3)

Press the button to select Radio or CD (compact disc).

TRACK/SEEK UP (4)

- Radio Mode : Automatically searches for broadcast frequencies.
- CD modes :
 - Shortly press the key (under 0.8 seconds): Moves to next or previous song.
 - Press and hold the key (over 0.8 seconds): Rewinds or fast-forwards the current song.

Detailed information for audio control buttons is described in the following pages in this section.

1

2

3

4

5

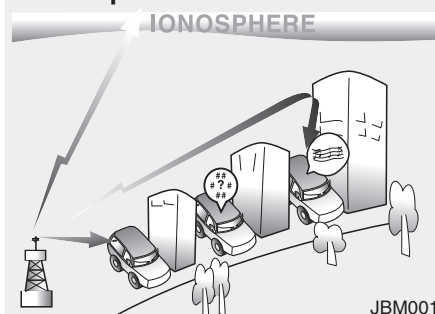
6

7

8

9

FM reception

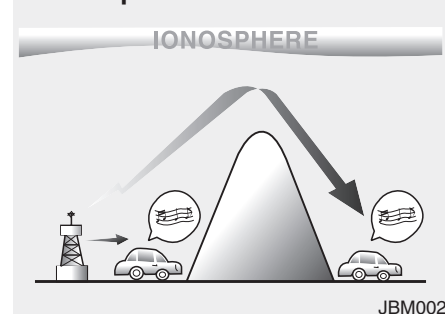


When a strong radio signal has reached your vehicle, the precise engineering of your audio system ensures the best possible quality reproduction. However, in some cases the signal coming to your vehicle may not be strong and clear. This can be due to factors such as the distance from the radio station, closeness of other strong radio stations or the presence of buildings, bridges or other large obstructions in the area.

How vehicle audio works

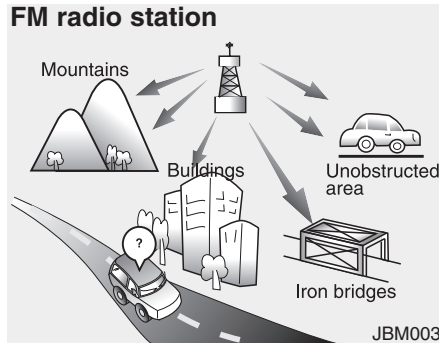
AM and FM radio signals are broadcast from transmitter towers located around your city. They are intercepted by the radio antenna on your vehicle. This signal is then received by the radio and sent to your vehicle speakers.

AM reception



AM broadcasts can be received at greater distances than FM broadcasts. This is because AM radio waves are transmitted at low frequencies. These long, low frequency radio waves can follow the curvature of the earth rather than travelling straight out into the atmosphere. In addition, they curve around obstructions so that they can provide better signal coverage.

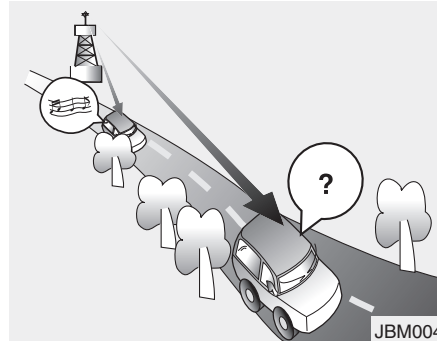
FM radio station



JBM003

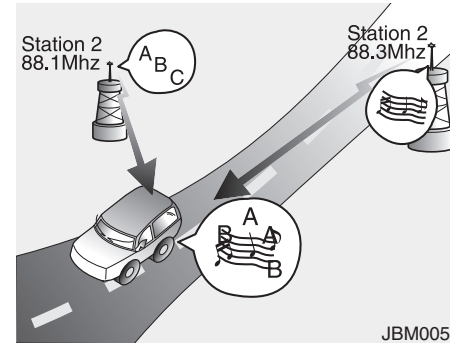
FM broadcasts are transmitted at high frequencies and do not bend to follow the earth's surface. Because of this, FM broadcasts generally begin to fade at short distances from the station.

Also, FM signals are easily affected by buildings, mountains, or other obstructions. These can result in certain listening conditions which might lead you to believe a problem exists with your radio. The following conditions are normal and do not indicate radio trouble:



JBM004

- **Fading** - As your vehicle moves away from the radio station, the signal will weaken and sound will begin to fade. When this occurs, we suggest that you select another stronger station.
- **Flutter/Static** - Weak FM signals or large obstructions between the transmitter and your radio can disturb the signal causing static or fluttering noises to occur. Reducing the treble level may lessen this effect until the disturbance clears.



JBM005

- **Station Swapping** - As a FM signal weakens, another more powerful signal near the same frequency may begin to play. This is because your radio is designed to lock onto the clearest signal. If this occurs, select another station with a stronger signal.
- **Multi-Path Cancellation** - Radio signals being received from several directions can cause distortion or fluttering. This can be caused by a direct and reflected signal from the same station, or by signals from two stations with close frequencies. If this occurs, select another station until the condition has passed.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

Using a cellular phone or a two-way radio

When a cellular phone is used inside the vehicle, noise may be produced from the audio equipment. This does not mean that something is wrong with the audio equipment. In such a case, use the cellular phone at a place as far as possible from the audio equipment.

CAUTION

When using a communication system such a cellular phone or a radio set inside the vehicle, a separate external antenna must be fitted. When a cellular phone or a radio set is used with an internal antenna alone, it may interfere with the vehicle's electrical system and adversely affect safe operation of the vehicle.

WARNING

Don't use a cellular phone when you are driving. You should stop at a safe place to use a cellular phone.

iPod®

iPod® is a trademark of Apple Inc.

Bluetooth® Wireless Technology

The Bluetooth® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Kia is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.



1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

AUDIO (Without Touch Screen A Type)

■ Type A-1



■ Type A-2



4EL3G0000EE/4EL3G0001EE

Feature of Your Audio

Head unit

■ Type A-1



■ Type A-2



* The actual features in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

(1) RADIO

- Plays Radio(FM/AM) mode.
- Each time the button is pressed, the mode is changed sequentially.

(2) MEDIA

- Plays Media USB(iPod®), AUX mode.
- Each time the button is pressed, the mode is changed sequentially.

(3) POWER/VOL knob

- Power knob: Turns power On/Off by pressing the knob.
- Volume knob: Sets volume by turning the knob left/right.

(4) SEEK

When pressed quickly

- Radio mode: Searches broadcast frequencies.
- Media mode: Changes the track, file or title. (except AUX)

When pressed and held

- Frequency is controlled by 1 step quickly. When the button is released after pressing and holding, searches broadcast frequencies.
- Media mode: Rewinds or fast-forwards the song. (except AUX)

(5) [1] ~ [3] (Preset)

When pressed quickly

- Radio mode: Receives saved frequencies(channels).
- Media mode(except AUX)
 - [1 RPT] button: Repeat/Repeat Folder
 - [2 RDM] button: Random Folder/Random

When pressed and held

- Radio mode: Saves frequencies (channels).

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

■ Type A-1



(6) **SETUP**

- Moves to Setup screen.

(7) **BACK**

- Moves to previous screen.

(8) **TUNE** knob

- Pressing **TUNE** knob: Displays menus for the current mode.
- Radio mode: Changes frequency by turning the knob left/right.
- Media mode: Searches songs(files) by turning the knob left/right.

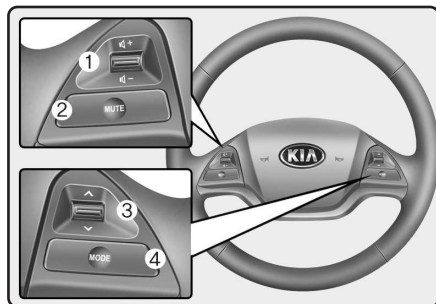
(9) **FLDR**

- USB mode: Searches folders.

■ Type A-2



Steering Wheel Controls



* The actual features in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

(1) **VOLUME**

- Controls the audio volume

(2) **MUTE**

- Mutes the audio volume.

(3) **SEEK/TRACK**

When pressed quickly

- Radio mode: Searches broadcast frequencies saved to Presets.
- Media mode: Changes track, file or title. (except AUX)

When pressed and held

- Frequency is controlled by 1 step quickly. When the button is released after pressing and holding, searches broadcast frequencies.
- Media mode: Rewinds or fast-forwards the song. (except AUX)

(4) **MODE**

- Each time this is pressed, the mode is changed sequentially.
- If the media is not connected, the corresponding modes will be disabled.
- Press and hold to turn the Audio system on/off*.
- When power is off, press button to turn power back on*.

* if equipped

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

⚠ WARNING

- Audio System Safety Warnings

- Do not stare at the screen while driving. Staring at the screen for prolonged periods of time could lead to traffic accidents.
- Do not disassemble, assemble, or modify the audio system. Such acts could result in accidents, fire, or electric shock.
- Using the phone while driving may lead to a lack of attention of traffic conditions and increase the likelihood of accidents. Use the phone feature after parking the vehicle.
- Exercise caution not to spill water or introduce foreign objects into the device. Such acts could lead to smoke, fire, or product malfunction.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- Please refrain from use if the screen is blank or no sound can be heard as these signs may indicate product malfunction. Continued use in such conditions could lead to accidents (fires, electric shock) or product malfunctions.
- Do not touch the antenna during thunder or lightening as such acts may lead to lightning induced electric shock.
- Do not stop or park in parking-restricted areas to operate the product. Such acts could lead to traffic accidents.
- Use the system with the vehicle ignition turned on. Prolonged use with the ignition turned off could result in battery discharge.

⚠ WARNING - Distracted Driving

Driving while distracted can result in a loss of vehicle control that may lead to an accident, severe personal injury, and death. The driver's primary responsibility is in the safe and legal operation of a vehicle, and use of any handheld devices, other equipment, or vehicle systems which take the driver's eyes, attention and focus away from the safe operation of a vehicle or which are not permissible by law should never be used during operation of the vehicle.

⚡ CAUTION

- *Operating the device while driving could lead to accidents due to a lack of attention to external surroundings. First park the vehicle before operating the device.*
- *Adjust the volume to levels that allow the driver to hear sounds from outside of the vehicle. Driving in a state where external sounds cannot be heard may lead to accidents.*
- *Pay attention to the volume setting when turning the device on. A sudden output of extreme volume upon turning the device on could lead to hearing impairment. (Adjust the volume to a suitable levels before turning off the device.)*

(Continued)

(Continued)

- *If you want to change the position of device installation, please inquire with your place of purchase or service maintenance center. Technical expertise is required to install or disassemble the device.*
- *Turn on the car ignition before using this device. Do not operate the audio system for long periods of time with the ignition turned off as such operations may lead to battery discharge.*
- *Do not subject the device to severe shock or impact. Direct pressure onto the front side of the monitor may cause damage to the LCD or touch screen.*

(Continued)

(Continued)

- *When cleaning the device, make sure to turn off the device and use a dry and smooth cloth. Never use tough materials, chemical cloths, or solvents (alcohol, benzene, thinners, etc.) as such materials may damage the device panel or cause color/quality deterioration.*
- *Do not place beverages close to the audio system. Spilling beverages may lead to system malfunction.*
- *In case of product malfunction, please contact your place of purchase or After Service center.*
- *Placing the audio system within an electromagnetic environment may result in noise interference.*
- *Prevent caustic solutions such as perfume and cosmetic oil from contacting the dashboard because they may cause damage or discoloration.*

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

Radio

Radio Mode

Change Mode: **[RADIO]** button

- Plays Radio(FM/AM) mode. Each time the button is pressed, the mode is changed sequentially.

Search Frequency: **[SEEK]** button

- Searches the previous/next broadcast frequencies.
- Pressing the button: Searches broadcast frequencies.
- Frequency is controlled by 1 step quickly. When the button is released after pressing and holding, searches broadcast frequencies.

Change Frequency: **TUNE** knob

- Changes frequency by turning the knob left/right. You can seek available frequencies manually.

Saved Frequency: **[1] ~ [3]** (Preset) buttons

- Pressing the button: Plays the frequency saved in the corresponding button.
- Pressing and holding the button: Saves the currently playing broadcast to the selected button.

FM/AM (without RDS)



Displays Menu Popup when pressing the **TUNE** knob.

Select menu by turning the **TUNE** knob.

- A.STORE: Saves broadcasts with superior reception to **[1] ~ [3]** buttons. If no frequencies are received, then the most recently received frequency will be broadcast.
- SCAN: The broadcast frequency increases and previews each broadcast for 5 seconds each. After scanning all frequencies, returns and plays the current broadcast frequency.
- SOUND: Moves to Sound Settings.

Media

* NOTICE - Using MP3

Supported Audio Formats

Compressed audio formats	MPEG1 Audio Layer3
	MPEG2 Audio Layer3
	MPEG2.5 Audio Layer3
	Windows Media Audio Ver 7.X & 8.X

* NOTICE

File formats that do not comply with the above formats may not be properly recognized or play without properly displaying file names or other information.

Support for Compressed Files

1. Supported Bitrates (Kbps)

BIT RATE (kbps)	MPEG1	MPEG2	MPEG2.5	WMA
	Layer3	Layer3	Layer3	High Range
	32	8	8	48
	40	16	16	64
	48	24	24	80
	56	32	32	96
	64	40	40	128
	80	48	48	160
	96	56	56	192
	112	64	64	
	128	80	80	
	160	96	96	
	192	112	112	
	224	128	128	
	256	144	144	
	320	160	160	

2. Sampling Frequencies (Hz)

MPEG1	MPEG2	MPEG2.5	WMA
44100	22050	11025	32000
48000	24000	12000	44100
3000	16000	8000	48000

- For MP3/WMA compression files, differences in sound quality will occur depending on the bitrate. (Higher sound quality can be experienced with higher bitrates.)

- This device only recognizes files with MP3/WMA extensions. Other file extensions may not be properly recognized.

3. Maximum number of recognized folders and files.

- Folder: 1,000 folders for USB
- File: 5,000 files for USB
- There are no limitations to the number of recognized folder levels.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

*** NOTICE - Using the USB Devices**

- 1 • Connect the USB device after turning on the engine. The USB device may become damaged if it is already connected when the ignition is turned on. The USB device may not operate properly if the car ignition is turned on or off with the USB device connected.
- 2 • Be careful for static electricity when connecting/disconnecting USB devices.
- 3 • Encoded MP3 Players will not be recognized when connected as an external device.
- 4 • When connecting an external USB device, the vehicle's audio system may not recognize the USB depending on what firmware is used by USB device or what files are on the USB.
- 5 • Only products formatted with byte/sectors under 64Kbyte will be recognized.
- 6 • This device recognizes USB devices formatted in FAT 12/16/32 file formats. This device does not recognize files in NTFS file format.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- Some USB devices may not be supported due to compatibility issues.
- Avoid contact between the USB connector and bodily parts or foreign objects.
- Repeated connecting/disconnecting of USB devices within short periods of time may result in product malfunction.
- A strange noise may occur when disconnecting the USB.
- Make sure to connect/disconnect external USB devices with the audio power turned off.
- The amount of time required to recognize the USB device may differ depending on the type, size or file formats stored on the USB. Such differences in time are not indications of malfunctions.
- The vehicle audio system only supports USB devices designed to play music files.
- USB images and videos are not supported.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- Do not use the USB I/F to charge batteries or USB accessories that generate heat. Doing so may lead to worsened performance or damage to the audio system.
- The audio system may not recognize the USB device if separately purchased USB hubs and extension cables are being used. Connect the USB device directly with the USB port of the vehicle.
- When using mass storage USB devices with separate logical drives, only files saved to the root drive can be played.
- Files may not properly operate if application programs are installed on the USBs.
- The audio system may not operate normally if MP3 Players, cellular phones, digital cameras, or other electronic devices (USB devices not recognized as portable disk drives) are connected with the audio system.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- Charging through the USB may not work for some mobile devices.
- The device may not support normal operation when using an atypical USB memory device (miniature, keychain, etc.). For best results, use a typical USB device that has a metal case.
- The device may not support normal operation when using formats such as HDD Type, CF, or SD Memory.
- The device will not support files locked by DRM (Digital Rights Management.).
- USB memory sticks used by connecting an Adaptor (SD Type or CF Type) may not be properly recognized.
- The device may not operate properly when using USB HDDs or USBs subject to connection failures caused by vehicle vibrations. (e.g. i-stick type)

(Continued)

(Continued)

- Avoid use of USB memory products that can also be used as key chains or mobile phone accessories. Use of such products may cause damage to the USB jack.
- Connecting an MP3 device or phone through various channels, such as AUX or Audio/USB mode may result in pop noises or abnormal operation.



* NOTICE - Using an iPod®

- iPod® is a registered trademark of Apple Inc.
- In order to use the iPod® with your vehicle's audio system, you must use a dedicated iPod® cable. (the cable that is supplied when purchasing iPod®/iPhone® products)
- If the iPod® is connected to the vehicle while it is playing, a high pitch sound could occur for approximately 1-2 seconds immediately after connecting. If possible, connect the iPod® to the vehicle with the iPod® stopped/paused.
- When the vehicle ignition is set to ACC or ON, connecting the iPod® through the iPod® cable will charge the iPod® through the car audio system.
- When connecting with the iPod® cable, make sure to fully insert the jack to prevent communication interference.

(Continued)

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

(Continued)

- When the EQ features of an external device, such as the iPod®, and the audio system are both active, EQ effects could overlap and cause sound deterioration and distortion. Whenever possible, turn off the EQ feature within the external device when it is connected to the audio system.
- Noise may occur when an iPod® or AUX device is connected. When such devices are not being used, disconnect the device for storage.
- When the iPod® or AUX device power is connected to the power jack, playing the external device may result in noise. In such cases, disconnect the power connection before use.
- Skipping or improper operation may occur depending on the characteristics of your iPod®/iPhone® device.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- If your iPhone® is connected to both the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology and USB, the sound may not be properly played. In your iPhone®, select the Dock connector or *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology to change the sound output (source).
- iPod® mode cannot be operated when the iPod® cannot be recognized due to the playing of versions that do not support communication protocols, cases of iPod® abnormalities and defects.
- For fifth generation iPod® Nano devices, the iPod® may not be recognized when the battery level is low. Please charge the iPod® for use.
- The search/play orders shown within the iPod® device may differ from the orders shown within the audio system.
- If the iPod® malfunctions due to an iPod® device defect, reset the iPod® and try again. (To learn more, refer to your iPod® manual)

(Continued)

(Continued)

- Some iPod®s may not sync with the System depending on the version. If the Media is removed before the Media is recognized, then the system may not properly restore the previously operated mode. (iPod® charging is not supported.)
- Use an iPod® cable shorter than 1 meter in length such as the one originally supplied with a new iPod®, longer cables may lead to the audio system not recognizing the iPod®.

Media Mode

Change Mode: [MEDIA] button

- Press the [MEDIA] button to change the mode in order of USB(iPod®) → AUX.
- If media device(USB, AUX) is connected, then it will automatically operate. Once it is disconnected, the previous mode will be restored.

Repeat: [1 RPT] button

- Repeats the current song or repeats all songs within the current folder.
- iPod® mode: Repeat Song → Repeat Off
- USB mode: Repeat Song → Repeat Folder → Off

Random: [2 RDM] button

- Plays all songs within the current folder(category) or play all songs in random order.
- iPod® mode: Random Folder → Random Off
- USB mode: Random Folder → Random All → Off

Change Song/File: [SEEK] button

[V SEEK] button

- Pressing the button: Plays the current song from the beginning. If the [V SEEK] button is pressed again within 3 seconds, the previous song is played.
- Pressing and holding the button: Rewinds the song.

[SEEK ^] button

- Pressing the button: Plays the next song.
- Pressing and holding the button: Fast-forwards the song.

* NOTICE

AUX don't support Repeat, Random, SEEK and Rewind/Fast forward feature.

Search Song: TUNE knob

- Turning TUNE knob: Searches for songs(files).
- Pressing TUNE knob: Plays selected song(file).

* NOTICE

AUX and iPod® don't support playlist feature.

Search Folder: [FLDR] button

- Searches the previous/next folder. (USB)
- If a folder is selected by pressing the TUNE knob, the first file within the selected folder will be played.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

USB

iPod®

AUX

1



2

Displays Menu Popup when pressing the **TUNE** knob.

3

- LIST: Moves to the list screen.
- SCAN: Scans the beginning parts of all songs. (approximately 10 seconds per file)
- SOUND: Moves to Sound Settings.

4

5

6

7

8

9



Displays Menu Popup when pressing the **TUNE** knob.

- SOUND: Moves to Sound Settings.



Displays Menu Popup when pressing the **TUNE** knob.

- SOUND: Moves to Sound Settings.

* NOTICE

- **AUX mode can be used only when an external audio player has been connected.**
- **If only a cable is connected to the AUX without an external device, the mode will be changed to AUX, but noise may occur. When an external device is not being used, remove the connector jack.**
- **When the external device power is connected to the power jack, playing the external device may output noise. In such cases, disconnect the power connection before use.**

Setup

Sound Settings

Press the **[SETUP]** button → Select **[SOUND]**.

- **BASS, MIDDLE, TREBLE:** Selects the sound tone.
- **BALANCE:** Selects the sound balance.
- **DEFAULT:** Restores default settings.

Speed dependent vol.

Press the **[SETUP]** button → Select **[SDVC]**.

- The volume level is controlled automatically according to the vehicle speed. SDVC can be set by selecting from On/Off.

Display Off

Press the **[SETUP]** button → Select **[DISP OFF]**.

- Audio operation is maintained and only the screen will be turned Off. In the Screen Off state, press any button to turn the Screen On again.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

AUDIO (Without Touch Screen B Type)

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

■ Type B-1



■ Type B-2



4FN3G0000EE/4FN3G0001EE

Feature of Your Audio

Head Unit

■ Type B-1



■ Type B-2



※ The actual features in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

(1) RADIO

- Plays Radio(FM/AM) mode.
- Each time the button is pressed, the media mode popup will be displayed or closed.
- The radio mode popup will not be displayed when [SETUP] button ► [Display] ► [Mode popup] is turned [Off].

(2) MEDIA

- Plays USB(iPod®), AUX mode.
- Each time the button is pressed, the media mode popup will be displayed or closed.
- The media mode popup will not be displayed when [SETUP] button ► [Display] ► [Mode popup] is turned [Off].

(3) SETUP

- Moves to Setup screen.

(4) POWER/VOL knob

- Power knob: Turns power On/Off by pressing the knob.
- Volume knob: Sets volume by turning the knob left/right.

(5) SEEK/TRACK

When pressed quickly

- Radio mode: Searches broadcast frequencies.
- Media mode: Changes the track, file or title. (except AUX)

When pressed and held

- Radio mode: Frequency is controlled by 1 step quickly. When the button is released after pressing and holding, searches broadcast frequencies.
- Media mode: Rewinds or fast-forwards the song. (except AUX)

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

■ Type B-1



■ Type B-2



(6) **DISP**

- Turns off the screen.
- Each time the button is pressed, it sets the Screen Off → On → Off.

(7) **MENU**

- Displays menus for the current mode.

(8) **BACK**

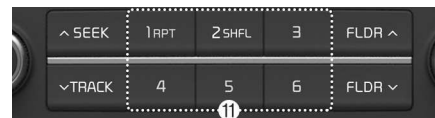
- Moves to previous screen.

(9) **TUNE** knob

- Radio mode: Changes frequency by turning the knob left/right.
- Media mode: Searches songs(files) by turning the knob left/right.

(10) **FLDR**

- USB mode: Searches folders.



(11) **[1] ~ [6] (Preset)**

When pressed quickly

- Radio mode: Receives saved frequencies(channels).
- Media mode(USB)
 - **[1 RPT]** button: Repeat/Repeat Folder
 - **[2 SHFL]** button: Shuffle Folder/Shuffle
- Media mode(iPod®)
 - **[1 RPT]** button: Repeat
 - **[2 SHFL]** button: Shuffle
- In case of Menu popup, the number menu is selected.

When pressed and held

- Radio mode: Saves frequencies (channels).

■ Type B-3



■ Type B-4



(With *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology)

4FN3G0002EE/4FN3G0003EE

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

Feature of Your Audio

Head Unit

■ Type B-3



■ Type B-4



※ The actual features in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

(1) RADIO

- Plays Radio(FM/AM) mode.
- Each time the button is pressed, the media mode popup will be displayed or closed.
- The radio mode popup will not be displayed when **[SETUP]** button ► **[Display]** ► **[Mode popup]** is turned **[Off]**.

(2) MEDIA

- Plays USB(iPod®), BT Audio, AUX mode.
- Each time the button is pressed, the media mode popup will be displayed or closed.
- The media mode popup will not be displayed when **[SETUP]** button ► **[Display]** ► **[Mode popup]** is turned **[Off]**.

(3) PHONE

- Moves to Phone screen.
- If Bluetooth® is not connected, displays Bluetooth® Pair/Connection screen.

(4) POWER/VOL knob

- Power knob: Turns power On/Off by pressing the knob.
- Volume knob: Sets volume by turning the knob left/right.

(5) SEEK/TRACK

When pressed quickly

- Radio mode: Searches broadcast frequencies.
- Media mode: Changes the track, file or title. (except AUX)

When pressed and held

- Radio mode: Frequency is controlled by 1 step quickly. When the button is released after pressing and holding, searches broadcast frequencies.
- Media mode: Rewinds or fast-forwards the song. (except BT Audio, AUX)

■ Type B-3



■ Type B-4



(6) **SETUP**

- Moves to Setup screen.

(7) **MENU**

- Displays menus for the current mode.

(8) **BACK**

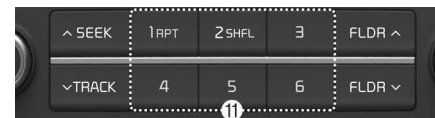
- Moves to previous screen.

(9) **TUNE** knob

- Radio mode: Changes frequency by turning the knob left/right.
- Media mode: Searches songs(files) by turning the knob left/right.

(10) **FLDR**

- USB mode: Searches folders.



(11) [1] ~ [6] (Preset)

When pressed quickly

- Radio mode: Receives saved frequencies(channels).
- Media mode(USB)
 - [1 RPT] button: Repeat/Repeat Folder
 - [2 SHFL] button: Shuffle Folder/Shuffle
- Media mode(iPod®)
 - [1 RPT] button: Repeat
 - [2 SHFL] button: Shuffle
- In case of Menu popup, the number menu is selected.

When pressed and held

- Radio mode: Saves frequencies (channels).

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

■ Type B-5



■ Type B-6



(With *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology)

4FN3G0004EE/4FN3G0005EE

Feature of Your Audio

Head Unit

■ Type B-5



■ Type B-6



※ The actual features in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

(1) **EJECT**

- Ejects the disc.

(2) **MEDIA**

- Plays Disc, USB(iPod®), BT Audio, AUX mode.
- Each time the button is pressed, the media mode popup will be displayed or closed.
- The media mode popup will not be displayed when **[SETUP]** button ► [Display] ► [Mode popup] is turned [Off].

(3) **PHONE**

- Moves to Phone screen.
- If Bluetooth® is not connected, displays Bluetooth® Pair/Connection screen.

(4) **SETUP**

- Moves to Setup screen.

(5) **RADIO**

- Plays Radio(FM/AM) mode.
- Each time the button is pressed, the media mode popup will be displayed or closed.
- The radio mode popup will not be displayed when **[SETUP]** button ► [Display] ► [Mode popup] is turned [Off].

(6) **SEEK/TRACK**

When pressed quickly

- Radio mode: Searches broadcast frequencies.
- Media mode: Changes the track, file or title. (except AUX)

When pressed and held

- Radio mode: Frequency is controlled by 1 step quickly. When the button is released after pressing and holding, searches broadcast frequencies.
- Media mode: Rewinds or fast-forwards the song. (except BT Audio, AUX)

(7) **POWER/VOL** knob

- Power knob: Turns power On/Off by pressing the knob.
- Volume knob: Sets volume by turning the knob left/right.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

■ Type B-5



■ Type B-6



(8) **MENU**

- Displays menus for the current mode.

(9) **DISP**

- Turns off the screen.
- Each time the button is pressed, it sets the Screen Off → On → Off.

(10) **BACK**

- Moves to previous screen.

(11) **FLDR**

- Disc MP3, USB mode: Searches folders.

(12) **TUNE** knob

- Radio mode: Changes frequency by turning the knob left/right.
- Media mode: Searches songs(files) by turning the knob left/right.



(13) [1] ~ [6] (Preset)

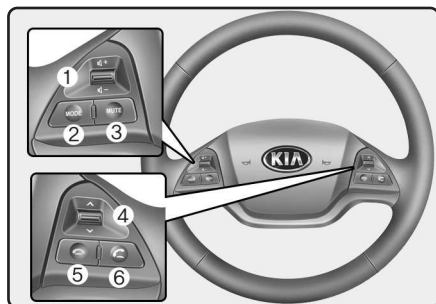
When pressed quickly

- Radio mode: Receives saved frequencies(channels).
- Media mode(USB, Disc MP3)
 - [1 RPT] button: Repeat/Repeat Folder
 - [2 SHFL] button: Shuffle Folder/Shuffle
- Media mode(iPod®, Disc CD)
 - [1 RPT] button: Repeat
 - [2 SHFL] button: Shuffle
- In case of Menu popup, the number menu is selected.

When pressed and held

- Radio mode: Saves frequencies (channels).

Steering wheel remote control



* The actual features in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

(1) **VOLUME**

- Controls the audio or call volume.

(2) **MODE**

- Each time this is pressed, the mode is changed sequentially.
- If the media is not connected, the corresponding modes will be disabled.
- Press and hold to turn the Audio system on/off*.
- When power is off, press button to turn power back on*.

* if equipped

(3) **MUTE**

- Mutes the audio volume.
- When a call is active, mic volume is muted.

(4) **SEEK/TRACK**

- When pressed quickly
 - Radio mode: Searches broadcast frequencies saved to Presets.
 - Media mode: Changes track, file or title. (except AUX)
- When pressed and held
 - Radio mode: Frequency is controlled by 1 step quickly. When the button is released after pressing and holding, searches broadcast frequencies.
 - Media mode: Rewinds or fast-forwards the song. (except BT Audio*, AUX)

* if equipped

(5) **CALL (if equipped)**

- When pressed quickly
 - Display the last dialed number.
 - When pressed in the incoming call screen, answers the call.
 - When pressed during call waiting, switches to waiting call.
- When pressed and held
 - Call to last dialed number.
 - When pressed during a Bluetooth® Handsfree call, switches call back to Bluetooth® device(private mode).
 - When pressed while calling on the Bluetooth® device, switches call back to Bluetooth® Handsfree.
 - If Bluetooth® is not connected, displays Bluetooth® Pair/Connection screen.

(6) **END (if equipped)**

- When pressed during a call, ends the phone call.
- When pressed in the incoming call screen, rejects the call.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

⚠ WARNING

- Audio System Safety Warnings

- Do not stare at the screen while driving. Staring at the screen for prolonged periods of time could lead to traffic accidents.
- Do not disassemble, assemble, or modify the audio system. Such acts could result in accidents, fire, or electric shock.
- Using the phone while driving may lead to a lack of attention of traffic conditions and increase the likelihood of accidents. Use the phone feature after parking the vehicle.
- Exercise caution not to spill water or introduce foreign objects into the device. Such acts could lead to smoke, fire, or product malfunction.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- Please refrain from use if the screen is blank or no sound can be heard as these signs may indicate product malfunction. Continued use in such conditions could lead to accidents (fires, electric shock) or product malfunctions.
- Do not touch the antenna during thunder or lightening as such acts may lead to lightning induced electric shock.
- Do not stop or park in parking-restricted areas to operate the product. Such acts could lead to traffic accidents.
- Use the system with the vehicle ignition turned on. Prolonged use with the ignition turned off could result in battery discharge.

⚠ WARNING - Distracted Driving

Driving while distracted can result in a loss of vehicle control that may lead to an accident, severe personal injury, and death. The driver's primary responsibility is in the safe and legal operation of a vehicle, and use of any handheld devices, other equipment, or vehicle systems which take the driver's eyes, attention and focus away from the safe operation of a vehicle or which are not permissible by law should never be used during operation of the vehicle.

⚡ CAUTION

- *Operating the device while driving could lead to accidents due to a lack of attention to external surroundings. First park the vehicle before operating the device.*
- *Adjust the volume to levels that allow the driver to hear sounds from outside of the vehicle. Driving in a state where external sounds cannot be heard may lead to accidents.*
- *Pay attention to the volume setting when turning the device on. A sudden output of extreme volume upon turning the device on could lead to hearing impairment. (Adjust the volume to a suitable levels before turning off the device.)*

(Continued)

(Continued)

- *If you want to change the position of device installation, please inquire with your place of purchase or service maintenance center. Technical expertise is required to install or disassemble the device.*
- *Turn on the car ignition before using this device. Do not operate the audio system for long periods of time with the ignition turned off as such operations may lead to battery discharge.*
- *Do not subject the device to severe shock or impact. Direct pressure onto the front side of the monitor may cause damage to the LCD or touch screen.*

(Continued)

(Continued)

- *When cleaning the device, make sure to turn off the device and use a dry and smooth cloth. Never use tough materials, chemical cloths, or solvents (alcohol, benzene, thinners, etc.) as such materials may damage the device panel or cause color/quality deterioration.*
- *Do not place beverages close to the audio system. Spilling beverages may lead to system malfunction.*
- *In case of product malfunction, please contact your place of purchase or After Service center.*
- *Placing the audio system within an electromagnetic environment may result in noise interference.*
- *Prevent caustic solutions such as perfume and cosmetic oil from contacting the dashboard because they may cause damage or discoloration.*

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

Radio

Radio Mode

Change Mode: [RADIO] button

- Plays Radio mode. Each time the button is pressed, the radio mode popup will be displayed or closed.
- The radio mode popup will not be displayed when [SETUP] button ► [Display] ► [Mode popup] is turned [Off].

Search Frequency: [SEEK/TRACK] button

- Searches the previous/next broadcast frequencies.
 - Pressing the button: Searches broadcast frequencies.
 - Frequency is controlled by 1 step quickly. When the button is released after pressing and holding, searches broadcast frequencies.

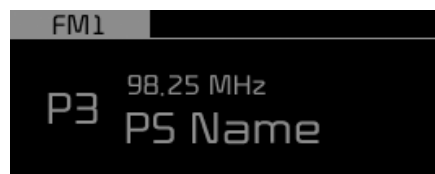
Change Frequency: TUNE knob

- Changes frequency by turning the knob left/right. You can seek available frequencies manually.

Saved Frequency: [1] ~ [6] (Preset) buttons

- Pressing the button: Plays the frequency saved in the corresponding button.
- Pressing and holding the button: Saves the currently playing broadcast to the selected button and sound a BEEP.

FM/AM (with RDS)



FM/AM (without RDS)



Displays Menu Popup when pressing the [MENU] button.

Autostore

Saves broadcasts with superior reception to [1] ~ [6] buttons. If no frequencies are received, then the most recently received frequency will be broadcast.

Scan

The broadcast frequency increases and previews each broadcast for 5 seconds each. After scanning all frequencies, returns and plays the current broadcast frequency.

Sound Settings

Moves to Sound Settings.

Traffic Announcement (for RDS model)

TA(Traffic Announcement) feature On/Off.

Presets (for RDS model)

Displays saved presets.

Media

* NOTICE - Using Compact Discs (if equipped)

- This device has been manufactured to be compatible with software bearing the following logo marks.
- Do not clean discs with chemical solutions, such as record sprays, antistatic sprays, antistatic liquids, benzene, or thinners.
- After using a disc, put the disc back in its original case to prevent disc scratches.
- Hold discs by their edges or within the center hole to prevent damage to disc surfaces.
- Do not introduce foreign substances into the disc insert/eject slot. Introducing foreign substances could damage the device interior.
- Do not insert two discs simultaneously.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- When using CD-R/CD-RW discs, differences in disc reading and playing times may occur depending on the disc manufacturer, production method and the recording method used.
- Clean fingerprints and dust off the disc surface (coated side) with a soft cloth.
- The use of CD-R/CD-RW discs attached with labels may result in disc slot jams or difficulties in disc removal. Such discs may also result in noise while playing.
- Some CD-R/CD-RW discs may not properly operate depending on the disc manufacturer, production method and the recording method used. If problems persist, trying using a different CD as continued use may result in malfunctions.
- The performance of this product may differ depending on the CDRW Drive Software.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- Copy-protected CDs such as Stype CDs may not function in the device. DATA discs cannot be played. (However, such discs may still operate but will do so abnormally.)
- Do not use abnormally shaped discs (8cm, heart-shaped, octagon shaped) as such discs could lead to malfunctions.
- If the disc is straddled on the disc slot without removal for 10 seconds, the disc will automatically be re-inserted into the disc player.
- Only genuine audio CDs are supported. Other discs may result in recognition failure. (e.g. copy CDR, CDs with labels)

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

1

• Compatibility by Disc Type

1. Playing MIXED CDs: First plays the audio CD, then plays the compressed file(s).
2. Playing EXTRA CDs: First plays the audio CD, then plays the compressed file(s).
3. Playing multi session CDs: Plays in order of sessions.
 - MIXED CD: CD type in which both MP3 and audio CD files are recognized in one disc.
 - Multisession CD: CD type that includes more than two sessions. Different from Extra CDs, multi-session CDs are recorded by sessions and have no media limitation.

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

⚡ CAUTION - Upon Writing Disc

- *In all cases except when creating multi session discs, check the close session option before creating the disc. Though product malfunctions will not occur, some time may be required for the device to check whether the session state is closed (approximately 25 seconds). (Additional time may also be required depending on the number of folders or files.)*
- *Changing the MP3/WMA file extensions or changing files of other extensions to MP3/WMA may result in product malfunction.*
- *When naming files with MP3/WMA file extensions, write using only Korean and English. (Korean, English and Chinese are supported.)*

(Continued)

(Continued)

- *Unauthorized use or duplication of music files are prohibited by law.*
- *Prolonged use of CD-R/CD-RW discs that do not satisfy related standards and/or specifications could result in product malfunction.*

*** NOTICE - Using MP3****Supported audio formats**

File System	ISO 9660 Level 1
	ISO 9660 Level 2
	Romeo/Juliet (128 characters)
Audio Compression	MPEG1 Audio Layer3
	MPEG2 Audio Layer3
	MPEG2.5 Audio Layer3
	Windows Media Audio Ver 7.X & 8.X

*** NOTICE**

File formats that do not comply with the above formats may not be properly recognized or play without properly displaying file names or other information.

Support for Compressed Files**1. Supported Bitrates (Kbps)**

BIT RATE (kbps)	MPEG1	MPEG2	MPEG2.5	WMA
	Layer3	Layer3	Layer3	High Range
	32	8	8	48
	40	16	16	64
	48	24	24	80
	56	32	32	96
	64	40	40	128
	80	48	48	160
	96	56	56	192
	112	64	64	
	128	80	80	
	160	96	96	
	192	112	112	
	224	128	128	
	256	144	144	
	320	160	160	

2. Sampling Frequencies (Hz)

MPEG1	MPEG2	MPEG2.5	WMA
44100	22050	11025	32000
48000	24000	12000	44100
3000	16000	8000	48000

- For MP3/WMA compression files, differences in sound quality will occur depending on the bitrate. (Higher sound quality can be experienced with higher bitrates.)

- This device only recognizes files with MP3/WMA extensions. Other file extensions may not be properly recognized.

3. Maximum number of recognized folders and files

- Folder: 1,000 folders for USB
- File: 5,000 files for USB
- There are no limitations to the number of recognized folder levels.

4. Text Display (Based on Unicode)

- File name: Maximum 40 English characters
- Folder name: Max 40 English characters

*** NOTICE**

Using the scroll feature allows you to see the entire name of files with names that are too long to be displayed at once.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

Language Support (Unicode Support)

- Korean: 2,604 characters
- English: 94 characters
- Common Chinese characters: 4,888 characters
- Special symbols: 986 characters

* NOTICE

Japanese/Simplified Chinese characters are not supported.

* NOTICE - Using the USB Devices

- Connect the USB device after turning on the engine. The USB device may become damaged if it is already connected when the ignition is turned on. The USB device may not operate properly if the car ignition is turned on or off with the USB device connected.
- Be careful for static electricity when connecting/disconnecting USB devices.
- Encoded MP3 Players will not be recognized when connected as an external device.
- When connecting an external USB device, the vehicle's audio system may not recognize the USB depending on what firmware is used by USB device or what files are on the USB.
- Only products formatted with byte/sectors under 64Kbyte will be recognized.
- This device recognizes USB devices formatted in FAT 12/16/32 file formats. This device does not recognize files in NTFS file format.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- Some USB devices may not be supported due to compatibility issues.
- Avoid contact between the USB connector and bodily parts or foreign objects.
- Repeated connecting/disconnecting of USB devices within short periods of time may result in product malfunction.
- A strange noise may occur when disconnecting the USB.
- Make sure to connect/disconnect external USB devices with the audio power turned off.
- The amount of time required to recognize the USB device may differ depending on the type, size or file formats stored on the USB. Such differences in time are not indications of malfunctions.
- The vehicle audio system only supports USB devices designed to play music files.
- USB images and videos are not supported.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- Do not use the USB I/F to charge batteries or USB accessories that generate heat. Doing so may lead to worsened performance or damage to the audio system.
- The audio system may not recognize the USB device if separately purchased USB hubs and extension cables are being used. Connect the USB device directly with the USB port of the vehicle.
- When using mass storage USB devices with separate logical drives, only files saved to the root drive can be played.
- Files may not properly operate if application programs are installed on the USBs.
- The audio system may not operate normally if MP3 Players, cellular phones, digital cameras, or other electronic devices (USB devices not recognized as portable disk drives) are connected with the audio system.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- Charging through the USB may not work for some mobile devices.
- The device may not support normal operation when using an atypical USB memory device (miniature, keychain, etc.). For best results, use a typical USB device that has a metal case.
- The device may not support normal operation when using formats such as HDD Type, CF, or SD Memory.
- The device will not support files locked by DRM (Digital Rights Management.).
- USB memory sticks used by connecting an Adaptor (SD Type or CF Type) may not be properly recognized.
- The device may not operate properly when using USB HDDs or USBs subject to connection failures caused by vehicle vibrations. (e.g. i-stick type)

(Continued)

(Continued)

- Avoid use of USB memory products that can also be used as key chains or mobile phone accessories. Use of such products may cause damage to the USB jack.
- Connecting an MP3 device or phone through various channels, such as AUX/BT or Audio/USB mode may result in pop noises or abnormal operation.



1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

*** NOTICE - Using an iPod®**

- iPod® is a registered trademark of Apple Inc.
- In order to use the iPod® with your vehicle's audio system, you must use a dedicated iPod® cable. (the cable that is supplied when purchasing iPod®/iPhone® products)
- If the iPod® is connected to the vehicle while it is playing, a high pitch sound could occur for approximately 1-2 seconds immediately after connecting. If possible, connect the iPod® to the vehicle with the iPod® stopped/paused.
- When the vehicle ignition is set to ACC or ON, connecting the iPod® through the iPod® cable will charge the iPod® through the car audio system.
- When connecting with the iPod® cable, make sure to fully insert the jack to prevent communication interference.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- When the EQ features of an external device, such as the iPod®, and the audio system are both active, EQ effects could overlap and cause sound deterioration and distortion. Whenever possible, turn off the EQ feature within the external device when it is connected to the audio system.
- Noise may occur when an iPod® or AUX device is connected. When such devices are not being used, disconnect the device for storage.
- When the iPod® or AUX device power is connected to the power jack, playing the external device may result in noise. In such cases, disconnect the power connection before use.
- Skipping or improper operation may occur depending on the characteristics of your iPod®/iPhone® device.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- If your iPhone® is connected to both the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology and USB, the sound may not be properly played. In your iPhone®, select the Dock connector or *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology to change the sound output (source).
- iPod® mode cannot be operated when the iPod® cannot be recognized due to the playing of versions that do not support communication protocols, cases of iPod® abnormalities and defects.
- For fifth generation iPod® Nano devices, the iPod® may not be recognized when the battery level is low. Please charge the iPod® for use.
- The search/play orders shown within the iPod® device may differ from the orders shown within the audio system.
- If the iPod® malfunctions due to an iPod® device defect, reset the iPod® and try again. (To learn more, refer to your iPod® manual)

(Continued)

(Continued)

- Some iPod®s may not sync with the System depending on the version. If the Media is removed before the Media is recognized, then the system may not properly restore the previously operated mode. (iPad® charging is not supported.)
- Use an iPod® cable shorter than 1 meter in length such as the one originally supplied with a new iPod®, longer cables may lead to the audio system not recognizing the iPod®.

*** NOTICE - Using the
Bluetooth® Wireless
Technology Audio
Mode (if equipped)**

- *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology Audio Mode can be used only when a *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology phone has been connected.
- *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology Audio Mode will not be available when connecting mobile phones that do not support this feature.
- If a *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology Phone is being used to play music and receives an incoming or outgoing phone call, then the music will stop.
- Moving the Track up/down while playing *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology audio mode may result in pop noises with some mobile phones.
- *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology streaming audio may not be supported in some mobile phones.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- When returning to *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology Audio mode after ending a call, the mode may not automatically restart in some mobile phones.
- Receiving an incoming call or making an outgoing call while playing *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology Audio may result in audio interference.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

Media Mode

Change Mode: [MEDIA] button

- Each time the button is pressed, the media mode popup will be displayed or closed.
- The media mode popup will not be displayed when [SETUP] button ► [Display] ► [Mode popup] is turned [Off].

You can select a menu in the mode popup by using the [1] ~ [6] (Preset) buttons or **TUNE** knob.

- If media device(USB, AUX) is connected, then it will automatically operate. Once it is disconnected, the previous mode will be restored.
- The Audio/BT Audio*/AUX volume can also be controlled.

* if equipped

Repeat: [1 RPT] button

- Repeats the current song or repeats all songs within the current folder.
 - Disc CD*, iPod® mode: Repeat Song → Repeat Off.
 - Disc MP3*, USB mode: Repeat Song → Repeat Folder → Off .
- * if equipped

Shuffle: [2 SHFL] button

- Plays all songs within the current folder(category) or play all songs in random order.
- Disc CD*, iPod® mode: Shuffle All → Shuffle Off.
- Disc MP3*, USB mode: Shuffle Folder → Shuffle All → Off.

* if equipped

Change Song/File: [SEEK/TRACK] button

[√ TRACK]/[√ SEEK/TRACK] button

- Pressing the button: Plays the current song from the beginning. If the [√ TRACK]/[√ SEEK/TRACK] button is pressed again within 2 seconds, the previous song is played.
- Pressing and holding the button: Rewinds the song.

[SEEK ^]/[SEEK/TRACK ^] button

- Pressing the button: Plays the next song.
- Pressing and holding the button: Fast-forwards the song.

* NOTICE

- **AUX and BT Audio* don't support Rewind/Fast-forward feature.**
- **Changing the previous/next song may not be supported in some Bluetooth® devices.**

* if equipped

Search Song: **TUNE** knob

- Turning **TUNE** knob: Searches for songs(files).
- Pressing **TUNE** knob: Plays selected song(file).

* NOTICE

- BT Audio*, iPod® and AUX don't support playlist feature.
- While BT Audio* is playing, pressing the **TUNE** knob plays and pauses the current song.
- * if equipped

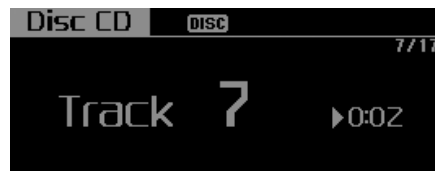
Search Folder: **[FLDR]** button

- Searches the previous/next folder. (Disc MP3*, USB)
- * if equipped

* NOTICE

If a folder is selected by pressing the **TUNE** knob, the first file within the selected folder will be played.

Disc CD (Type B-5, Type B-6)



Displays Menu Popup when pressing the **[MENU]** button.

List

Moves to the list screen.

Repeat

Repeats the current song. Press it again to turn off.

Shuffle

Randomly plays all songs. Press it again to turn off.

Scan

Scans the beginning parts of all songs. (approximately 10 seconds per file)

Information

Displays information of the current song.

Sound Settings

Moves to Sound Settings.

1

2

3

4

5

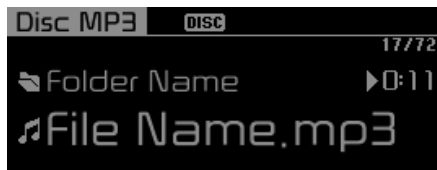
6

7

8

9

Disc MP3 (Type B-5, Type B-6)/USB



Displays Menu Popup when pressing the **[MENU]** button.

List

Moves to the list screen.

Repeat

Repeats the current song. Press it again to turn off.

Repeat Folder

Repeats songs within the current folder. Press it again to turn off.

Shuffle Folder

Randomly plays songs within the current folder. Press it again to turn off.

Shuffle

Randomly plays all songs. Press it again to turn off.

Scan

Scans the beginning parts of all songs. (approximately 10 seconds per file)

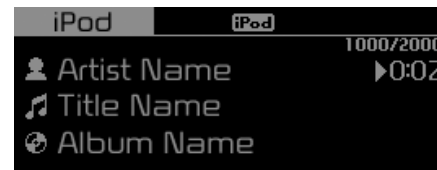
Information

Displays information of the current song.

Sound Settings

Moves to Sound Settings.

iPod®



Displays Menu Popup when pressing the **[MENU]** button.

List

Moves to the list screen.

Repeat

Repeats the current song. Press it again to turn off.

Shuffle

Plays all songs within the currently playing category in random order. Press it again to turn off.

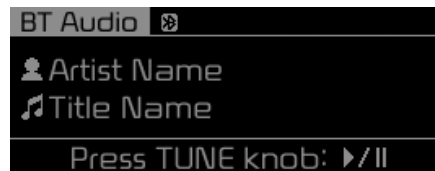
Information

Displays information of the current song.

Sound Settings

Moves to Sound Settings.

Bluetooth® (BT) Audio (if equipped)



Displays Menu Popup when pressing the [MENU] button.

Sound Settings

Moves to Sound Settings.

* NOTICE

- Audio may not automatically start playing in some Bluetooth® devices. If the music in the Bluetooth® device is not played after changing to audio streaming mode, press the **TUNE** knob. Check if the music is playing in the Bluetooth® device after changing to audio streaming mode.
- Audio streaming may not be supported for some Bluetooth® devices.
- If Bluetooth® device is disconnected, BT Audio* is ended.
- Bluetooth® connection is required to use BT Audio*. Refer to the Bluetooth® manual for more information.

* if equipped

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

AUX

1

AUX

AUX

2

AUX cable connected.

3

Displays Menu Popup when pressing the [MENU] button.

4

Sound Settings

5

Moves to Sound Settings.

6

* NOTICE

- AUX mode can be used only when an external audio player has been connected.
- If only a cable is connected to the AUX without an external device, the mode will be changed to AUX, but noise may occur. When an external device is not being used, remove the connector jack.
- When the external device power is connected to the power jack, playing the external device may output noise. In such cases, disconnect the power connection before use.

7

8

9

Phone (if equipped)

* NOTICE - Using Bluetooth® (BT) Phone

What is Bluetooth® Wireless Technology?

- Bluetooth® Wireless Technology refers to a short-distance wireless networking technology which uses a 2.45GHz frequency to connect various devices within a certain distance.
- Supported within PCs, external devices, Bluetooth® phones, PDAs, various electronic devices, and automotive environments, Bluetooth® Wireless Technology to be transmitted at high speeds without having to use a connector cable.
- Bluetooth® Handsfree refers to a device which allows the user to conveniently make phone calls with Bluetooth® devices through the Multimedia system.
- The Bluetooth® Handsfree feature may not be supported in some Bluetooth® devices. For Bluetooth® supporting devices details and compatibility, visit <http://kiaeurope.nextgen-technology.net>

WARNING - Distracted Driving

- Focus on the road while driving. The driver's primary responsibility is in the safe and legal operation of the vehicle. Drivers should not use any hand held devices or other equipment or vehicle systems that distract the driver during vehicle operation.
- Do not stare at the multimedia screen for long periods of time while driving. Staring at the screen for prolonged periods of time can lead to traffic accidents and can result in personal injuries.

⚡ CAUTION - For Safe Driving

- *Bluetooth® is a feature that enables drivers to make handsfree calls. Connecting the head unit with a Bluetooth® phone allows the user to conveniently make calls, receive calls, and manage the phonebook. Before using Bluetooth® Wireless Technology, carefully read the contents of this user's manual.*
- *Excessive use or operations while driving may lead to negligent driving practices and be the cause of accidents. Do not operate the device excessively while driving.*
- *Viewing the screen for prolonged periods of time is dangerous and may lead to accidents. When driving, view the screen only for short periods of time.*

(Continued)

(Continued)

- *Pairing Bluetooth® devices and use of other Bluetooth® features are not supported when the vehicle is in motion. For safety, please first park your vehicle.*

⚡ CAUTION

- For Connecting a Bluetooth® Phone

- *Before connecting the head unit with the Bluetooth® device, check to see that the mobile device supports Bluetooth® features.*
- *Even if the mobile device supports Bluetooth® Wireless Technology, the device will not be found during device searches if the device has been set to hidden state or the Bluetooth® power is turned off. Disable the hidden state or turn on the Bluetooth® power prior to searching/connecting with the head unit.*

(Continued)

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

(Continued)

- *If a Bluetooth® Wireless Technology device becomes disconnected due to being out of communication range, turning the device OFF, or a Bluetooth® Wireless Technology communication error, corresponding Bluetooth® Wireless Technology devices are automatically searched and reconnected.*
- *If you do not want automatic connection with your Bluetooth® device, turn the Bluetooth® feature off in the Bluetooth® device.*
- *Only one Bluetooth® Wireless Technology device can be connected at a time.*
- *Bluetooth® connection may become intermittently disconnected in some Bluetooth® devices. Follow these steps to try again.*

(Continued)

(Continued)

1. *Turn the Bluetooth® function within the Bluetooth® device OFF/ON and try again.*
2. *Turn the Bluetooth device power OFF/ON and try again.*
3. *Completely remove the Bluetooth® device battery, reboot, and then again.*
4. *Reboot the Multimedia System and try again.*
5. *Delete all paired devices from both of Bluetooth® device and Head Unit sides and then try again.*

CAUTION

- Upon Using Bluetooth® Phone

- *If the Bluetooth® device is not connected, it is not possible to enter Phone mode. After connecting your Bluetooth® device to your car, use the Bluetooth® features.*
- *You will not be able to use the handsfree feature when your phone is outside of the cellular service area (e.g. in a tunnel, in a underground, in a mountainous area, etc.).*
- *If the cellular phone signal is poor or the vehicles interior noise is too loud, it may be difficult to hear the other person's voice during a call.*
- *Do not place the Bluetooth® device near or inside metallic objects, otherwise communications with Bluetooth® Wireless Technology system or cellular service stations can be disturbed.*

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **Placing the audio system within an electromagnetic environment may result in noise interference.**
- **Some Bluetooth® devices may cause interference noise or malfunction to audio system. In this case, store the device in a different location may resolve the condition.**
- **While a device is connected through Bluetooth® Wireless Technology, your device may discharge quicker than usual for additional Bluetooth® Wireless Technology-related operations.**
- **The handsfree call volume and quality may differ depending on the Bluetooth® device.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

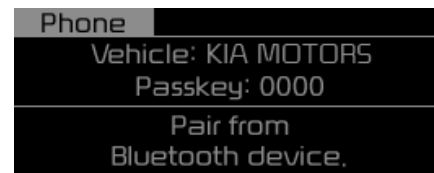
- **If Connection Priority is set upon vehicle ignition (IGN/ACC ON), the Bluetooth® Wireless Technology device will be automatically connected. Even if you are outside, the Bluetooth® Wireless Technology device will be automatically connected once you are in the vicinity of the vehicle. If you do not want to automatically connect your Bluetooth® Wireless Technology device, turn off the Bluetooth® Wireless Technology feature in your Bluetooth® device.**
- **In some Bluetooth® devices, starting the ignition while talking through Bluetooth® Wireless Technology enabled hands-free call will result in the call becoming disconnected due to car handsfree call transfer. If you use your phone outside the vehicle, turn off the Bluetooth® Wireless Technology feature in your phone.**

Bluetooth® Connection

Before you can use the Bluetooth® feature, you must first pair/connect your Bluetooth® device to your car.

Pairing a New Device

Press the **[PHONE]** button in the head unit or **[CALL]** button in the steering wheel remote control.



In your Bluetooth® device,

1. Pair your car after your Bluetooth® device detects the Bluetooth® device.
2. Enter the passkey(0000) or accept the authorization popup.
3. Connect Bluetooth®.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

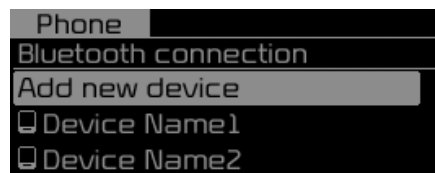
9

* NOTICE

- 1 • Up to 5 Bluetooth® devices can be paired.
- 2 • The default passkey is 0000.
- 3 • During a Bluetooth® device connection, another device cannot be paired.
- 4 • The Vehicle Name above is an example. Check the actual information on the product.
- 5 • Pairing and connecting a *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology enabled Bluetooth® device will work only when the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology option within your Bluetooth® device has been turned on. (Methods of turning on the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology enabled feature may differ depending on the Bluetooth® device.)
- 6 • After pairing is complete, a contacts download request is sent to the Bluetooth® device. Some Bluetooth® devices may require confirmation upon receiving a download request. Ensure your Bluetooth® device accepts the connection. Refer to your phone's user manual for additional information regarding phone pairing and connections.

Connecting Bluetooth® Devices

- Press the **[PHONE]** button in the head unit or **[CALL]** button in the steering wheel remote control ► Select the name of the device to connect ► Connect Bluetooth®.
- Connects the Bluetooth® devices that you add.



* NOTICE

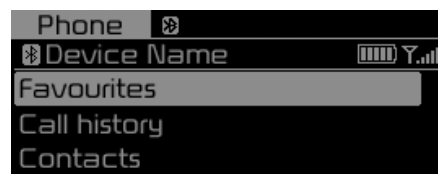
- Only one Bluetooth® device can be connected at a time.
- *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology features supported within the vehicle are as follows. Some features may not be supported depending on your Bluetooth® Wireless Technology device.
 - Outgoing/Incoming Handsfree calls
 - Operations during a call: Switch to Private, Switch to call waiting, MIC on/off
 - Downloading Call History
 - Downloading Contacts
 - *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device Auto Connection
 - Bluetooth® Audio Streaming

Bluetooth® Phone

Favourites(Favorites)

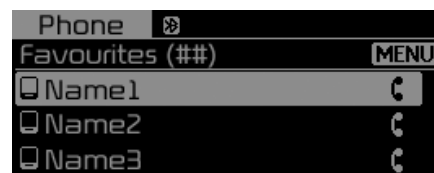
Press the **[PHONE]** button ► Select [Favourites(Favorites)].

- Displays Phone Menu screen.
- The connected device name is displayed in the top of the display.



- : Call signal strength indicator.
- : Battery level of the Bluetooth® devices connected.

- Lists the phone numbers saved as Favorites. Select from the list to dial the number.



Displays Menu Popup when pressing the **[MENU]** button.

- Add new favourites(Add New Favorites): Adds a phone number to Favorites.
- Delete items: Deletes numbers that you select from Favorites.
- Delete all: Deletes all of the numbers from Favorites.

* NOTICE

- Up to 20 favorites can be saved in favorites of each device.
- Downloading favorites in your Bluetooth® device does not be supported.
- To save favorite, contacts should be downloaded.
- Contact saved in favorites will not be automatically updated if the contact has been updated in the phone. To update Favorites, delete the favorite and create a new favorite.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

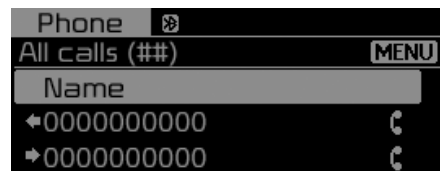
8

9

Call history

Press the **[PHONE]** button ► Select [Call history].

- Displays all of your call history. Select from the list to dial the number.



Displays Menu Popup when pressing the **[MENU]** button.

- Download: Downloads the call history information from your Bluetooth® device.
- All calls: Lists the all call history.
- Dialed calls: Lists the calls that you made.
- Received calls: Lists the calls that you have received.
- Missed calls: Lists the calls you missed.

* NOTICE

- Call history may not be saved in the call history list in some Bluetooth® devices.
- Calls from restricted ID's are not saved in the call history list.
- Up to 50 calls can be added in each Dialed Calls/Received Calls/Missed Calls list.
- The durations of each dialed/received call are not displayed in your car's Call History list.
- While the call history download is in progress, the status bar displays an icon (⬇️).
- If the call history download is turned off on the Bluetooth® device, the call history download will fail.
- Some devices require a device authentication for downloading your call history. If download fails, check if the Bluetooth® settings or display status are normal.

Contacts

Press the **[PHONE]** button ► Select [Contacts].

- Displays the list of Contacts. Select from the list to dial the number.



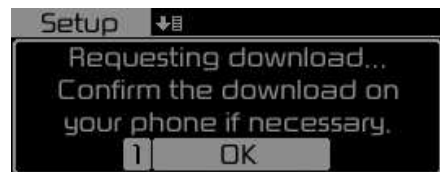
Displays Menu Popup when pressing the **[MENU]** button.

- Download: Downloads contacts from your Bluetooth® device.

Requesting Download

Some devices require a device authentication for downloading your call history and contacts.

If download fails, check the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device settings or the screen state.



* NOTICE

- Up to 2000 phone numbers can be downloaded from a single, paired Bluetooth® device.
- You cannot edit or delete downloaded phone numbers from your car.
- Contacts can be viewed only when the Bluetooth® device is connected.

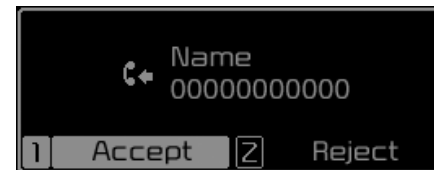
(Continued)

(Continued)

- Even if the Bluetooth® device is disconnected, the downloaded data will remain. (Note that deleting a paired device will also delete all downloaded Contacts and Call History data)
- Downloaded phone numbers may be lost depending on the condition of the head unit. Keep your important data in a safe place.
- The status bar displays a (↓) while downloading contacts.
- The download will not be available if the contacts download function is turned off on your Bluetooth® device.
- Phone contact names should be saved in English or they may not be displayed correctly.
- The time of contacts/call history download may differ depending on the Bluetooth® devices.
- Some devices require a device authentication for downloading your contacts. If download fails, check your phone screen and confirm the download if necessary.

Accept/Reject Call

If there is an incoming call, a popup message will appear.



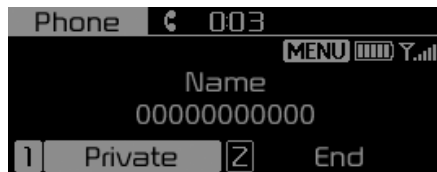
- To answer the incoming call, select [Accept] on the screen or press the [CALL] button on the steering remote control.
- To reject the call, select [Reject] on the screen or press the [END] button on the steering wheel control.

* NOTICE

In some Bluetooth® devices, the caller's number may not be displayed, and the Reject feature may not be supported.

Using the Menu During a Phone Call

When making a call, you can use the following menu items.



(1) Private: Switches a voice call from the car Hands-free to the Bluetooth® device.

(2) End: Ends a call.

Displays Menu Popup when pressing the **[MENU]** button.

- Microphone Volume(Outgoing Volume): Displays the Mic Volume settings. You can adjust the in-call volume that the other party hears (level 1 - 5).

* NOTICE

- Up to 2000 phone numbers can be downloaded from a single, paired Bluetooth® device.
- If the caller's number is listed in Contacts, the caller's name will be displayed. Otherwise, only the number will be displayed. In some Bluetooth® devices, the phone number may not be displayed.
- In some Bluetooth® devices, the Use Private feature may not be supported.
- In some Bluetooth® devices, the Switch feature may not be supported.
- The phone number may not be properly displayed in some Bluetooth® devices.
- During a phone call on a Bluetooth® Handsfree, you cannot access other modes, such as Radio and Setup.
- Depending on handset types, the in-call volume the other party hears may differ. If the other party hears your voice too low or too loud, adjust the mic volume.

Phone Settings

Press the **[PHONE]** button ► Select [Phone settings].

- Moves to a screen of Phone Settings. Refer to [Setup] ► [Phone settings] manual for more information.

Setup

Display

Press the **[SETUP]** button ► Select [Display].

- Song information(Media Display): When playing an MP3 file, select the desired display info from [Folder/File] or [Artist/Title/Album].
- Mode popup: During [On] state, press the **[RADIO]** or **[MEDIA]** button to display the mode change popup.
- Scroll text(Text Scroll)*: If MP3 file name is too long to display, the file name is scrolled from right to left.

* if equipped

Sound

Press the **[SETUP]** button ► Select [Sound].

- Balance: Selects the sound balance.
- Equaliser(Tone): Selects the sound equaliser(tone).
- Speed dependent vol.: Controls the volume level automatically according to the speed of the vehicle.

Phone (if equipped)

Add new device

Press the **[SETUP]** button ► Select [Phone] ► Select [Add new device].

- The following steps are the same as those described in the section [Pairing a New Device] on the previous page.

Connect/Disconnect Device

Press the **[SETUP]** button ► Select [Phone] ► Select [Paired devices].

- Displays the paired Bluetooth® device list.
- From the paired device list, select the device you want to connect or disconnect.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

* NOTICE

- Displays the icons when Bluetooth® device is connected.

: An icon appears when you make a Bluetooth® Audio connection.

: An icon appears when you make a Bluetooth® Handsfree connection.

- Only one Bluetooth® device can be connected at a time.
- Bluetooth® Handsfree and Bluetooth® Audio functions are supported. Handsfree and audio-supported devices, such as a Bluetooth® smartphone or audio, will function normally.
- If the system is not stable due to a vehicle-Bluetooth® device communication error, delete the paired device on each device and pair/connect the Bluetooth® device again.

Delete devices

Press the **[SETUP]** button ► Select [Phone] ► Select [Delete devices].

- Displays the paired Bluetooth® device list.
- When selecting from the list, the device is deleted.

* NOTICE

- When you delete a paired device, the Call History and Contacts stored in the head unit are also deleted.
- To re-use a deleted device, you must pair the device again.

Auto Connection priority

Press the **[SETUP]** button ► Select [Phone] ► Select [Connection priority].

- Select the device to want to set the connection priority of paired devices.
- If “None” is chosen, the Bluetooth® system will try to connect to the last connected device, then to all paired devices.

* NOTICE

- When the engine is running, the selected Bluetooth® device is automatically connected. If you fail to connect the selected device, the previously-connected device is automatically connected, and if it also fails, then it tries to connect all paired devices sequentially.
- Depending on auto connection priority, connection to a device may take time.
- If a *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device becomes disconnected due to being out of communication range, turning the device OFF, or a *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology communication error, corresponding *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology devices are automatically searched and reconnected.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- Even if you are outside, the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology device will be automatically connected once you are in the vicinity of the vehicle. If you do not want to automatically connect your *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology device, turn off the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology feature in your *Bluetooth*® device.
- In some *Bluetooth*® devices, starting the ignition while talking through *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology enabled handsfree call will result in the call becoming disconnected due to car handsfree call transfer. If you use your phone outside the vehicle, turn off the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology feature in your phone.

Language

Press the **[SETUP]** button ► Select [Language].

- Changes the display language.

Display Off

Press the **[SETUP]** button ► Select [Display off].

- Audio operation is maintained and only the screen will be turned Off. In the Screen Off state, press any button to turn the Screen On again.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

Declaration of Conformity CE for EU

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

Declaration of Conformity

We, manufacturer, hereby declare that the product

Model: ACB00HDEE
Additional Model: ACB00HDGG / ACB00HDGN
Type: Car Audio System

satisfies all the technical regulations applicable to the product within the scope of Council Directive 2014/30/EU:

EMC: EN 55013 : 2013
EN 55020 : 2007 / A11 : 2011

All essential radio test suites have been carried out.

Testing laboratory: HCT CO., LTD.

74, Seoichoen-ro 578beon-gil, Majang-myeon, Icheon-si, Gyeonggi-do, Korea 467-811
Tel. +82-31-645-6983 / Fax. +82-31-645-6401

Authorized representative or manufacturer:

HYUNDAI MOBIS Co., Ltd.
203, Teheran-ro, Gangnam-gu, Seoul, 135-977, Korea
Tel. 82-31-260-0098 / Fax. 82-31-899-1788

This declaration is issued under the sole responsibility of the manufacturer and, if applicable, his authorized Representative, and is marked in accordance with the CE marking directive 93/68/EEC.

Point of contact :

HYUNDAI MOBIS Co., Ltd. Tel. 82-31-260-0098 / Fax. 82-31-899-1788

Seoul, Korea June. 24, 2016



최능훈

/ S. H. Choe
/ Director

Declaration of Conformity

We, manufacturer, hereby declare that the product

Model: ACB10HDEE
Additional Model: ACB10HDGG / ACB01HDEE (NONBT) / ACB01HDGG
Type: Car Audio System

satisfies all the technical regulations applicable to the product within the scope of Council Directives 2006/95/EC, 2004/108/EC and 99/5/EC:

Radio: EN 300 328 V.1.9.1
EMC: EN 55013 : 2013
EN 55020 : 2007 + A11 : 2011
ETSI EN 301 488-1 V.1.9.2
ETSI EN 301 488-17 V.2.2.1
Safety: EN 60065:2002+A1:2008+A11:2008+A2:2010+A12:2011

All essential radio test suites have been carried out.

Testing laboratory: HCT CO., LTD.

74, Seoichoen-ro 578beon-gil, Majang-myeon, Icheon-si, Gyeonggi-do, Korea 467-811
Tel. +82-31-645-6983 / Fax. +82-31-645-6401

Authorized representative or manufacturer:

HYUNDAI MOBIS Co., Ltd.
203, Teheran-ro, Gangnam-gu, Seoul, 135-977, Korea
Tel. 82-31-260-0098 / Fax. 82-31-899-1788

This declaration is issued under the sole responsibility of the manufacturer and, if applicable, his authorized Representative, and is marked in accordance with the CE marking directive 93/68/EEC.

Point of contact :

HYUNDAI MOBIS Co., Ltd. Tel. 82-31-260-0098 / Fax. 82-31-899-1788

Seoul, Korea June. 24, 2016



최능훈

/ S. H. Choe
/ Director

Declaration of Conformity

We, manufacturer, hereby declare that the product

Model: AC110HDEE
Additional Model: AC110HDGG
Type: Car Audio System

satisfies all the technical regulations applicable to the product within the scope of Council Directives 2006/95/EC, 2004/108/EC and 99/5/EC:

Radio: EN 300 328 V.1.9.1
EMC: EN 55013 : 2013
EN 55020 : 2007 + A11 : 2011
ETSI EN 301 489-1 V.1.9.2
ETSI EN 301 489-17 V.2.2.1
Safety: EN 60065-2002+A1:2006+A11:2008+A2:2010+A12:2011

All essential radio test suites have been carried out.

Testing laboratory: HCT CO., LTD.

74, Seichocho-ro 578beon-gil, Majang-myeon, Icheon-si, Gyeonggi-do, Korea 467-811
Tel. +82-31-645-6983 / Fax +82-31-645-6401

Authorized representative or manufacturer:

HYUNDAI MOBIS Co., Ltd.
203, Teheran-ro, Gangnam-gu, Seoul, 135-977, Korea
Tel. 82-31-260-0098 / Fax. 82-31-899-1788

This declaration is issued under the sole responsibility of the manufacturer and, if applicable, his authorized Representative, and is marked in accordance with the CE marking directive 93/68/EEC.

Point of contact :

HYUNDAI MOBIS Co., Ltd. Tel. 82-31-260-0098 / Fax. 82-31-899-1788

Seoul, Korea June 24, 2016



최승훈

/ S. H. Choe
/ Director

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

NCC for Taiwan

1

根據交通部低功率電波輻射性電機管理辦法 規定：

2

第十二條 經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。

3

第十四條 低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。
前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信。
低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

4

5

6

7

8

9

ANATEL for Brazil

“Este produto está homologado pela ANATEL, de acordo com os procedimentos regulamentados pela resolução nº . 242/2000 e atende aos requisitos técnicos e aplicados”

Para maiores informações, consulte o site da ANATEL www.anatel.gov.br



Este equipamento opera em caráter secundário, isto é, não tem direito a proteção contra interferência prejudicial, mesmo de estações do mesmo tipo, e não pode causar interferência a sistemas operando em caráter primário.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

“Este produto está homologado pela ANATEL, de acordo com os procedimentos regulamentados pela resolução nº . 242/2000 e atende aos requisitos técnicos e aplicados”

Para maiores informações, consulte o site da ANATEL www.anatel.gov.br



Este equipamento opera em caráter secundário, isto é, não tem direito a proteção contra interferência prejudicial, mesmo de estações do mesmo tipo, e não pode causar interferência a sistemas operando em caráter primário.